

STANDARD CHINESE A Modular Approach

MODULE 8: TRAVELING IN CHINA STUDENT TEXT AND WORKBOOK

**SPONSORED BY
AGENCIES OF THE UNITED STATES AND CANADIAN GOVERNMENTS**

This publication is to be used primarily in support of training military personnel as part of the Defense Language Program (resident and non-resident). Inquiries concerning the use of materials, including requests for copies, should be addressed to:

Defense Language Institute
Foreign Language Center
Nonresident Instruction Division
Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940

Topics in the areas of politics, international relations, mores, etc., which may be considered as controversial from some points of view are sometimes included in language training for DLIFLC students, since military personnel may find themselves in positions where clear understanding of conversations or written material of this nature will be essential to their mission. The presence of controversial statements—whether real or apparent—in DLIFLC materials should not be construed as representing the opinions of the writers, of the Defense Language Institute, or of the Department of Defense.

In DLIFLC publications, the words “he,” “him,” and “his” denote both masculine and feminine genders. This statement does not apply to translations of foreign language texts.

STANDARD CHINESE
A MODULAR APPROACH

STUDENT TEXT AND WORKBOOK

MODULE 8: TRAVELING IN CHINA

DRAFT EDITION

JULY 1982

Table of Contents

Objectives for the Travel Module

About Module Eight

Unit 1 Travel Plans with Lǚxíngshè

 Reference List

 Vocabulary List

 Reference Notes

 Tape 1 Review Dialogue

 Tape 2 Workbook

 Exercise Dialogues

Unit 2 Education in Běijīng

 Reference List

 Vocabulary List

 Reference Notes

 Tape 1 Review Dialogue

 Tape 2 Workbook

 Exercise Dialogues

Unit 3 Sìjīqīng People's Commune

 Reference List

 Vocabulary List

 Reference Notes

 Tape 1 Review Dialogue

 Tape 2 Workbook

 Exercise Dialogues

Unit 4 Ancient Architectural Art

 Reference List

 Vocabulary List

 Reference Notes

 Tape 1 Review Dialogue

 Tape 2 Workbook

 Exercise Dialogues

Unit 5 Economic Construction and Natural Resources

 Reference List

 Vocabulary List

 Reference Notes

 Tape 1 Review Dialogue

 Tape 2 Workbook

 Exercise Dialogues

Unit 6 National Minorities

Reference List
Vocabulary List
Reference Notes
Tape 1 Review Dialogue
Tape 2 Workbook
Exercise Dialogues

Unit 7

Reference List
Vocabulary List
Reference Notes
Tape 1 Review Dialogue
Tape 2 Workbook
Exercise Dialogues

Unit 8

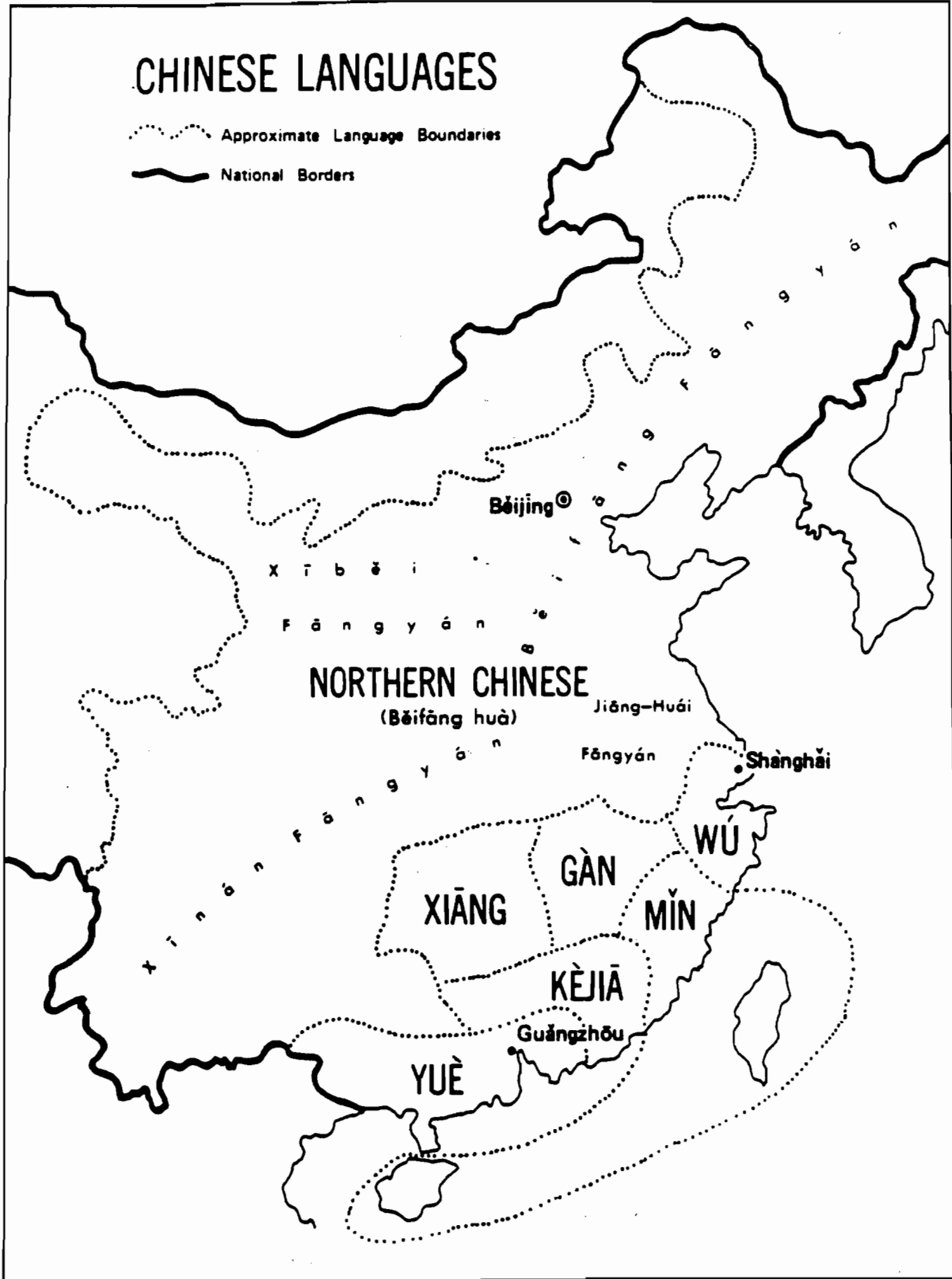
Reference List
Vocabulary List
Reference Notes
Tape 1 Review Dialogue
Tape 2 Workbook
Exercise Dialogues

Vocabulary List for the Module

List of Tapes in this Module

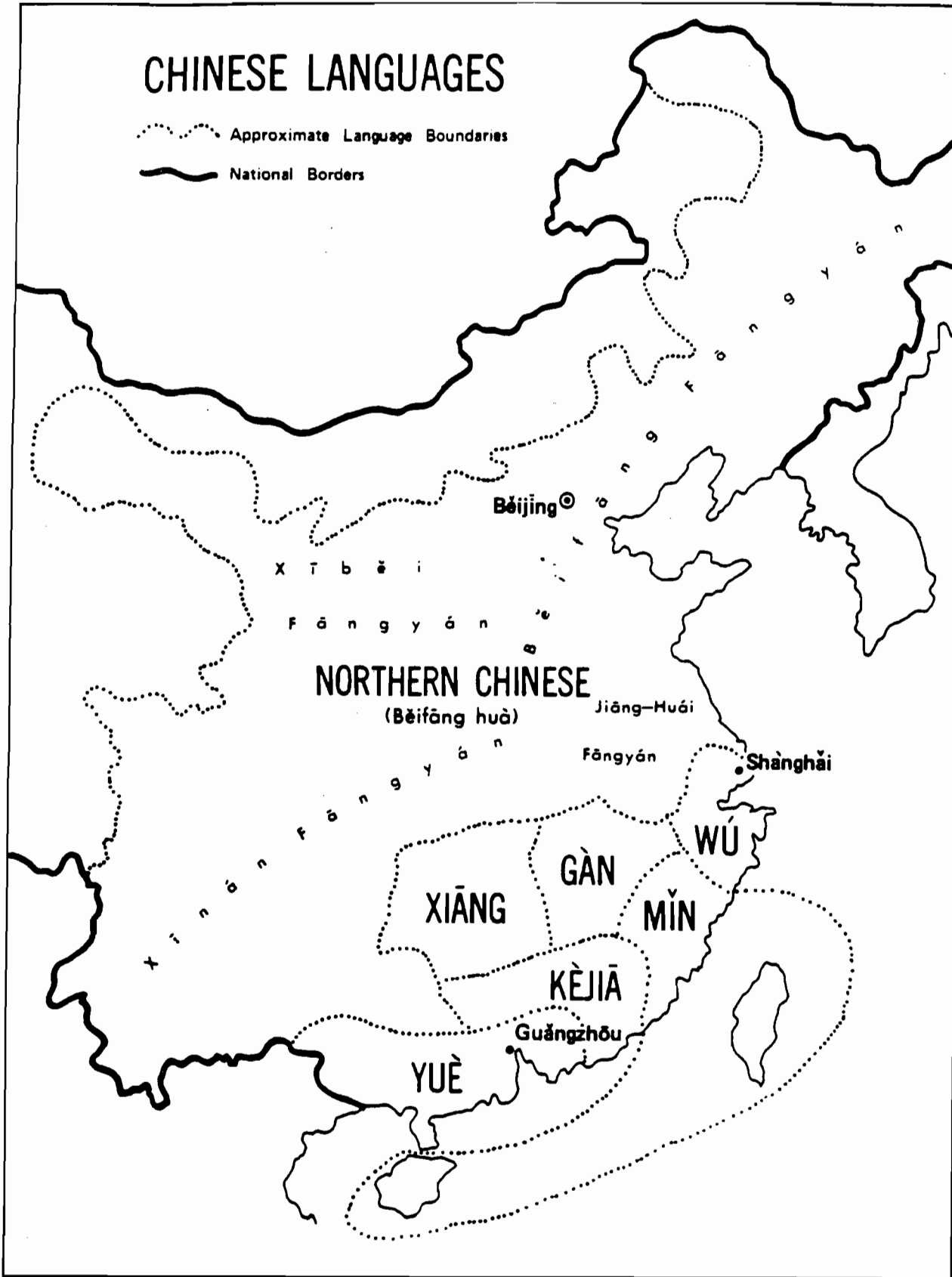
CHINESE LANGUAGES

- ⋯ Approximate Language Boundaries
- National Borders



CHINESE LANGUAGES

- ⋯ Approximate Language Boundaries
- National Borders



Unit 1, Reference List

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A: Wǒmen zěnme <u>chēnghu</u> nín hǎo ne? | How should we address you? |
| B: Lái zhèli <u>cānguān fǎngwènde</u> rén dōu jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng. | People who come here to visit all call me Lǎo Wáng. |
| 2. A: Nín xiǎng zhèijiàn shì zěnme <u>ānpái bǐjiǎo</u> hǎo? | What do you think would be the best way to arrange this? |
| B: Wǒ xiǎng zuì hǎo děng wǒ hé Shànghǎi fāngmian <u>liánxì yíxià zài shuō</u> . | I think it would be best to wait until I've contacted Shànghǎi and then we'll see about it. |
| 3. A: Tīngshuō nín duì zhèi yídài-de <u>fāngyán</u> hěn yǒu yánjiū. | I've heard that you're an expert on the dialect of this area. |
| B: Nàli! Wǒ zhǐ shì <u>liǎojiě</u> yídiǎnr, tánbudào yǒu yánjiū. | Oh no! I just know a little about it; I couldn't say I'm an expert. |
| 4. A: Xiànzài Zhōngguó yòngde <u>shíyóu dàbùfen</u> shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde, duì ba? | China now produces most of the oil that it uses, isn't that right? |
| B: Bù, <u>quánbù</u> shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde. | No, they produce all of it. |
| 5. A: Dàbùfen <u>běifāng</u> rén dōu huì shuō <u>pǔtōnghuà</u> , duì bu duì? | Most northerners can speak the standard language, can't they? |
| B: Òu, bù zhǐ shì běifāng rén, hěn duō <u>nánfāng</u> rénde pǔtōnghuà yě bú cuò. | Oh, not just northerners. A lot of southerners speak standard Chinese pretty well, too. |
| 6. A: Míngtiān wǒ jiù cóng <u>Shēnzhèn lí jìng</u> le. | Tomorrow I'm going to leave the country from Shēnzhèn. |
| B: Ó, zhème kuài! Wǒ hái <u>yǐwéi</u> nǐ néng gēn wǒmen dào Sūzhōu qù wǎn jítīān ne! | Oh, so soon! I thought you could go with us to Sūzhōu for a few days. |
| 7. A: <u>Dōngběi</u> , <u>Xīběi</u> nǐ dōu qùguo le ba? | You've been to Manchuria and the Northwest, haven't you? |
| B: Zài Dōngběi wǒ zhǐ cānguānle <u>Dàqīng</u> , Xīběi hái méi qù ne. | In Manchuria I've only visited Dàqīng, and I haven't been to the Northwest yet. |

TVL, Unit 1

8. A: Nǐ xiǎn zǒu hǎo le, wǒ jiù lái.
B: Hǎo. Huí tóu jiàn.
9. A: Zhèiwèi xuézhě yánjiūde shì nǐ fāngmiàn de wèntí?
B: Tā yánjiūde zhǔyào shì yǔyán hé yǔyánxué.
10. A: Zài Xīnjiāng Nèiměng yí dài méiyǒu hěn duō rén shuō pǔtōnghuà ba?
B: Duì, zài nèixiē dìfāng, shǎoshù mínzú yǔyán zhàn zhǔyào de dǐwèi.
11. A: Nǐmen xiǎng qù de dìqū quán dōu qù le ba? Hái yǒu shénme wèntí meiyǒu?
B: Méiyǒu shénme wèntí le, Lǚxíngshè de gōngzuò gāo de hěn hǎo, wǒmen hěn mǎnyì.
12. lǚxíngtuán tour group
13. Guǎngxī (an autonomous region, formerly spelled Kwangsi)
14. Guǐlín (a famous scenic city in Guǎngxī)
15. Yúnnán (a province in southern China)
16. Guǐzhōu (a province, formerly spelled Kweichow)
17. Huáběi north China
18. Huánán south China
19. Huángshān (a famous scenic mountain in Ānhuī province)

Unit 1, Vocabulary List

ānpái	to arrange
běifāng	the north
bǐjiào	comparatively
cānguān	to visit and observe
chēnghu	to call
dàbùfen	mostly
dài	zone, area, belt
Dàqǐng	(a city in Hēilóngjiāng province)
dìqū	area, district, region
Dōngběi	Manchuria
fǎngwèn	to visit and meet with
fāngyán	dialect
gāo	to do
Guǎngxī	(a province in south China)
Guǐlín	(a city in Guǎngxī province)
Guǐzhōu	(a province of China)
Huáběi	north of China
Huánán	south of China
Huángshān	(a mountain in Ānhuī province)
huítóu jiàn	See you later!
liánxì	to contact
liǎojiě	to understand
lí jǐng	to leave a country or place
lǚxíngshè	travel service, travel agency
lǚxíngtuán	tour group
mínzú	ethnic group, nation
nánfāng	the south
Nèiměng	Inner Mongolia
pǔtōnghuà	the common (standard) language
quán	entirely
quánbù	entire, whole
shǎoshù	small number, few, minority
shǎoshù mínzú	minority nationality
Shēnzhèn	(a city in Guǎngdōng province)
shíyóu	petroleum, oil

TVL, Unit 1

Xīběi
Xīnjiāng
xuézhě

northwest
(an autonomous region of China)
scholar

yǐwéi
Yúnnán
yǔyán
yǔyánxué

to think (mistakenly), to assume
(a province of China)
language
linguistics

...zài shuō
zhàn
zhǔyào

...and then we'll see about it
to occupy, to take up
main, mainly

Unit 1, Reference Notes

1. A: Wǒmen zěnmē chēnghu nín
hǎo ne? How should we address you?
- B: Lái zhèlǐ cānguān fǎngwèn
rén dōu jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng. People who come here to visit all
call me Lǎo Wáng.

Notes on No. 1

Asking how to address someone: If you are not sure how to address someone, it is usually acceptable to ask the person himself. Most Chinese recognize that they have a complicated system of terms of address, and are happy to answer such questions.

chēnghu: "to address" or "form of address"

Kuài gào su wǒ, wǒ gāi zěnmē
chēnghu nǐde fùmǔ ne? Quick tell me: how should I
address your parents?

Xiàng "Xiǎo Wáng," "Lǎo Zhāng"
zhèizhǒng chēnghu xiànzài
hěn liúxíng le. Forms of address like "Xiǎo Wáng"
and "Lǎo Zhāng" are now very
common.

. . . hǎo ne?: "Would it be best to . . . ?" Wǒmen zěnmē chēnghu nín
acts as the subject of the verb hǎo. Here is a diagram:

Wǒmen zěnmē chēnghu nín	hǎo ne?
([For] us to address you how	[would] be good?)

"How would it be best for us to address you?"

For sentences with a similar structure, compare 2A and 8A below. Here are three further examples:

Zěnmē zuò hǎo? What should I do?

Zěnmē chí hǎo ne? How should it be cooked (lit.,
"eaten")?

Wǒ zhēn bù zhīdào gào su ta hǎo
ne, háishì bú gào su ta hǎo? I really don't know whether I should
tell him or not.

Cānguān, literally, "enter-look," and fǎngwèn, literally, "visit-inter-
view," are both sometimes translated as "to visit," but there an important
difference in their meaning: you cānguān a place (like a museum), but you
fǎngwèn people. Thus, cānguān is translated as "visit and observe," and
fǎngwèn as "visit and talk with." By extension, you can also fǎngwèn a place,
but this implies a formal visit to a country or visits to factories or
offices where the visitors have a chance to talk with the responsible people
and workers. In addition, fǎngwèn also sometimes translates the English verb

"to interview." Examples:

Wǒ bù xǐhuan cānguān zhèiyangde
dìfang, wǒ xiǎng cānguān
gōngchǎng.

I don't like to visit this kind of
place. I want to visit a factory.

Duìbuqǐ xiānsheng, zhèlǐ shì
jūnshì dìqū, bù kéyǐ cānguān.

I'm sorry, sir. This is a military
zone; sightseeing is not permitted.

Qùnián wǒ zài Zhōngguó fāngwènle
liǎngge gānbu jiātíng.

Last year in China I visited two
cadres' families.

Zài liǎngge xīngqīlǐ, tāmen
fāngwènle liùge chéngshì.

They visited six cities in two weeks.
(Implies that they talked with
city officials.)

Zhè zhēn shì yíci yǒu yìside
fāngwèn.

This was really an interesting visit.

Zuótiān tāmen qù fāngwènle
yíwèi yǒu míngde Zhōngguó
xuézhě.

Yesterday they went to interview
a famous Chinese scholar.

2. A: Nín xiǎng zhèijiàn shì
zěnmē ānpái bǐjiǎo hǎo?

What do you think would be the best
way to arrange this?

B: Wǒ xiǎng zuì hǎo děng wǒ
hé Shànghǎi fāngmian
liánxì yíxià zài shuō.

I think it would be best to wait
until I've contacted Shànghǎi
and then we'll see about it.

Notes on No. 2

The structure of sentence 2A, which is similar to that of 1A, can be diagrammed this way:

Zhèijiàn shì	zěnmē ānpái	bǐjiǎo hǎo?
([As for] this matter	how arrange	[would be] compara- tively better?

ānpái: "to arrange," "to set up"

Tā zǒngshì bǎ shíjiān ānpáide
hěn hǎo.

He always arranges his time well.

Nǐ xiān bǎ zhuōzi ānpaihǎo,
kèren kuài lái le.

First arrange the tables; the guests
will be here soon.

Tā sānyuè yǐqián jiù bú zài
zhèr, bèi ānpái dào biéde
dìfang qu le.

He had left here even before March,
having been assigned to another
location.

bǐjiào or bǐjiào: (1) "Comparatively," "relatively," "more" is the meaning in sentence 2A. Bǐjiào also has the following meanings:

(2) "to compare":

Yàoshì bǐjiào zhè liǎngge chéng- If you compare these two cities,
shì, wǒ háishì xǐhuan Hángzhōu. I prefer Hángzhōu.

Wǒmen kěyǐ bǐjiào yíxià shéi We can compare who did it better.
zuòde hǎo.

(3) "fairly," "rather"

Jīntiān bǐjiào lěng, duō chuān It's rather cold today, put on some
diǎnr yīfú. clothing.

Context will often tell you whether bǐjiào as an adverb implies a comparison (in which case it should be translated as "comparatively," "relatively," or "more") or does not imply a comparison (in which case it should be translated as "rather" or "fairly").

Tā shì bǐjiào ài jiǎng huàde rén. He is a rather talkative person.

Zhèi liǎngge bànfa, nǐge bǐjiào Of these two methods, which is
yǒu xiào? more effective?
Dìèrge bànfa bǐjiào yǒu xiào. The second is more effective.

Cóng zhèr dào chénglǐ qù, zuò To go into the city from here, it's
dìtiě bǐjiào kuài yídiǎnr. somewhat faster by subway.

Shànghǎi fāngmian: Literally, "the Shànghǎi side," meaning the concerned party in Shànghǎi. In this sentence, the best English translation is simply "Shànghǎi." For more examples of this use of fāngmian, see the Society module, Unit 1, Notes on No. 8.

liánxì: "to contact," "to get in touch with," or as a noun, "connection," "ties." Liánxì can be between individual people, groups, or phenomena:

Wǒmen yǐjīng yǒu liǎngsānnián We haven't been in touch for two or
méiyǒu liánxì le, bù zhī- three years. I wonder how he has
dào tā zuìjìn zěnmeyàng. been lately.

Zhèi liǎngge wèntí méiyǒu There's no connection between these
shenme liánxì. two questions.

Zhèixiē nián lái, Zhōng-Měi In the past few years, ties
liǎngguóde liánxì yuè lái between China and the U.S. have
yuè guǎng le. been getting broader and broader.

liánxì yíxià: Yíxià here is used the same way as in a sentence you learned in the Meeting module, Unit 8: Wǒ tǐ nǐ zhuǎngào yíxià, "I will pass on the message for you." Yíxià means "one time," and simply adds a casual feeling, similar to the effect of reduplicating a verb. (Yíxià here is not translated as "a while" or "a little bit.") Reduplicating the verb

has about the same meaning: liánxì liánxì.

Děng . . . zài shuō literally means "Wait until . . . and then talk about it." Zài shuō is often better translated as "see about it" or "deal with it." Děng can sometimes be translated simply as "when."

Míngtiān zài shuō. We'll see about that tomorrow.

Děng tā lái le zài shuō. We'll see about that when he gets here.

Wǒmen xiān shìshí kàn zài shuō. Let's try it out first and then see about it.

3. A: Tīngshuō nín duì zhèi yídài-de fāngyán hěn yǒu yánjiū. I've heard that you're an expert on the dialect of this area.

B: Nálì! Wǒ zhǐ shì liǎojiě yìdiǎnr, tánbudào yǒu yánjiū. Oh no! I just know a little about it; I couldn't say I'm an expert.

Notes on No. 3

-dài: "zone," "area," "belt" The original meaning of dài is a belt or band, as in pídài, "leather belt," lùyīndài, "recording tape," and xiédài, "shoelaces." It is easy to see why it has also come to mean "belt" in a geographical sense, and by extension, "zone" or "area." -Dài is used in such words as rèdài (literally "hot-zone") "the tropics," and dìdài, "zone," "region." It is also used in the common phrases zhèi yídài, "this area," and yánhǎi yídài, "coastal region" (you will learn yánhǎi in Unit 5 of this module).

Zhèi yídài wǎnshang hěn wēixiǎn. This area is dangerous at night.
Nǐ yíge rén chūqu děi xiǎoxīn. You'd better be careful if you go out alone.
diǎnr.

You can use names of regions in the pattern . . . yídài:

Tīng nǐ shuō huà, nǐ dàgài shì Shānběi yídài rén. From the way you speak, I'd guess you're from the area of northern Shānxī.

fāngyán: "dialect" (Fāng-, as in dìfāng, "place," here means "local." -Yán forms part of the word yǔyán, "language," which is presented in sentence 9B.) In linguistics, the word fāngyán is used as we use the word "dialect." In common Chinese usage, fāngyán also refers to the various Chinese languages (such as Cantonese) which are not intelligible to a speaker of Standard Chinese. See also the note on pǔtōnghuà under Number 5.

liǎojiě: As a state verb, "to understand," "to grasp," "to comprehend," and as an action verb, "to find out," "to acquaint oneself with." As a state verb, it can be used in the pattern duì . . . liǎojiě (see the fourth and fifth examples below).

As a state verb

Nǐ bù liǎojiě qíngkuàng.	You don't understand the situation.
Tā hěn liǎojiě nàlǐde qíngkuàng.	He understands the situation there quite well.
Tāde guòqù, wǒ liǎojiěde fēi-cháng qīngchǔ.	I am very familiar with his past history.
Nǐ duì tā hái bù liǎojiě.	You still don't understand him.
Duì Zhōngguó lìshǐ wǒ liǎojiěde bú gòu.	I don't know enough about Chinese history.

As an action verb

Nǐ dào nàr qù yǐqián zuì hǎo liǎojiě yíxià nàrde fēngsù.	Before you go there, you would do well to acquaint yourself with the (local) customs.
Wǒ xiǎng liǎojiě liǎojiě rén-mín shēnghuóde qíngkuàng.	I would like to find out about the (daily) life of the people.

When the word "know" means to understand a person, it must be translated into Chinese as liǎojiě:

Tā àiren zuì liǎojiě ta.	His wife knows him best. (or "Her husband")
--------------------------	---

(Rènshi tā simply means "to be acquainted with him," and zhīdao tā means "to know of him.")

tánbudào: "cannot speak of . . ." A polite response to flattering comments. After tánbudào, you usually repeat the words of the first speaker, e.g.,

A: Nǐ duì Měiguó wénhuà hěn liǎojiě.	You understand American culture very well.
B: Tánbudào liǎojiě, wǒ zhǐ shì duì zhèifāngmiàn hěn yǒu xìngqù.	It's kind of you to say so ("One cannot speak of understanding it"), but I'm just very interested in it.

4. A: Xiànzài Zhōngguó yòngde <u>shíyóu</u> <u>dàbùfen</u> shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde, duì ba?	China now produces most of the oil that it uses, isn't that right?
B: Bù, <u>quánbù</u> shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde.	No, they produce all of it.

Notes on No. 4

shíyóu: "petroleum," "oil" (literally, "rock-oil," which, incidentally,

is also the meaning of the English word "petroleum") Examples: shíyóu gōngyè, "the oil industry"; shíyóu huàxué, "petrochemistry."

dàbùfen: "the most part," "for the most part," "mostly" The stress in this word is on the syllable dà-, and in conversation, the middle syllable, -bù-, is often neutral tone (you may even hear what sounds like dàbēn, with the u sound missing).

Use dàbùfen to modify a verb or a noun:

Měiguó rén dàbùfen dōu yǒu
zìjǐde chē.
Dàbùfen Měiguó rén dōu yǒu
zìjǐde chē.

Most Americans have their own car.

duì ba?: "isn't that correct?" "isn't that so?" You have already learned to ask for the listener's confirmation by using shǐ bu shǐ? or shǐ ma? and duì bu duì? or duì ma? at the end of a sentence. Shǐ ba? and duì ba? are also used in the same sentence position to ask for confirmation, but because of the marker ba, they imply that the speaker is fairly sure that his information is correct.

quánbù: "entire," "whole," "all"

Zhèixiē shū wǒ quánbù dōu kànguò
le.

I've read all of these books.

Tāde qián quánbù yòng zài lǚ-
xíngshàng le.

His money was all used up by the trip.
("used on the trip")

Tā gěi wǒde gōngzuò, wǒ hái méi
quánbù zuòwán ne.

I haven't finished all of the work
he gave me yet.

Tā shuōde huà quánbù méi yòng.

Everything he said is nonsense
(worthless, useless).

Nǐ bù zhīdào tāde quánbù qíng-
kuàng zěnmē néng hé tā jiēhūn?

How can you marry him without knowing
his whole situation?

5. A: Dàbùfen běifāng rén dōu
huì shuō pǔtōnghuà, duì
bu duì?

Most northerners can speak the
standard language, can't they?

B: Ōu, bù zhǐ shì běifāng rén,
hěn duō nánfāng rénde
pǔtōnghuà yě bú cuò.

Oh, not just northerners. A lot
of southerners speak standard
Chinese pretty well, too.

Notes on No. 5

Běifāng, "the north" of a country, and nánfāng, "the south" of a country: When used with reference to China, these terms usually mean the area north of the Huáng Hé (Yellow River) and the area south of the Chángjiāng (Yangtze River), respectively. The area between the rivers is usually considered central China.

Běifāng rén xǐhuan chī miànshí,
nánfāng rén xǐhuan chī mǐfàn.

Northerners like to eat foods made
from wheat, and southerners like
to eat rice.

Tāde Zhōngguó huà yǒu nánfāng
kǒuyīn.

His Chinese has a southern accent.

pǔtōnghuà: "the common speech," the usual designation in the PRC for what we have called in this course "Standard Chinese." Pǔtōnghuà is officially defined as consisting of the sound system of Běijīng speech, the vocabulary and idiom of northern speech, and the grammar of exemplary modern vernacular writings. It would be inaccurate to equate pǔtōnghuà with either běifāng huà ("northern speech") or Běijīng huà ("Běijīng speech"), because pǔtōnghuà has absorbed many elements from other dialects, contributing to its richness. Conversely, such things as purely regional expressions (including those of Běijīng itself) and non-standard pronunciations are not considered pǔtōnghuà. Before the PRC, the term pǔtōnghuà already existed, but referred to the approximations of Mandarin spoken by the common people of northern China. (In Taiwan, the term guóyǔ, "the national language," is used for the officially promoted standard language.)

bù zhǐ shì běifāng rén: "not just northerners" Bù zhǐ shì, "not only," can be followed by a noun, verb, or clause. Sometimes you may hear bú jiù shì, bú dān shì, bù guāng shì, or bù jǐn shì (which you will learn in the Life in China module), with the same meaning. The shì is necessary before a noun but may be omitted before a verb:

Wǒmen bàngōngshì bù zhǐ (shì)
yǒu Měiguó rén, hái yǒu jǐge
Zhōngguó rén bāng wǒmen gōngzuò.

In our office, there are not only
Americans, but also some Chinese
who help us.

6. A: Míngtiān wǒ jiù cóng Shēnzhèn
lí jìng le.

Tomorrow I'm going to leave the
country from Shēnzhèn.

B: Ó, zhème kuài! Wǒ hái yǐwéi
nǐ néng gēn wǒmen dào
Sūzhōu qù wǎnr jítīān ne!

Oh, so soon! I thought you could go
with us to Sūzhōu for a few days.

Notes on No. 6

Shēnzhèn, formerly known by its Cantonese pronunciation, Shumchun, is the border stop on the railroad from Hong Kong to Guǎngzhōu (Canton).

lí jìng: "leave a country," literally, "leave-boundary" You can also say chū jìng.

yǐwéi: "to mistakenly think" Xiǎng and rènwéi, which you will learn in the next unit, both mean "to think that" Yǐwéi adds the meaning that the subject's impression was wrong.

Nǐ yǐwéi wǒ bù zhīdào?! Wǒ
zǎo jiù tīngshuō le!

You thought I didn't know?! I heard
about it a long time ago!

Wǒ yǐwéi wǒ yíge rén kényi ná-
dedòng, shéi zhīdào nàme
zhòng.

I thought I could carry it by my-
self; who would have thought it
was so heavy?

Wǒ hái yǐwéi: "I thought (mistakenly)" You have learned hái as "still" and as "also, additionally." This hái has a different meaning and is not translated. It emphasizes that the subject was under a wrong impression. This meaning of hái is most clearly seen with the verb xiǎng: Wǒ hái xiǎng means "I mistakenly thought," whereas Wǒ xiǎng does not specify whether the judgment was right or wrong.

Òu, shì nǐ ya! Wǒ hái xiǎng
(OR yǐwéi) shì biérén ne!

Oh, it's you! I thought it was
someone else.

A: Nǐ tīngshuōle ma? Tā shēng-
le ge érzi.

Have you heard? She had a baby
boy.

B: Òu, wǒ hái bù zhīdào ne!

Oh, I didn't know! (Here, it is
not a mistaken impression but
the previous lack of any infor-
mation on the subject which hái
emphasizes)

7. A: Dōngběi, Xīběi nǐ dōu qù-
guo le ba?

You've been to Manchuria and the
Northwest, haven't you?

B: Zài Dōngběi wǒ zhǐ cānguānle
Dàqīng, Xīběi hái méi qù
ne.

In Manchuria I've only visited
Dàqīng, and I haven't been to
the Northwest yet.

Notes on No. 7

Dōngběi, Xīběi: Although you learned this is in the Directions module, it bears repeating that combined direction names ("northwest," "southeast," etc.) are said in the reverse order from English:

xīběi (west-north) northwest	dōngběi (east-north) northeast
xīnán (west-south) southwest	dōngnán (east-south) southeast

Dōngběi: "the Northeast," "Manchuria" The northeastern region of China, consisting of the three provinces of Liáoníng, Jílín, and Hēilóngjiāng, is sometimes called Manchuria because the largest indigenous minority is the Manchu, or Mǎn, nationality. Of China's 2.6 million Mǎn, most live scattered throughout these three provinces and Héběi; there are also smaller Mǎn populations in the cities of Běijīng, Chéngdū, Xī'ān, and Hohhot. The Mǎn, and before them their ancestors the Nūzhēn (Nuchen or Juchen, an ancient nationality of the same region), were a major force in Chinese history from the

Jīn Dynasty, in which the Mǎzhēn ruled northern China for over a century (1115-1234), to the Manchu-run Qīng Dynasty (1644-1911). After the Qīng dynasty established its capital in Běijīng, great numbers of Mǎn filtered south through Shānhǎi Pass in Héběi and intermixed with the Hǎn Chinese. In this century, large-scale Hǎn migration to the Northeast (hundreds of thousands every year) has caused the region's population to swell to 99.4 million (1976 estimate), of which only 2.4 million are of the Mǎn nationality. Although their ethnic origins are distinct from the Hǎn Chinese, the Mǎn today are virtually assimilated with the Hǎn racially, culturally, and linguistically. Most, for example, speak only Chinese; the Mǎn language, which in the last dynasty was still used alongside Chinese in official court documents, is well on its way to extinction (some Mǎn speakers remain in Àihuī and Fùyǔ counties in Hēilóngjiāng).



The three provinces of the Northeast

Xīběi: "the Northwest," a region which includes Níngxià, Xīnjiāng, Qīnghǎi, Shānxī, and Gānsù.

qùguo le: "have gone to" Notice that new-situation le may follow a verb phrase with the ending -guo. Here are some other examples:

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| A: Nǐ chīguo fàn le ma? | Have you eaten yet? |
| B: Chīguo le. | Yes. |
| A: Tā zuì xīnde diànyǐng nǐ kànguo le ma? | Have you seen his latest movie yet? |
| B: Kànguo le. | Yes. |

Dàqǐng: An oil-producing center (recently given the status of a city) in the Sǒng-Nèn Plain of southern Hēilóngjiāng province. Dàqǐng is the nation's leading producer of crude oil, accounting for more than one third of the crude oil volume. China's oil industry has only developed since 1949, and it was the monumental exploration and drilling at Dàqǐng, under extremely adverse conditions, that in large part enabled China to meet her own oil needs by 1963. In 1964, Máo Zédǒng called on the whole nation to learn from Dàqǐng in industry (Gōngyè xué Dàqǐng), a slogan which continued to be heard through the Cultural Revolution.

8. A: Nǐ xiān zǒu hǎo le, wǒ jiù lái.
 You go ahead and leave. I'll be right there.

B: Hǎo. Huí tóu jiān.
 Okay. See you in a while.

Notes on No. 8

hǎo le: The ending hǎo le, literally "and then it will be okay," has a special meaning; the translation varies with the context. It is used when the speaker (1) agrees to something, permits someone to do something, or suggests that someone do something, or (2) gives in to something, doesn't care if something happens.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Wǒ qù hǎo le.
Zhào nǐ shuōde bàn hǎo le. | I'll go. (AGREEING TO DO SOMETHING)
We'll do it your way, then. (AGREEING TO DO SOMETHING) |
| Nǐ shuō Zhōngwén hǎo le, wǒ tīngdedǒng. | Go ahead and speak Chinese. I understand. (SUGGESTING) |
| Nǐ náqù hǎo le, wǒ yǒngwán le. | Go ahead and take it. I'm finished with it. (PERMITTING) |
| (2) Nǐ bú qù hǎo le, wǒ bù gāoxìng. | So don't go, then. But I'm not happy about it. |
| Ràng tā shuō hǎo le, wǒ bù guǎn! | Let him say what he wants to; I don't care! |

Huí tóu jiān: "See you later" This is a Běijīng expression. Huí tóu, literally, "turn one's head," is used colloquially to mean "later," as in

Huí tóu wǒmen zài tán. We'll talk it over later.

Wǒ huí tóu jiù lái. I'll be there in a minute.

Use Huí tóu jiān when you expect to see the other person shortly.

9. A: Zhàiwèi xuézhě yánjiūde shì nǎifāngmiànde wèntí? What subject does this scholar study?
- B: Tā yánjiūde zhǔyào shì yǔyán hé yǔyánxué. She mainly studies languages and linguistics.

Notes on No. 9

xuézhě: "scholar" You will find the ending -zhě in a number of words where it means -de rén, "a person who...." In Unit 4, you will learn gōngzuò-zhě, "worker (in a certain field)." Other examples:

- dúzhě reader (dú, "read," will be presented in the next module)
- jìzhě reporter, journalist (lit., "one who records things")
- huòdézhě recipient of a prize, etc. (huòdé means "to obtain")

zhǔyào: As an adjective, "major/main/essential," and as an adverb, "mainly," "essentially":

Qù Xīběi, zhǔyào de mùdì shì xiǎng liǎojiě yidiǎnr guānyú nǎrde nóngyè shēngchǎn qíngkuàng. The main reason for going to the Northwest is to find out about agricultural production there.

Wǒmen zhèr zhǔyào de wèntí shì méi qián. Our main problem here is that we have no money.

Nàr zhǔyào zhǎnlǎn xiē shénme? What are the main things they exhibit there? ("What mainly do they exhibit there?")

Néng bu néng qù, zhǔyào kàn shíjiān. Whether or not we can go depends mainly on time.

Tā zhǔyào jiǎngde shì Zhōngguo-de shíyóu shēngchǎn qíngkuàng. He spoke mainly about China's oil production.

There are times when zhǔyào must be translated as "essentially" rather than as "mainly," for example:

Wǒ jīntiān lái, zhǔyào shì yīnwei wǒde péngyou dōu lái le. I came today essentially because all my friends came.

This sentence does not imply that there are any other reasons of lesser importance.

yǔyán: "language" The counter for a language is usually -zhǒng, "kind":

Xué yìzhǒng yǔyán bú shì yìtiān liǎngtiānde shì. Learning a language isn't something you can do overnight ("in a day or two").

Zhōngwén shì yìzhǒng bǐjiǎo
nán xuéde yǔyán.

Chinese is a rather difficult language
to learn.

Tā chángcháng jiāo tamen yìxiē
bù yīnggāi jiāode yǔyán.

He often teaches them language (words
and phrases) that shouldn't be taught.

-Yǔ can be used as the ending for the names of languages:

Yīngyǔ	English	Xībānyáyǔ	Spanish
Hānyǔ	Chinese	Déyǔ	German
Rìyǔ	Japanese	Fǎyǔ	French
Ālābóyǔ	Arabic	Éyǔ	Russian
Mǎnyǔ	Manchurian	Yīndìyǔ	Hindi
		wàiyǔ	foreign language

The ending -huà (as in Zhōngguó huà) refers to just the spoken language.
-Wén can refer to (1) the written, or (2) the written plus the spoken. -Yǔ
does not differentiate spoken and written.

10. A: Zài Xīnjiāng Nèiměng yídài
méiyǒu hěn duō rén shuō
pǔtōnghuà ba?

In the region of Xīnjiāng and Inner
Mongolia not many people speak
standard Chinese, do they?

B: Duì, zài nèixiē dìfang,
shǎoshù mínzú yǔyán zhàn
zhǔyàode dīwei.

Right. In those places the minority
nationality languages occupy the
major position.

Notes on No. 10

Xīnjiāng: Formerly spelled Sinkiang in English. Xīnjiāng, an autonomous
region (not a province) in northwest China, has the largest area of all
China's provinces and autonomous regions. Population: 12 million (1981 est.),
of which about 6 million are of the Uygur nationality. For a description of
the region and its people, see Unit 6 Reference Notes.

Nèiměng: Also Nèi Měnggǔ. Inner Mongolia (also called Nei Monggol)
is an autonomous region in north central China, population 9 million. About
twenty percent of the population are Mongols. The capital is Hohhot (in
Chinese, Hūshéotè).

Note: The facts as represented in exchange 10 need to be qualified. It
is true that the minority nationality languages are still the most widely used
in the vast rural areas of Xīnjiāng, Inner Mongolia, and other minority
nationality regions. The larger cities in these regions, however, now have
substantial Hān Chinese populations, and in some cities the Hān are even in
the majority.

shǎoshù: "minority" or "a minority of," "a small number of" This is the
opposite of duōshù, "majority," which you learned in the Society module.

Tāmen shì shǎoshù.

They are in the minority.

Zhǐ yǒu shǎoshù Mǎn rén hái
néng shuō Mǎnyǔ.

There are only a small number of
Manchurians who can still speak
the Manchu language.

mínzú: "nationality," "a people," or "nation" in the non-governmental
sense: a people who share common origins, history, customs, and language.
Examples: Zhōnghuá mínzú, "the Chinese nation"; Ālābó mínzú, "the Arab
nation"; mínzú dúlì, "national independence."

Měiguó shì yíge duō mínzúde
guójiā.

America is a nation of many ethnic
groups.

Shǎoshù mínzú is "minority nationality," often translated as "national
minority." In the U.S., we more often speak of "ethnic minorities," but the
Chinese prefer the translation "minority nationalities."

zhàn: (1) "to occupy" a space, area, or position, (2) "to make up,"
"to constitute," a proportion of an amount, or (3) "to take up" an amount of
time

Zěnmé hái yǒu rén zhànzhè zhèige
fángjiān? Gāi wǒmen yòng le!

Why are there still people occupying
this room? It's our turn to use
it!

Zhèizhāng zhuōzi tài zhàn
dìfang le, bǎ ta bānchūqu.

This table takes up too much space.
Let's move it out.

Zhèige fángzi zhānde dìfang yǒu
duō dà?

How much space does this building
take up?

Zài wǒmen xuéxiàode xuéshēngzhōng,
shǎoshù mínzú xuéshēng zhàn yí-
bàn zuǒyòu.

Minority nationality students make
up about half of the students in
our school.

Xiànzài fùnǚ zài shèhuìshang zhàn
yuè lái yuè zhòngyào de dìwei le.

Now women are occupying a more and
more important position in society.

Zhēn duìbuqǐ, zhànle nǐ bù shǎo
shíjiān.

Please excuse me for taking up so
much of your time.

11. A: Nǐmen xiǎng qùde dìqū quán
dōu qù le ba? Hái yǒu
shénme wèntí meiyǒu?

Have you been to all the regions you
wanted to go to? Do you have any
more questions?

B: Méiyǒu shénme wèntí le,
Lǚxíngshède gōngzuò gǎode
hěn hǎo, wǒmen hěn mǎnyì.

We don't have any more questions.
The China Travel Service did a very
good job and we're very pleased.

Notes on No. 11

dìqū: "region," "district," "area"

Běijīng dìqū	the Běijīng area
Huáběi dìqū	the north China region
duō shān dìqū	a mountainous district

quán: (1) "to be complete," (2) "whole," "entire," (3) "entirely," "completely"

Zhèitào shū bù quán, dìsìběn méiyǒu le.	This set of books is incomplete; the fourth volume is missing.
Quán shìjiè yíngòng yǒu duōshǎo zhōng yǔyán?	How many languages are there in the whole world?
Liǎngsānnián méi shuō Zhōngwén le, chàbuduō quán wàng le.	After not speaking Chinese for two or three years, (I) have almost completely forgotten it.
Wǒ bǎ nài jǐjiàn yīfu quán gěi tā le.	I gave all those articles of clothing to him.

Lǚxíngshè: Short for Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè, China Travel Service (CTS), or Zhōngguó Guójì Lǚxíngshè, China International Travel Service (CITS). These are the two government agencies through which all travel arrangements in China are handled. Representatives from CITS accompany tour groups in China.

gǎo: "to do," "to carry on," "to engage in," "to work in" a certain field or endeavor.

Gǎo shénme ne?	What are you doing? OR What are you up to?
Zhèijiàn shì wǒ gǎolai gǎoqù gǎobuhǎo.	I've tried doing this all different ways and I just can't get it right.

(gǎo a task or endeavor)	{	gǎo wèishēng	to do cleanup
		gǎo shēngchǎn	to engage in production
		gǎo shèhuìzhǔyì	to practice socialism
		gǎo Sìge Xiàndàihuà	to carry on the Four Modernizations
(gǎo a line of work)	{	Tā shì gǎo fānyǐde.	He's a translator. ("He works in translation.")
		Tā shì gǎo wénxuéde.	He works in literature.
		Tā shì gǎo xīnwénde.	He's a journalist/reporter/etc.
		Tā shì gǎo nóngyède.	He works in agriculture.

Gǎohǎo, which is especially common in political talk, means "to make a good job of (something)," or "to handle (something) well":

Gǎohǎo shēngchǎn shì wǒmen zuì zhòngyàode gōngzuò.	Handling production well is our most important job.
--	---

Gǎo is used with many resultative verb endings (in the following two examples gǎo is interchangeable with nòng, "to do"):

Shéi bǎ wǒde chē gǎohuài le?

Who broke my bicycle/car?

Hài, nǐ yòu gǎocuò le, zhèige
zì bú shì "niǎo," shì "wū."

No, you've got it wrong again. This
character isn't "niǎo," it's "wū."

Zěnmē gǎode is an idiom, used as follows:

Zěnmē gǎode?!

{ What went wrong?! OR
What's wrong?! OR
What the . . . ?!

A: Tā shuō tā bù lái le.

Now he says he isn't coming.

B: Zěnmē gǎode?

How come?

A: Tā bù shūfu.

He isn't feeling well.

Nǐ zěnmē gǎode?!

{ What's with you? OR
What's the matter with you? OR
What the heck are you doing?

mǎnyì: "to be pleased," "to be satisfied" This is often used with the prepositional verb duì, "toward," equivalent to English "pleased with":

Hěn duō rén duì Dǎngde yìxiē
zhèngcè bù mǎnyì.

Many people are dissatisfied with
some of the Party's policies.

Wǒde huídá, nǐ mǎnyì ma?

Are you satisfied with my answer?

Tā duì nǐ zhème hǎo, nǐ wèi-
shénme hái bù mǎnyì?

He's so good to you; why are you
still dissatisfied?

Yíge mǎnyide huídá is an idiom for "a satisfactory answer."

Wǒ xīwàng néng gěi nǐ yíge
mǎnyide huídá.

I hope I can give you a satisfactory
answer.

Unit 1, Review Dialogue

Professor James Armstrong (B) (Āmùsītèlǎng Jiàoshǒu), the leader of an American tour group visiting China, is talking in his room at the Běijīng Hotel with Chén Guóqiáng (A) of the China Travel Service (Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè). Later they are joined by Beth Troiano (C) (Bèisī Tèluóǎnnuò), an American linguist.

- A: Āmùsītèlǎng Jiàoshǒu, nín hǎo, xiūxide zěnmeyàng? Hái lèi bu lei? Hello, Professor Armstrong. How was your rest? Are you still tired?
- B: Hái hǎo, bú tài lèi le, shuōle yíge zhōngtóu, hǎoduō le. Nǐ zuò, nǐ zuò. Bú yào kèqǐ. Duì le, wǒ hái wàngle wèn nǐ, Chén Xiānsheng, wǒ zěnmé chēnghu nǐ hǎo ne? Pretty good. I'm not too tired anymore. I slept for an hour and I feel a lot better. Sit down, sit down. Make yourself at home. Oh, yes, I keep forgetting to ask you, Mr. Chén, what shall I call you?
- A: Nín jiù jiào wǒ Chén Guóqiáng hǎo le. Zài zǒuláng gōngzuòde Lǎo Wáng zhīdao wǒ. Nín yǒu shì, jiù jiào tā zhǎo Xiǎo Chén, tā jiù zhīdao le. Just call me Chén Guóqiáng. Lǎo Wáng who works in the corridor knows me. If you have any problems, just tell him to get Xiǎo Chén. He'll know who.
- B: Haha, Lǎo Wáng, Xiǎo Chén, yǒu yísi. Duì le, nǐ lái, yǒu shénme shì ma? Haha, Lǎo Wáng, Xiǎo Chén, that's interesting. Well: Is there some particular reason you came?
- A: Shì zhèiyàngde. Wǒ lái zhǎo nǐ, shì xiǎng zài hé nǐ tán yíxià nǐ-mende lǚxíng jìhuà. It's like this. I've come to see you to discuss your travel plans some more with you.
- B: Wǒmen zài Niǔ Yuēde shíhou, zhèige jìhuà yǐjīng chābuduō ānpái-hǎo le, shì Lǚxíngshè ānpáide. When we were in New York, the plans were already almost all arranged. It was the (China) Travel Service that arranged them.
- A: Zuìjìn lǚxíngde rén xiāngdāng duō, wǒmen zuì hǎo zài tányi-tán. There have been quite a few tourists lately. It would be best to discuss [this] some more.
- B: Dāngrán, dāngrán. Búguò, nǐ zhīdao Bèisī ba? Of course, of course. But, you know Beth, don't you?
- A: Bèisī? Wǒ xiǎngyíxiǎng. À, Bèisī. Tèluóǎnnuò Xiǎojiě? Beth? Let me think. Ah, Beth. Miss Troiano?
- B: Yídiǎnr bú cuò, zhèng shì tā! Tā bǐjiào liǎojiě wǒmen zhèi èrshíge rén zuì xīwang cānguānde dìfang shì shénme. Wǒmen qǐng tā lái tántan, hǎo bu hǎo? Absolutely right, that's her! She understands more about what places our group of twenty people most want to visit. Let's ask her to come and discuss this, okay?

- A: Hǎojiē. Yào bu yào wǒ qù qǐng tā?
B: Bú bì. Wǒ dǎ ge diànhuà.
- Sure. Do you want me to go and ask her?
You don't have to do that; I'll make a phone call.

(Professor Armstrong telephones Beth Troiano, then Chen and Armstrong continue to talk while waiting for her.)

- A: Jiàoshòu, nǐ juéde Běijīng Fàndiàn zěnmeyàng? Hái keyì zhù ba?
B: Bú cuò, bú cuò. Jiù shì shíjiān chángè, huī juéde kōngqì bù hǎo.
A: Haha...
Professor, how do you like the Běijīng Hotel? Is it livable?
It's nice, very nice. It's just that after a while one feels that the air isn't good.
Haha...

(There is a knock at the door, then Miss Troiano enters.)

- C: Wǒ lái le. Zhèiwèi shì...?
A: Chén Guóqiáng. Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshède.
C: Nǐ hǎo. Wǒ shì Bèisī Tèluóǎnnuò.
A: Huānyíng nín lái Zhōngguó cānguān fǎngwèn. Tīngshuō nín shì gāo yǎnyánxuéde?
C: Shì.
A: Suǒyì nínde Zhōngwén nàme hǎo!
C: À! Xiànzài hěn duō rén duì Zhōngwén yǒu xìngqù, Zhōngwén hǎode rén yuè lái yuè duō le.
A: Shìde, shìde. Hǎo, xiànzài wǒmen lái tántan lǚxíng jìhuàde shì. Zhèige jìhuà zǔi hǎo jīntiān, míngtiān liǎngtiān quánbù ānpái-hǎo.
B: Hǎode, hǎode.
C: Wǒmen zhèicì lái de èrshíge rén, dàbùfèn shì xuézhě, jiàoshòu. Zài Niú Yuē, wǒmen yǐjīng hé Zhōngguó fāngmiàn liánxíguò le, wǒmen duì Zhōngguóde gōngnóngyè qíngkuàng, jiāoyù qíngkuàng dōu hěn yǒu
- Here I am. This is...?
Chén Guóqiáng, of the China Travel Service.
How are you? I'm Beth Troiano.
Welcome to China. I've heard that you work in linguistics?
Yes.
That's why your Chinese is so good!
Oh, a lot of people are interested in Chinese now. And there are more and more people with good Chinese.
Yes, yes. All right, let's talk about your travel plans. It would be best to arrange the whole thing in the next day or two.
Fine, fine.
The majority of our group of 25 who came this time are scholars and professors. In New York, we have already been in contact with the Chinese. We are very much interested in the Chinese industrial

xìngqū.

and agricultural situation and the educational situation.

A: Nǐmen zhèicǐ zhǔyào shì zài Shànghǎi, Běijīng zhèixiē dìfāng cānguān, fǎngwèn, shì bu shì?

This time you are mainly visiting and touring in Běijīng and Shànghǎi, these places, ins't that so?

C: Duì le. Hái yǒu, wǒmen yǒu hěn duō rén, duì Zhōngguó de Dōngběi dìqū fēicháng yǒu xìngqū, tèbié shì Dàqīng zhèige shíyóu chéng. Bù zhīdào wǒmen shì bu shì kěyǐ qù cānguān....?

That's right. But also, we have many people who are especially interested in China's Northeast region, in particular the oil city, Dàqīng. I don't know whether we can visit it....?

A: Qù Dàqīng dàgāi méiyǒu shénme wèntí.

There won't be any problem with going to Dàqīng.

B: Wǒmen hái yào qù nèixiē yǒu míngde dìfāng, xiàng Sūzhōu, Hángzhōu, Huángshān, Guǐlín, shénme. Zhèixiē dìfāng hé Zhōngguó de lìshǐ, wénhuà, yǒu hěn dàde guānxi. Dào Zhōngguó lái, zhèixiē dìfāng bù néng bú qù.

We also want to go to those famous places, like Sūzhōu, Hángzhōu, Huángshān, Guǐlín, etc. Those places are closely related to China's history and culture. One musn't miss them on a trip to China.

A: Dāngrán, dāngrán. Zhèixiē dōu yǐjīng chābuduō ānpáihǎo le.

Of course, of course. Those have almost all been arranged.

B: Nà hǎo.

That's fine.

C: Wǒ kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dào Zhōngguó de Xīběi qù yíxià?

Could I go to China's Northwest?

A: Ò! Qù Xīběi...zhèi yǒu yídiǎn wèntí.

Oh! To the Northwest. That's a bit of a problem.

C: Zěnme ne? Shì bu shì yīnwèi shíjiān bú gòu a?

What's that? Is it because there isn't enough time?

A: Duì, shíjiān bú gòu. Wǒ xiǎng, nǐmen zài Zhōngguó jiù yǒu sìge xīngqī, Huáiběi, Dōngběi, Huánán, Xīnán, bǎ shíjiān chābuduō quán zhānwán le. Xiǎocǐ lái Zhōngguó zài qù Xīběi ba. Nín kàn hǎo bù hǎo?

Right, there isn't enough time. I think that since you only have four weeks in China, your time will be almost entirely taken by North China, Manchuria, South China and the southwest. Why not visit the Northwest on your next trip to China. What do you say?

C: Duìbùqǐ, wǒ gǎode shì yǔyánxué! Nèiměng, Xīnjiāng yí dài wǒ zhēn xiǎng qù.

I'm sorry, but my work is linguistics! I really want to go to Inner Mongolia and Xīnjiāng.

B: Tā yánjiūde zhǔyào jiù shì Zhōngguó de shǎoshù mínzú yǔyán.

Her research is mainly on the minority nationality languages.

- A: Hài! Zhēn duìbuqǐ, wǒ hái yīwéi nín gāode shì pǔtōnghuà ne!
Oh! Pardon me! I thought your work was in the standard language!
- C: Méi guānxi, méi guānxi. Búguò yǒu jīhuì wǒ hái shì xiǎng qù Xībēi kànkàn.
That's all right, that's all right. Nonetheless if there's a chance, I would still like to go visit the Northwest.
- A: Duì le, Yúnnán, Guìzhōu, Guǎngxī yǐdài yě yǒu hěn duō shǎoshù mínzú. Nín qù Guǐlín de shíhòu jiù kéyǐ zuò diǎnr yánjiū le!
Oh yes--the areas of Yúnnán, Guìzhōu, and Guǎngxī also have many minority nationalities--you can do some research when you go to Guǐlín!
- C: Òu! Nánfāng gēn běifāngde yǔyán bù yíyàng. Yàoshi yǒu bànfǎ hái shì bāng wǒ ānpai yíxiar ba.
Oh! The languages of the north and south are not the same. If it's possible, I'd still rather you arranged it for me.
- A: Tsk...Zhè shìr yǒu yìdiǎnr máfan, děng wǒ hé língdǎo yánjiū yíxià zài shuō ba.
Hmmm...This is a bit troublesome. Let me discuss it with the leader, and then we'll see about it.
- B: Ò, nǐ zài xiǎngxiǎng, rúguǒ kéyǐ ānpái, nà duì Bèisī shì hěn dàde bāngzhù.
Oh, you give it some more thought. If it can be arranged, that would be a great help to Beth.
- C: Duì le. Nín shìshí kàn.
Right. See if you can.
- A: Ng...Zhèiyàng hǎo bu hǎo? Nimen fǎngwènle Běijīng hé Dàqīng yǐhòu, Àmúsitèlǎng Jiàoshòu nimen shíjiǔgè rén hái shì qù Shànghǎi, Sūzhōu, Hángzhōu, Guǐlín. Tèluò-ānnuò Xiǎojiě gēn língwài yíge lǚxíngtuán qù Xībēi. Líkǎi Xībēi yǐhòu, yě jiù shì bāngge yuè yǐhòu, nín zài jīngguò Shànghǎi dào Guǎngzhōu.
Hmmm...How about this: After you've visited Běijīng and Dàqīng, Professor Armstrong and the other 19 people still go on to Shànghǎi, Sūzhōu, Hángzhōu and Guǐlín, but Miss Troiano goes to the Northwest with another tour group. After leaving the Northwest, that is, after half a month, then you go to Guǎngzhōu by way of Shànghǎi.
- B: Ng, nà wǒmen hái shì yìqǐ còng Shēnzhèn líjīng.
Hmm, then we still leave the country together from Shēnzhèn.
- A: Duì, nimen kàn zěnmeyàng. Yěxǔ zhè shì yíge bànfa. Búguò, xíng bu xíng, hái děi wǒmen yánjiūle yǐhòu cái zhīdao.
Right. See what you think. Perhaps that might work. However, we won't know if it's possible until we've looked into it.
- C: Zài wǒmende lǚxíngtuánli, wǒ hái yǒu jǐge péngyou. Wǒ yě děi
I have several other friends in our tour group. I must talk it

hé tāmen tántán, xiǎngxiǎng
zěnmeyàngr hǎo.

over with them too, and see what
is best.

A: Wǒmen dōu yánjiūyánjiū zài
zuò ānpái. Búguò, wǒmen děi kuài
diǎnr.

Let's both look into it before
making arrangements. But we should
be quick about it.

B: Hǎode. Wǒmen wǎnfàn yǐhòu zài
tán yíci. Nǐ xiǎng zěnmeyàng,
Bèisǐ? Láidejí ba?

Fine. Let's talk it over again
after dinner. What do you think,
Beth? Does that give you enough
time?

C: Wǒ xiǎng kéyì. Nàme, jiù máfan
nín le.

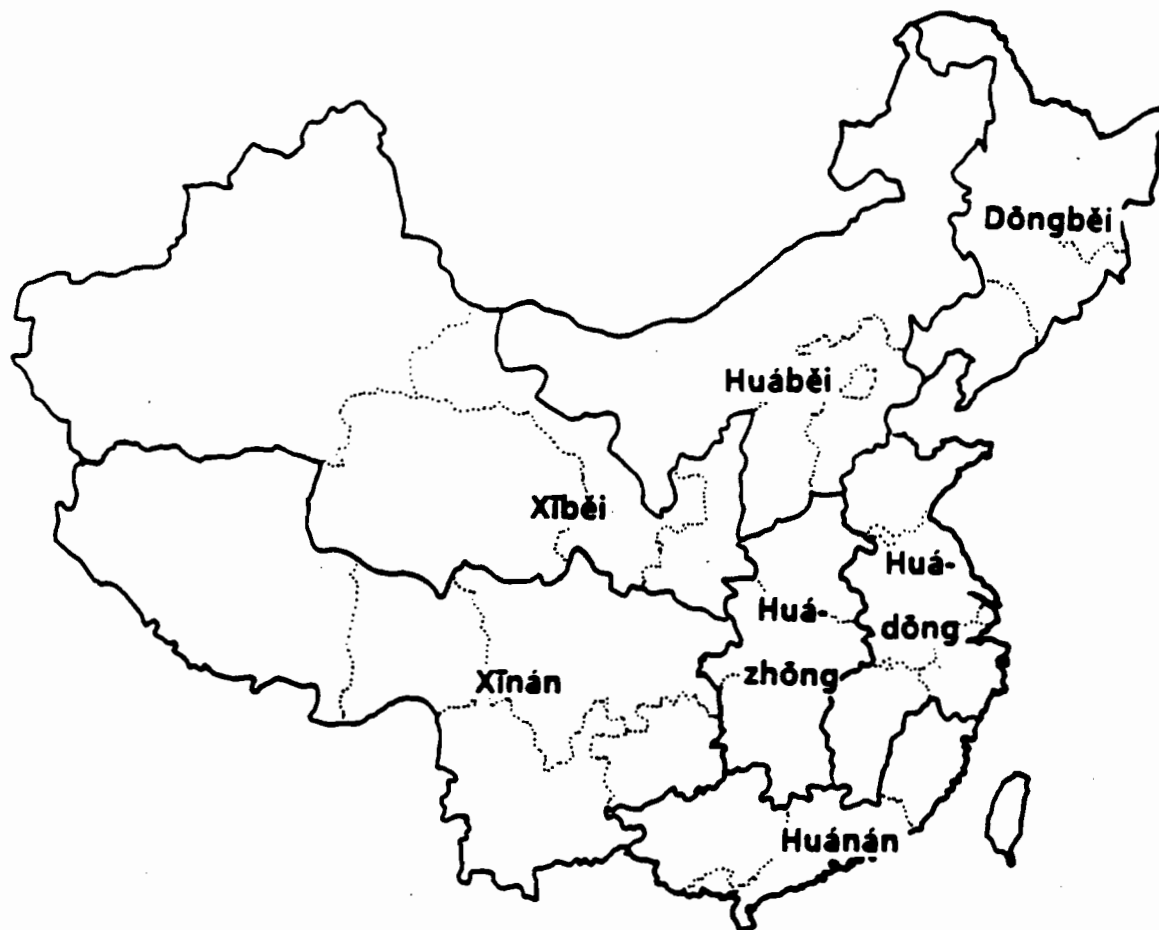
I think so. Well then, we'll
trouble you (to take care of this).

A: Méiyǒu shenme. Wǒ xīwàng néng
ānpáide héshì. Huí tóu jiàn.

It's nothing. I hope it can be
arranged suitably. See you later.

C: Xièxie nín. Huí tóu jiàn!

Thank you. See you later!



The regions of China

Unit 1, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American tourist discusses hotel reservations with the desk clerk at the Běijīng Hotel.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

kěnéng	to be possible
kōngchulai	to become vacant
tiáozi	a brief, informal note

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What problem is the tourist discussing with the desk clerk?
2. How does the desk clerk discover the change in plans?
3. Describe what actions took place by filling in the spaces below:

	Hotel personnel	American tourist group	Group still occupying rooms
2:00			
2:30			
2:40			
3:00			

TVL, Unit 1

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American walks into the dining room of the Běijīng Hotel in a hurry and calls a waiter.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

-fèn	(counter for portions of food)
huǒtuǐ sānmíngzhī	ham sandwich
kǒuyīn	accent
yǔyánxuéjiā	linguist
tīngdechū	to be able to distinguish by listening
yǒu míng	to be famous
gǎitiān	another day

Note: The waiter in this dialogue speaks with a slight Shànghǎi accent.

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why is the American in a hurry?
2. Give some examples of words that the waiter pronounces differently.
3. What subject is the American interested in?
4. What are the waiter's interests? Is he interested in linguistics?
5. Can you infer why the waiter cuts the conversation short?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

In this conversation, a Washington Post correspondent talks to a worker in front of the Dàhuá Cinema in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

chuāngkǒu	window (e.g., ticket window)
jìzhě	newspaper reporter
xīnwénpiǎn	newsreel
"Xīnwén Jiǎnbào"	"News Summary"
-bù	(counter for films)
gùshipiānr	feature film
<u>Wúduǒ Jīnhuā</u>	<u>Five Golden Flowers</u> (a film)
Dàlǐ	(a city in Yúnnán province)
àiqíng gùshi	love story
yǎn diànyǐng	to show a movie
piānzi	film, movie

Questions for Exercise 4

1. How long has the reporter been in Běijīng?
2. What things does the reporter like about Běijīng?
3. What movies and newsreels has he seen? Which one does the worker recommend?
4. From the newsreel the reporter describes, what can you gather about how Chinese "newsreels" differ in content from American ones?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

An American tourist (A) talks with the front desk clerk (B) at the Beijing Hotel.

- A: Ài, duìbuqǐ, lóushàngde fángjiān bú gòu le. Say, excuse me, there aren't enough rooms for us upstairs.
- B: Bú gòu le? Zěnmē kěnéng ne? Wǒmen ānpaide hǎohāorde. There aren't enough? How is that possible? We made all the arrangements.
- A: Shì zhēnde, wǒmen zhèige cānguāntuán yígòng èrshísānge rén, nǐmen gāngcái shuō wǒmen quánbù dōu zhù zài qīlǒu, yígòng yǒu shísi ge fángjiān, duì bu duì? It's true. In all there are twenty-three people in our tour group. You just said that we're all staying on the seventh floor, in fourteen rooms altogether, right?
- B: Duìbuqǐ, qǐng màn yidiǎnr shuō, wǒ bú jìde le. Dēngyíděng, wǒ lái kànkan! Ò, zài zhèr! Nǐmen shì yíge Měiguóde lǚxíngtuán shì bu shì? I'm sorry, could you say that more slowly? I don't remember. Wait a minute, let me have a look. Oh, here it is. You are an American tour group, aren't you?
- A: Shì a! That's right!
- B: Èrshísānge rén, yígòng kāi shísi ge fángjiān, quán zài qīlǒu. Duì a! Méi cuò a! Twenty-three people taking fourteen rooms altogether, all on the seventh floor. That's right! There's no mistake!
- A: Bú duì! Jiù yǒu shíèr ge kōng fángjiān, yǒu liǎng ge fángjiān hái yǒu rén na! No! There are only twelve free rooms. Two of the rooms still have people in them!
- B: Hái yǒu rén? Zěnmē huì ne? Wǒ hái yíwéi tāmen jīntiān zǎochen yǐjīng cóng Shēnzhèn líjīng le ne! Zěnmē dào xiànzài hái zhàn zhe wūzi ne? Still have people in them? How could that be? I thought they had left the country this morning by way of Shēnzhèn! Why are they still occupying the rooms?
- A: Bù zhīdào, nín zuì hǎo xiǎngxiang biéde bànfǎ, kànkan hái yǒu méiyǒu kōng fángzi. I don't know. You'd better think of some other solution, and see if there are any other rooms free.
- B: Biéde kōng fángzi shì yíding méiyǒu a! Wǒ xiān liǎojiě yíxià zhèliǎng ge fángzi wèishénme dào xiànzài hái méiyǒu kōngchulai! Ò! Zhèr yǒu yíge tiáozi, shuō tāmen gāi zài xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng líkǎi Běijīng. Hǎojíle! Méi wèntí le. I'm positive there aren't any other free rooms. First let me try and find out why those two rooms haven't been vacated yet. Oh! There's a note here saying that their plans have been changed and that they're leaving Běijīng at three this afternoon. Great! No more problem.

- A: Xiànzài cái liǎngdiǎn zhōng,
wǒmen hái děi děng duō jiǔ?
It's only two o'clock now, how much
longer do we have to wait?
- B: Liǎngdiǎn tāmen jiù děi líkāi
fángjiān, dào fēijīchǎng děi yòng
sìshífēn zhōng ne! Wǒmen gāo
yíxià wèishēng, sānshífēn zhōng
ba!
They'll have to leave their rooms
at two: it takes forty minutes to
get to the airport! It will be
thirty minutes while we clean the
rooms.
- A: Nàme liǎngdiǎn bàn wǒmen jiù yǒu
fángjiān le.
So we can have the rooms at two-
thirty.
- B: Duì le. Dào cāntīng hē bēi kā-
fēi, xiūxi yíxià, shíjiān jiù dào
le.
Right. Why don't you go have a cup
of coffee in the dining room and rest
a bit, and then it will be time.
- A: Hǎo, xièxie nín. Huf tóu jiàn.
Okay. Thank you. See you later.
- B: Huf tóu jiàn.
See you later.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American (A) walks into the dining room of the Běijīng Hotel in a hurry and calls a waiter (B).

- A: Duìbuqǐ, yíbēi rè kāfēi, jiù yào
niúnnǎi, bú yào táng, yífèn huǒtuǐ
sānmíngzhī. Yuè kuài yuè hǎo!
Excuse me, a cup of hot coffee, with
cream only, no sugar, and a ham sand-
wich. As fast as possible!
- B: Měitiān dōu shì "yuè kuài yuè
hǎo," nǐ zhēn máng a!
Every day it's "as fast as poss-
ible." You're so busy!
- A: Nǐ zhīdao tāmen gěi wǒ ānpaile
nàme duō yào fǎngwènde dìfang.
Zhēn shì yítiān yǒu sānshíliù
zhōngtóu cái hǎo.
You know, they arranged so many
places for me to visit. I only wish
that there were thirty-six hours in
a day.
- B: Hǎo, hǎo. Wǒ mǎshàng jiù lái.
Okay. I'll be right back.
- (One minute later, the waiter comes back with the lunch.)
- B: Nǐde sānmíngzhī, kāfēi, niúnnǎi.
Your sandwich, coffee, and milk.
- A: Zhēn kuài. Xièxie nǐ. Āi, lái-
le sìtiān le, kěshì háishi bù zhī-
dao zěnmē chēnghu ní, zhēn duìbuqǐ.
That was really fast. Thank you.
Gee, I've been here four days and I
still don't know how to address you,
I'm very sorry.
- B: Nǐ jiù jiào wǒ Xiǎo Liú hǎo le,
bǐjiǎo róngyi jì.
Just call me Xiǎo Liú. It's the
easiest to remember.

- A: Xiǎo Liú, tīng nǐde kǒuyīn nǐ dàgài shì nánfāng rén. Shì Shàng-hǎi rén, duì bu duì?
- B: Nǐ zhēn shì yǔyánxuéjiā, búdàn huì shuō Zhōngguó huà, hái tīngde-chū nánfāng, běifāng kǒuyīnde bù tóng.
- A: Náli, náli. Wǒ yánjiūde zhǔyào shì pǔtōnghuà, duì fāngyán méiyǒu shenme yánjiū, zhǔyào shì wǒ duì Zhōngwén fēicháng yǒu xìngqù. Dōngběi, Xīběi, nánfāng, běifāng, měiyíge dìfāng, měiyíge dìqū dōu yǒu zìjǐde yǔyán xíguān, zhēn shì fēicháng yǒu yìsì.
- B: Nǐ duì Zhōngwén zhèyang yǒu xìngqù, zhèicì lái fāngwèn yǒu méiyǒu gēn Zhōngguóde yǔyánxuéjiā tántan?
- A: Tán le. Zhèicì Zhōngguó fāng-mian ānpai wǒ gēn hěn duō xuézhě jiànle miàn. Zhèixiē xuézhě zài guówài dōu shì hěn yǒu míngde.
- B: Nà hǎojíle. Nǐ kényǒu yǒu jīhuì duō liǎojiě yìdiǎn Zhōngguó yǔyán-xuéde qíngkuàng.
- A: Nǐ duì yǔyán yǒu xìngqù ma?
- B: Wǒ? Wǒ duì wénxué, lìshǐ dōu yǒu yìdiǎn xìngqù. Nǐ máng, wǒmen xiàyíci zài tán.
- A: Hǎo, hǎo. Gǎitiān zài liáo. Huí tóu jiàn, Xiǎo Liú.
- B: Zàijiàn.
- Xiǎo Liú, your accent sounds like you're probably a southerner. You're from Shànghǎi, right?
- You're a real linguist. Not only can you speak Chinese, you can even tell the difference between a northern and a southern accent.
- Thank you. I mainly do research on Standard Chinese. I'm not well versed in the dialects. The main thing is that I'm very interested in Chinese. Manchuria, the northwest, the south, the north, every place, each district, has its own ways of speech. It's really very interesting.
- Since you have such an interest in Chinese, did you talk with some Chinese linguists during this visit?
- Yes. On this trip, the Chinese arranged for me to meet with a lot of scholars who are very famous abroad.
- That's great. You get the chance to find out more about linguistics in China.
- Are you interested in language?
- Me? I have some interest in literature and history. You're busy, we'll talk some other time.
- Okay. We'll chat some other day. See you later, Xiǎo Liú.
- Good-bye.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

In front of Dàhuá Cinema in Běijīng, a worker (B) is cleaning the glass cases in which posters are displayed. The Washington Post correspondent, Richard Leblanc (A), walks over to him.

- A: Nín hǎo a! Mài piàode chuāngkǒu hái méi kāi na?
- B: Hello! The ticket window isn't open yet?

B: Měi na! Zài guò shífēn zhōng, jiùdiǎn jiù kāi le. Nín cóng nǎr lái ya? Pǔtōnghuà shuōde zhème hǎo?

Not yet. It'll open in another few minutes, at nine. Where are you from? You speak such good Chinese.

A: Wǒ shì Huáshèngdùn Yóubàode jīzhě, zài Běijīng yǐjīng sānge yuè le.

I'm a reporter from the Washington Post. I've been in Běijīng three months now.

B: Zài Běijīng chīde, zhùde dōu mǎnyì ma?

Are you pleased with the food and living conditions here?

A: Chīde, zhùde dōu mǎnyì, wǒ tèbié xǐhuan Běijīngde xiǎochī.

Yes. I especially like Běijīng's snacks.

B: Duì! Běijīngde xiǎochī shì yǒu míngde, Dōngdǎn yí dài de xiǎochī-diǎn nǐ dōu qùguo le ba?

Right. Běijīng is famous for its snacks. I suppose you've been to all the "little eateries" in the Dōngdǎn area?

A: Dàbùfen dōu qùguo le. Zhēn bú cuò, qùle hái xiǎng qù.

Most of them. They're great. You always want to go back.

B: Shì a, shì a! Nín jīntiān xiǎng kàn shénme diànyǐng a?

Yes indeed. What movie do you want to see today?

A: Xiǎng kàn liǎngge xīnwénpiān. Zhōngguóde xīnwénpiān bú cuò.

I want to see two newsreels. China has good newsreels.

B: Nín dōu kànguo shénme le?

What ones have you seen?

A: Wǒ cháng kàn "Xīnwén Jiǎnbào," shàngcǐ kànle jièshào Huánán, Huáběide yí bù xīnwénpiān, bú cuò.

I often see the "News Summaries." Last time I saw a newsreel presenting the north and south of China. It was pretty good.

B: Nín zuì xǐhuan nǎr a?

What place did you like best?

A: Wǒ zuì xǐhuan Huángshān hé Guǐlín.

I liked Mt. Huáng and Guǐlín best.

B: Ò! Nà shì hǎo dìfangr!

Oh, those are nice places.

A: Wǒ hái kànguo yí bù jièshào shǎoshù mínzú shēnghuóde diànyǐng.

I also saw a movie introducing the life of the minority nationalities.

B: Shì gùshìpiānr a, háishì xīnwénpiānr a?

Was it a feature film or a newsreel?

A: Xīnwénpiānr, shì guānyú Xīnjiāng, Nèiměng nǎi yí dài de.

A newsreel. It was about the region of Xīnjiāng and Inner Mongolia.

- B: Yǒu yí bù gùshìpiān jiào Wúduǒ Jīnhuā, shì Dàilǐ de shǎoshù mínzú-de àiqíng gùshi, nǐ kànguo ma?
There's a feature film called Five Golden Flowers, a love story about a national minority in Dàilǐ. Have you seen it?
- A: Méi kànguo. Dàilǐ zài nǎr? Guìzhōu?
No. Where's Dàilǐ? In Guìzhōu?
- B: Bù, zài Yúnnán, nèi dìfāngr kě hǎo kàn le.
No, in Yúnnán. It's a gorgeous place.
- A: Zhèige diànyǐng jīntiān yǎn ma?
Is that movie playing today?
- B: Jīnr bù yǎn, xiàlǐbài yǎn, nín yào kàn, dǎ ge diànhuà gēn wǒmen diànyǐngyuán liánxì yíxiar, wǒmen keyì gěi nín liú yízhāng piào.
Not today, but next week. If you want to see it, give us a call and get in touch, and we can save a ticket for you.
- A: Zhēn xièxie nín. Èi, zhèige guǎnggào shì guānyú Dàqǐngde ba?
Thanks a lot. Say, is this ad about Dàqǐng?
- B: Shì, nèi shì ge chū shíyóude dìfāngr. Jīntiānde "Xīnwén Jiǎnbào" lǐ jiù yǒu.
Yes. They produce oil there. It's in today's "News Summary."
- A: Ó, wǒ yào kàn zhèibù piānzi.
Oh, I want to see that film.
- B: Hǎo, mài piàode kāi ménr le. Nín kuài qù ba!
Okay, the ticket office is open now. Go and buy your ticket.
- A: Èi, xièxie nín. Zàijiàn!
Right. Thank you. Good-bye.
- B: Zàijiàn!
Good-bye.

Unit 2, Reference List

1. A: Nǐmen zhèngfǔ rènwéi mùqián dà-, zhōng-, xiǎoxuéde qíngkuàng zěnmeyàng? What does your government think of your colleges, high schools, and primary schools at present?
- B: Wǒmen xiǎng Wénhuà Gémìng yǐhòude jiàoyu shuǐpíng bú gòu gāo, wǒmen děi gǎibiàn zhèige qíngxíng. We think that since the Cultural Revolution educational standards have not been high enough, and we must change this situation.
2. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ yǒu jīhuade tígāo yībùfen dàxuéde shuǐpíng. The Chinese government is raising the standards in some universities in a planned way.
- B: À! Zhèi jiù shì bǎ dàxué fēnchéng yīlèi dàxué èrlèi dàxuéde yuányīn le! Ah! This is the reason that universities are divided into Class I and Class II.
3. A: Xiànzài Shànghǎide jiàoshī shùliang gòu bu gòu? At present is the number of teachers in Shànghǎi sufficient?
- B: Bú gòu, érqǐě, zhèi shì yíge pǔbiànde wèntí. No, moreover this is a widespread problem.
4. A: Bàoshang shuō Měiguó zhōng-xiǎoxuéde tiáojiàn dōu bú cuò. It says in the papers that conditions in American secondary and primary schools are quite good.
- B: Shì. Jībenshang měi sānshí-ge xuésheng yǒu yíwèi jiàoshī, lián zuì pǔtōngde xuéxiào yě yǒu diànshì, túshūguǎn, shenmede. Yes. In general there's a teacher for every thirty students, and even the most ordinary schools have televisions, a library, and so on.
5. A: Zhèngfǔ gěi pǔtōng xiǎoxué hé zhōngdiǎn xiǎoxuéde qián yíyàng duō ma? Does the government give the same amount of money to ordinary elementary schools as to key elementary schools?
- B: Yǒu yídiǎnr chābié. Wǒmen děi shǒuxiān zhàogu zhōngdiǎn xiǎoxué. There is some difference. We must first give consideration to key elementary schools.
6. A: Zhōngguó liúxuéshēng xuéxíde zhōngdiǎn shì zìrán kēxué ba? Chinese students abroad concentrate on the natural sciences, isn't that so?
- B: Duìle, shì kēxué jìshù. Right, on science and technology.

7. A: Nímende yánjiūshēng chū guó xuéxí yǐhòu dōu huí dàxué jiāo shū ma? After going abroad to study, do all your graduate students go back to the universities and teach?
- B: Bù. Yǒu yībùfen děi dānrèn jìshù fāngmiande lǐngdǎo gōngzuò. No. Some of them have to take up leading posts in technical fields.
8. A: Jīngguò sānniánde nǚlì, zhèige dìqūde nóngyè shēngchǎn tiáojiàn xiāngdāng bú cuò le. After three years of effort, conditions for agricultural production in this area are now quite good.
- B: Guānyú zhèige wèntí, nǐmen yǒu méiyǒu cáiliào, wǒmen kě bu kěyǐ dāihuiqu kànkan? Do you have any data on this subject that we could take back with us to read?
9. A: Yào shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuà zuì dàde wèntí shì shénme? What is the biggest problem in achieving the Four Modernizations?
- B: Shì jīngjì. Wǒmen děi zài bú tài chángde shíjiānlǐ bǎ zhěnggè guójiāde jīngjì gāoshàngqù. It's the economy. Before too long we must push ahead the economy of the whole country.
10. A: Wǒmende lífúxuésēng tíchulai jǐge wèntí. Our foreign exchange students have brought up a few problems.
- B: Wǒ tīngshuō le, tāmen xiǎng jiākuài xuéxí sùdù. Wǒmen yíding kǎolǚ. I heard. They want to speed up the pace of their studies. We'll be sure to consider it.
11. zhǐliàng (zhǐliàng, zhǐliàng) quality
12. Běidà Běijīng University (short for Běijīng Dàxué)
13. qūbié difference, distinction
14. shèhuì kēxué social sciences

Unit 2, Vocabulary List

Běidǎ -bùfen	Běijīng University part, section
cáiliào chābié chū guó	material(s) difference, disparity to leave one's country
dānrèn	to take on, to assume
fēn	to divide (into)
gémìng	revolution; to revolt
jiākuài jiàoshī jībenshang	to speed up teacher basically, on the whole, by and large
jīngguò jìshù	to go through, to experience technology; technical
kēxué	science
-lèi liúxuéshēng	category study-abroad students
mùqián	at present
nǔlì	to make great efforts, to try hard to exert oneself
pǔbiàn pǔtōng	universal, widespread, common regular, ordinary
qūbié	difference, distinction
rènwéi	to think, to consider, to hold
shèhuì kēxué shíxiàn shǒuxiān shuǐpíng shùliang Sìge Xiàndàihuà sùdù	social sciences to realize first level number, amount the Four Modernizations speed, pace
tiáojiàn tíchulai tígāo	condition to bring up to raise

yánjiūshēng
yībùfen

zhěnggè(r)
zhìliàng (zhǐ-, zhǐ-)
zhòngdiǎn
zìrán
zìrán kēxué

graduate student
a part, a portion; some

whole, entire
quality
focal point, emphasis; key
nature; natural
natural sciences

Unit 2, Reference Notes

1. A: Nǐmen zhèngfǔ rènwéi mùqián
dà-, zhōng-, xiǎoxuéde
qíngkuàng zěnmeyàng? What does your government think of
your colleges, high schools, and
primary schools at present?
- B: Wǒmen xiǎng Wénhuà Gémìng
yǐhòude jiàoyù shuǐpíng bú
gòu gāo, wǒmen děi gǎibiàn
zhèige qíngxíng. We think that since the Cultural
Revolution educational standards
have not been high enough, and
we must change this situation.

Notes on No. 1

rènwéi: "to think (that)," "to consider (that)," "to believe (that)"
This is typically used for considered opinions and judgments, as opposed to
xiǎng, "to think," which can be used for mere impressions and guesses. Also
contrast yǐwéi, "to think mistakenly."

Wǒ rènwéi tā shuōde shì duìde. I consider what he said correct OR
I believe that what he said is right.

Tā rènwéi zhèijàn shì bù yīng-
gāi ràng wǒmen zuò. He does not think we should be allowed
to do this.

mùqián: "the present" or "at present" Although both mùqián and xiǎn-
zài, "now," refer to the present, xiǎnzài may mean "right now," whereas
mùqián must refer to a broader period of time.

Mùqián wǒmen chǎngde shēngchǎn
shuǐpíng hái bú gòu gāo. At present our factory's production
level isn't high enough.

Mùqián tāde jīngjì qíngkuàng bú
tài hǎo. At present his financial situation
isn't too great.

dà-, zhōng-, xiǎoxué: Short for dàxué, zhōngxué, xiǎoxué.

gémìng: "revolution," "revolutionary," "to revolt" In ancient China,
gé mìng, literally, "to change the mandate of heaven," referred to the changing
of dynasties, since the monarch was held to be ordained by heaven. The pattern
Gé X-de mìng, literally, "to change X's mandate of heaven," means "to revolt
against X."

Wénhuà Gémìng or Wénhuà Dà Gémìng: The common terms for the Wúchǎn
Jiējí Wénhuà Dà Gémìng, "Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution" (1966-1977).
An even shorter abbreviation is Wéngé.

shuǐpíng: "level," "standard"

Rìběnde gōngyè shēngchǎn
shuǐpíng zhēn gāo! Japan's industrial production
level is really high!

Měiguó rénde shēnghuó shuǐpíng
hěn gāo! Americans have a very high standard
of living!

- Tāde Déyǔ shuǐpíng bú gòu gāo. His level in German isn't high enough.
2. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ yǒu jìhuàde tígāo yībùfen dàxuéde shuǐpíng. The Chinese government is raising the standards in some universities in a planned way.
- B: À! Zhèi jiù shì bǎ dàxué fēnchéng yīlèi dàxué èrlèi dàxuéde yuányīn le! Ah! This is the reason that universities are divided into Class I and Class II.

Notes on No. 2

tígāo: "to raise," "to improve"

Dào Zhōngguó qù, kěyǐ tígāo duì Zhōngguóde rènsī.

By going to China, you can increase your understanding of China.

Jiěfàng yǐhòu, fùnǚde dīwei tígāo le.

Since liberation, the status of women has improved.

Shǎoshù mínzú shuō pǔtōnghuàde shuǐpíng tígāole bù shǎo.

The level of the minority nationalities in Standard Chinese has improved quite a bit.

-bùfen: "part," "section"

Qǐng bǎ zhè yībùfen fānchéng Zhōngwén.

Please translate this part into Chinese.

Tā xiěde nèiběn shū, yǒude bùfen hǎo, yǒude bùfen bù hǎo.

Some sections of the book he wrote are good, and some aren't.

yībùfen: "a part," "a portion," "some"

Tā shuōde huà, yībùfen shì duìde, yībùfen shì cuòde.

Part of what he said is right, and part is wrong.

Qùde rén, yǒu yībùfen hái xiǎng zài qù, yǒu yībùfen bù xiǎng qù le.

Of the people who went, some would like to go back again, and some do not want to.

fēn: "to divide" As you learned fēnkāi, "to split up," in the Society module, this word is not entirely new to you, but here you see it with the ending -chéng, "into." Here's another example:

Wǒ bǎ píngguǒ fēnchéng sìkuài, wǒmen yīrén yīkuài.

I'll divide the apple into four pieces, one piece for each of us.

-lèi: "category"

Xiànzài lái Měiguóde Zhōngguó rén dàgài kěyǐ fēn liǎnglèi.

The Chinese who are coming to the U.S. now can be roughly divided into two categories.

Zhèilèi wèntí zuì hǎo hé Lǚxíng-shède rén tán. You had best talk with the Travel Service people about this sort of question.

"Hēi wūlèi," "hóng wūlèi," shì Wénhuà Dà Gémìng shíhoude shuōfǎ. The "Five Black Categories" and the "Five Red Categories" were terms used during the time of the Cultural Revolution.

Zhèi jiù shì...-de yuányīn: "This is the reason that..." Here is another example of this useful pattern:

Zhèi jiù shì tā méi qùde yuányīn. This is the reason he didn't go.

Zhèi jiù shì...-de yuányīn le: This sentence exemplifies a use of new-situation le to emphasize the speaker's newly-reached understanding. You can think of this le as meaning "Now I get it!"

Ò, nǐ yǐqián shuōguode Hóu Xiān-sheng jiù shì tā le! Oh, the Mr. Hóu you spoke of before is him!

À! Sùbyì nǐ nàme xiǎng qù le! Oh! That's why you want so much to go!

Related uses of new-situation le include drawing a new inference, e.g.,

Nàme, nǐ yíding rènshi Chén Kēzhǎng le? Then, you must know Section Chief Chén, I suppose?

and settling on a course of action or reaching a decision:

A: Tā zhīdao wǒde diànhuà ma? Does he know my telephone number?
 B: Zhīdao. Yes.
 A: Nà wǒ jiù děng tāde diànhuà le. Then I'll wait for his call.

3. A: Xiànzài Shànghǎide jiàoshī shùliang gòu bu gòu? At present is the number of teachers in Shànghǎi sufficient?

B: Bú gòu, érqǐě, zhèi shì yíge pùbiànde wèntí. No, moreover this is a widespread problem.

Notes on No. 3

jiàoshī: "teacher," "schoolteacher"

Wǒ shì yíge xiǎoxué jiàoshī. I'm an elementary school teacher.

*These terms, which arose in the first years of the Cultural Revolution (and are now obsolete), referred to the two ideologically "irreconcilable camps." In effect, they were used to classify people by their family backgrounds. The Five Black Categories, or "bad" backgrounds, were landlords, rich peasants, counterrevolutionaries, bad elements, and bourgeois rightists. The Five Red ("good") Categories were workers, poor peasants, lower-middle peasants, revolutionary army men, and revolutionary cadres.

Nǐmen xuéxiào yíngōng yǒu duōshǎo Yīngwén jiàoshī?

How many English teachers are there in your school?

shùliang: "quantity," "number," "amount"

Nǐ néng bu néng shuōchū tāmen de shùliang yǒu duōshǎo?

Can you give an exact idea of their numbers?

Cóng shùliangshang kàn, zhèige xuéxiào de nánshēng zhàn zhǔyào de dīwei.

From the point of view of numbers, the male students occupy the main position in the school.

pǔbiàn: "to be universal/widespread/common"

Zài Měiguó, yíge jiāting yǒu sānliǎng qìchē shì hěn pǔbiàn de shì.

In America it is very common for one family to have three cars.

Zài Zhōngguó, zuìjìn sānshínián, rénmen de wénhuà jiàoyu shuǐpíng pǔbiàn tígāo le.

During the last thirty years, people's educational level in China has seen widespread improvement.

4. A: Bào shang shuō Měiguó zhōng-xiǎoxué de tiáojiàn dōu bú cuò.

It says in the papers that conditions in American secondary and primary schools are quite good.

B: Shì. Jībèn shang měi sānshíge xuésheng yǒu yíwèi jiàoshī, lián zuì pǔtōng de xuéxiào yě yǒu diànshì, túshūguǎn, shènmede.

Yes. In general there's a teacher for every thirty students, and even the most ordinary schools have televisions, a library, and so on.

Notes on No. 4

tiáojiàn: "condition(s)," "circumstances"

Zhèrde gōngzuò tiáojiàn bú cuò.

Working conditions here are pretty good.

Xīběi de shēnghuó tiáojiàn bù zěnme hǎo.

Living conditions are not so good in the Northwest.

Zài mùqián de tiáojiàn xià, wǒmen méiyǒu bànfǎ zài kuài.

Under the present circumstances, we are unable to go any faster.

Hé tāmen zuò shēngyì zhēn bù róngyì, tāmen zǒngshì yào jiǎng hěn duō tiáojiàn.

It's really hard to do business with them. They are always insisting on a lot of conditions.

Tāmen rènwei tā méiyǒu tiáojiàn zuò zhèige gōngzuò.

They don't think he's competent to do this job.

jībēn: "basic," "fundamental," "elementary" (For the first example, you need to know yǔfǎ, "grammar," and cíhuì, "vocabulary.")

Xué liǎngnián Zhōngwén, jīběn-
de yǔfǎ hé cíhuì dōu zhīdao le.

After studying two years of Chinese,
(one) knows the basic grammar and
vocabulary.

Zhèige dìqū gǎo nóngyède jīběn
tiáojiàn bú gòu.

The basic conditions for farming
are not good enough in this area.

Jībenshang, "basically," is often used in the PRC to mean "in the main," "on
the whole," "by and large." (This usage is not common in Taiwan, however.)

Jībenshang tā shì yíge hǎo
tóngzhì.

On the whole, he is a good comrade.

Jībenshang méiyǒu wèntí le.

By and large, there are no more
problems.

Nǐ shuōde Yīngwén jībenshang
wǒ dōu tīngdédǒng.

For the most part, I can understand
all your English.

měi...yǒu...: "There is...for every..." Examples:

Měi sānge rén yǒu yíge shì
Měiguó rén.

There is an American for every
three persons. (One of every
three people is an American.)

Měi sāntiān yǒu yíge rén lái.

(There is) one person (who) comes
every three days.

pǔtōng: "to be ordinary/common/regular"

Tāmen liǎngge zhǐ shì pǔtōng
péngyou, méi shenme tèbiéde
guānxi.

The two of them are just ordinary
friends; they don't have any
special relationship.

Tā jiù shì yíge pǔtōng rén, hé
nǐ hé wǒ yíyàng.

He is just an ordinary person, like
you or me.

Pǔtōngde hùzhào hé zhèige yǒu
shénme qūbié?

What's the difference between an
ordinary passport and this?

5. A: Zhèngfǔ gěi pǔtōng xiǎoxué
hé zhōngdiǎn xiǎoxuéde
qián yíyàng duō ma?

Does the government give the same
amount of money to ordinary elemen-
tary schools as to key elementary
schools?

B: Yǒu yìdiǎnr chābié. Wǒmen
děi shǒuxiǎn zhāogu
zhōngdiǎn xiǎoxué.

There is some difference. We must
first give consideration to key
elementary schools.

Notes on No. 5

zhōngdiǎn: "heavy-point"—"emphasis," "focal point" or in some phrases,
"key" Also used adverbially.

Nǐ yánjiūde zhòngdiǎn dōu yǒu
nǎixiē fāngmiàn? What are the focal points of your
research?

Nǐmen yào cānguānde zhòngdiǎn
shì nǎifāngmiàn? What is to be the focus of your
visit?

Nǐmen yào zhòngdiǎn fāzhǎnde
dìqū yǒu jǐge? How many regions do you intend to
focus on developing?

Wǒmen yīnggāi bǎ zhòngdiǎn fàng
zài jiàoyùshàng. We should put the emphasis on
education.

Tāmende gōngzuò zhòngdiǎn shì
gāo wénhuà jiàoyù. The focus of their work is on
culture and education.

chābié: "difference," "discrepancy," "disparity" Contrast the word
qūbié (additional required vocabulary), "difference," "distinction." Chābié
stresses the idea of a distance, gap, or inequality between the things com-
pared. Qūbié refers to differences, determined by inspection, between other-
wise similar things.

Zhèiyang zuò hé nèiyang zuò yǒu
shénme chābié? What is the difference between doing
it this way and doing it that way?

Chéngshì hé nóngcūn chābié hěn
dà. There's a big difference between
the city and the country.

Nǐ shuōshuo zhèi liǎngge shǒu-
yīnjīde qūbié zài nǎr? Tell me what the differences are
between these two radios.

Zhèi liǎngběn zìdiǎn yǒu shénme
qūbié? What's the difference between these
two dictionaries?

shǒuxiān: "first," meaning before doing something else. This is a
movable adverb (can come either before or after the subject of the sentence,
but always before the verb).

Rúguǒ nǐ yào dào Zhōngguó qù,
shǒuxiān yào xué yídiǎn Zhōngwén. If you want to go to China, you
should learn a little Chinese first.

Shǒuxiān bǎ yào mǎide dōngxi kāi
yìzhāng dānsi, ránhòu zài qǐng
tā qù mǎi. First make a list of the things you
want bought, and then ask him to
go buy them.

Shǒuxiān can also mean "first of all," "in the first place":

Shǒuxiān wǒmen yào tántan nǐde
cānguān fāngwèn jìhuà. First of all we should discuss your
sightseeing plans.

In sentence 5B, shǒuxiān zhàoqǔ, "first of all give consideration to," can be
idiomatically translated as "give first consideration to."

6. A: Zhōngguó liúxuéshēng xuéxíde zhōngdiǎn shì zìrán kēxué ba?
Chinese students abroad concentrate on the natural sciences, isn't that so?
- B: Duìle, shì kēxué jìshu.
Right, on science and technology.

Notes on No. 6

zìrán: "natural," "naturally" the physical world. Dàzìrán means "nature" in the sense of

- Tā hěn xǐhuan dàzìrán.
He is very fond of nature.
- Ruìshìde zìrán huánjīng hěn tèbié.
Switzerland's natural environment is very different.
- Zhèige shǎoshù mínzú dìqūde zìrán tiáojiàn bù hǎo.
The natural conditions in this minority nationality region are poor.
- Tāde yàngzi hěn zìrán.
Her appearance is very natural.
- Nǚér líkāi jiā, fùmǔ nánguò shì zìrán de.
When a daughter leaves home, it is natural for her parents to be sad.
- Xuéle bú yòng, zìrán huì wàng.
If you don't use something after you learn it, you're bound to forget it.
- Bú yòng guǎn, zìrán huì guòqude.
Don't worry about it; it will pass by itself.
- kēxué: "science" Kēxuéjiā is a "scientist."
Měiguó shì ge kēxué jìnbùde guójiā.
The U.S. is a scientifically advanced country.
- Nóngcūn rén cóngqián méiyǒu shenme kēxué zhīshi.
In the past, people in rural areas did not have any knowledge of science.

Kēxué is also used for "to be scientific":

- Zhèizhǒng zuòfǎ hěn kēxué.
This method is very scientific.
- Nǐ nàizhǒng xiǎngfǎ bù kēxué!
That's a very unscientific idea.
- jìshu: "technique," "skill," "technology"
Tā kāi chēde jìshu hěn hǎo.
He's a good driver.
- Zhè shì wǒ zuòde Mápó Dòufu, nǐ kàn wǒde jìshu zěnmeyàng?
I made this Mápó Beancurd. How do rate my technique?

Zhōngguóde chá'yè shēngchǎn jìshù
fāshǎn dào le bǐjiào gāo de
shuǐpíng.

China's tea production technology
is rather highly developed.

Tā shì ge jìshù gōngrén.

He is a skilled worker.

7. A: Nǐmende yánjiūshēng chū guó
xuéxí yǐhòu dōu huí dàxué
jiāo shù ma?

After going abroad to study, do all
your graduate students go back to
the universities and teach?

B: Bù. Yǒu yībùfen dǎi dānrèn
jìshù fāngmiān de língdǎo
gōngzuò.

No. Some of them have to take up
leading posts in technical fields.

Notes on No. 7

chū guó: "to go abroad"

Tā shì nǎinián chū guóde?

In what year did he go abroad?

Chū guó liúxuéde yánjiūshēng
nǎde duō bu duō?

Are there many women among the
graduate students who go abroad
to study?

dānrèn: "to assume," "to take up" a job or post

Nǐ zài zhèr dānrèn shénme gōng-
zuò?

What is your job title here?

Tā zuìjìn yào qù Ōuzhōu dānrèn
língshǐ gōngzuò.

He will soon be going to Europe to
do consular work.

Tā dānrènguo Měidàsī sīzhǎng.

He has been the chief of the Depart-
ment of American and Oceanic Affairs.

Dānrèn língdǎo gōngzuò, as in sentence 7B, is an often used phrase for "to take on leadership work," "to take up a leading post" (that is, to be in a job in which one is in charge of others).

8. A: Jīngguò sānniánde nǚlì,
zhèige dìqūde nóngyè shēng-
chǎn tiáojiàn xiāngdǎng
bú cuò le.

After three years of effort,
conditions for agricultural
production in this area are now
quite good.

B: Guānyú zhèige wèntí, nǐmen yǒu
méiyǒu cáiliào, wǒmen kě bu
kěyǐ dàihuiqu kànkàn?

Do you have any data on this subject
that we could take back with us to
read?

Notes on No. 8

jīngguò: (1) "to pass," "to go through"

Zhèilù chē jīngguò Dōngdān ma? Does this bus go through Dōngdān?

Nèige dìfang wǒ méi qùguo, dànshi jīngguòguo. I've never been there, but I've passed through (OR passed by).

Zhèi shí wǒ dìyí cì jīngguò zhèiyangde kǎoshì. This is the first time I've ever taken a test like this.

(2) "as a result of," "after," "through" This is the way jīngguò is used in sentence 8A. (For the second example you need to know zhànzhēng, "war.")

Jīngguò tāolùn, wǒmen juédìng xià Xīngqī sī qù yěcān. After discussion, we have decided to hold the picnic next Thursday.

Tā yě bù jīngguò kǎolǚ jiù hé tā jiéhūn le. He married her without even giving it any consideration.

Jīngguò hěn cháng shíjiānde zhànzhēng, zhèige dìqū yǐjīng biànde bú rènshí le. As a result of the lengthy war, this area has become unrecognizable.

(3) "course (of events); what has happened"

Tā huílai bǎ quánbù jīngguò gāosule wǒ. When he returned, he told me the whole story of what happened.

Shìqingde jīngguò shì zěnmeyàngde, nǐ zhīdao ma? Do you know how the whole thing went?

nǚlì: "to make great efforts," "to try hard," "to exert oneself"

Tā gōngzuò hěn nǚlì. He works very hard.

Tā bú dàn nǚlì gōngzuò, rén yě hěn rèxīn. Not only does he work very hard, but he is also a warmhearted person.

Contrast nǚlì gōngzuò, "work hard," with yònggōng, "study hard."

cáiliào: (1) "material"

Zhèige fángzide cáiliào kànqǐlái hǎoxiàng bú cuò. This house looks like it's made of pretty good material.

(2) "data," "material"

Tā gěile wǒ hěn duō cáiliào, wǒ sāntiān yě kànbuwán. He gave me a lot of data (material). Even three days wouldn't be enough time for me to finish reading it.

Nǐ nádao xīnde xuéxí cáiliào le ma? Míngtiān yào shàng xīn kè le. Have you picked up the new study materials yet? We start the new lesson tomorrow.

(3) "makings," "material"

Tā bú shì suǒ jiàoshòude cáiliào. He doesn't have the makings of a professor.

9. A: Yào shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuà zuì dàde wèntí shì shénme? What is the biggest problem in achieving the Four Modernizations?

B: Shi jīngjī. Wǒmen děi zài bú tài chángde shíjiānlǐ bǎ zhěnggè guójiāde jīngjī gāoshàngqù. It's the economy. Before too long we must push ahead the economy of the whole country.

Notes on No. 9

shíxiàn: "to realize/achieve/bring about/accomplish/come true" Besides being used to talk about the Four Modernizations, shíxiàn is also used for realizing a wish, an ideal, a goal, self-sufficiency, a reform, industrialization, etc. Note that shíxiàn can be used in a causal sense (i.e., "cause to come about"): "They realized their wish" [Tāmen shíxiànle tāmen de yuǎnwàng]; or in a non-causal sense (i.e., "come about"): "Their wish came about" [Tāmen de yuǎnwàng shíxiànle].

Zài Xīfāng, shíxiàn gōngyèhuà yǐjīng shì yībǎiniǎn qiānde shì le. In the West, achieving industrialization is something which was done a century ago.

Nánjīng jībenshang shíxiànle lǜhuà. Nánjīng has basically accomplished "greenification" (making the city green by planting trees, flowers, etc.).

xiàndài: "modern times" or "modern," "contemporary"

Xiàndài rénde xiǎngfǎ dōu shì hěn kēxuéde. Modern man's ideas are all scientific.

-huà: "-ize," "-ify" Examples:

gōngyèhuà	to industrialize	lǜhuà	to make green (by planting trees, etc.)
jiǎnhuà	to simplify (<u>jiǎn</u> is short for <u>jiǎndǎn</u>)	měihuà	to beautify
Měiguóhuà	to Americanize	èhuà	to worsen (<u>è</u> is a literary word for "bad")
Xīfānghuà	to Westernize		

xiàndàihuà: "to become modernized"; "modernized/sophisticated/modern"

Caution: This is an intransitive verb (cannot take an object). Therefore, to say "modernize our country" you must phrase it as "make our country become modernized":

Wǒmen yào shǐ wǒmende guójiā
xiàndàihuà.

We must modernize our country.

Zhèixiē xiàndàihuà yǎnán bú shì
měige rén dōu zhīdaode.

Not everyone knows these modern terms.

Sìge Xiàndàihuà: "the Four Modernizations" These are the modernization of agriculture, industry, national defense, and science and technology. Comprehensive development in these areas by the end of the century was called for at the Eleventh National Party Congress in 1977, and again by Communist Party Chairman Huà Guófēng at the Fifth National People's Congress in 1978. (This theme had been enunciated twice before, in 1965 and 1975, by Zhōu Ēnlái.) Since 1979, the drive for the "socialist Four Modernizations" has been at the root of the Chinese government's domestic policy and have also had a broad influence on its foreign policy.

zhěnggè(r): As an adjective (before a noun), "whole," "entire," referring to a single item.

Zhěnggè shàngwǔ nǐ dōu zuò
shénme le?

What did you do the whole morning?

Wǒ yào mǎi zhěnggède huǒtuǐ,
bú yào bànge de.

I want to buy a whole ham, not a half one.

Zhěnggè jìhuà dōu shì tā yíge
rén xiǎngchūláide.

The entire plan was his idea.

As an adverb, zhěnggè(r) means "completely," "in its entirety":

Zhèijù huàde yìsi nǐ zhěnggè
nòngcuò le.

You completely misunderstood the meaning of that sentence.

Tāde mótuōchē zhěnggè bèi
zhuànguài le.

His motorcycle was completely ruined in the collision.

Zhèige fángzi zhěnggè dōu shì
mùtou zuòde.

This house is made completely of wood.

gǎoshàngqù: Shàngqù, "to go up," may be used figuratively to say that production "goes up" or work "moves forward." The resultative compound gǎoshàngqù, therefore, means "to cause to go up," "to cause to move forward." We have translated it here as "to push ahead" the economy.

10. A: Wǒmende liúxuéshēng tíchulai
jǐge wèntí.

Our foreign exchange students have brought up a few problems.

B: Wǒ tīngshuō le, tāmen xiǎng
jiākuài xuéxí sùdu. Wǒmen
yíding kǎolǚ.

I heard. They want to speed up the pace of their studies. We'll be sure to consider it.

Notes on No. 10

tí: One meaning of the verb tí is "to lift," "to raise." In a more abstract sense, it can mean (1) "mention," "refer to," "bring up" (a subject). Tí wèntí is "to ask questions."

Wǒ tí ge wèntí kěyǐ ma?

May I ask a question?

Qǐng dàjiā tí yìjian.

Please give us your comments, everyone.

Bié zài tí nèijiàn shì le,
hǎo ma?

Don't mention that again, okay?

Tā měicì tídao zhèijiàn shì,
wǒ jiù shēngqì.

Every time he mentions that, I
get angry.

(2) "to raise," "to bring up," "to put forward" (questions, comments, demands, etc.):

Tā tíde nèi liǎngge tiáojiàn,
wǒ méi bànfǎ shíxiàn.

There's no way I can satisfy (fulfill)
the conditions he put forward.

Nǐ juéde wǒde bànfǎ bù xíng,
kěyǐ tíchū nǐde bànfǎ.

If you don't think my way (of handling
it) will do, you can propose a way
of your own.

Tā tíchū ràng Zhāng Tóngzhì
zuò lǐngdǎo.

He proposed having Comrade Zhāng
be the leader.

Tā tíchū yào dào Nánjīng qù
yítàng yǐhòu cái néng xiě
zhèipiān wénzhāng.

He said that he had to go to Nán-
jīng before he could write this
article.

jiǎkuài: "to quicken," "to speed up" (one's step, a process, the pace of doing something)

Rúguǒ jiǎkuài zuò, sāntiān jiù
xíng le.

If we speed up, we can finish
in three days.

sùdù: (literally "fast-degree") "speed," "pace," "tempo"

Sānshínián lái, Rìběn jīngjì
fāzhǎnde sùdù hěn kuài.

For the past thirty years, Japan's
rate of economic development has
been very fast.

jiǎkuài...sùdù, "to quicken the pace of...," "to speed up":

Wǒmen yào jiǎkuài gōngzuòde
sùdù.

We must speed up our work.

Zhōngguó yào jiǎkuài shíxiàn
Sìge Xiàndàihuàde sùdù.

China wants to speed up the Four
Modernizations.

[The opposite of jiǎkuài sùdù is fàngmàn sùdù.]

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

zhìliàng: "quality" Also pronounced zhǐliàng or zhǐliàng.

Shùliàng duō, zhìliàng yě bú
cuò.

They are plentiful and of good
quality.

In some contexts, you can use the syllable zhì/zhǐ/zhǐ to stand for zhìliàng
and the syllable liàng to stand for shùliàng:

Zhǐ, liàng, dōu bú cuò.

The quality and quantity are both
good.

Unit 2, Review Dialogue

This dialogue takes place in Běijīng. Early one morning, Professor Armstrong is out for a walk near his hotel when he runs into Lín Xiǎohé of the China Travel Service.

- L: Jiàoshòu, nín zǎo!
 Good morning, Professor!
- A: Zǎo, nǐ hǎo! Zǎoshangde kōngqì
 bǐjiǎo xīnxiān yìdiǎnr. Wǒ hěn
 xǐhuan zǎoshang zài wàimian
 zǒuyìzǒu.
 Good morning, how are you. The
 morning air is a little fresher. I
 like to go for a walk outside in the
 morning.
- L: Jīntiān tiānqì yě bú cuò,
 méiyǒu fēng, chūlai zǒuzou duì
 shēntǐ yǒu hǎochū.
 The weather is pretty nice today
 too. There's no wind. It's good for
 the health to go out and do some
 walking.
- A: Shì a! Jīntiānde tiānqì zhēn
 shūfu.
 Yes. The weather today is really
 pleasant.
- L: Jiàoshòu, nín jīntiān hǎoxiàng
 hěn gāoxìng ma!
 Professor, you seem so happy today.
- A: Wǒ hěn gāoxìng. Nǐ zhīdao, duō
 jiǔ le, wǒ xiǎng qù kànkan Běidà,
 kěshì yìzhí méiyǒu jīhuì qù.
 Yes, I am. You know, I've been
 wanting to go visit Běijīng Univer-
 sity for such a long time, but I
 never had the chance to.
- L: Jīntiān wǒmen jiù kényǐ qù
 cānguān le.
 But we're going today.
- A: Shì a. Wǒ shì gāo jiàoyu
 gōngzuòde. Zài Měiguóde shíhou,
 wǒ chángcháng xǐhuan kàn xié
 guānyú Zhōngguó jiàoyu qíngkuàngde
 shū, kěshì, yào zhēnde yánjiūde
 huà, zǒng juéde cáiliào bú gòu,
 yǒu hěn duō dōngxi bú gòu liǎo-
 jiě, érqǐě, yǒu shíhou yǒude
 cáiliào hé Zhōngguóde qíngkuàng
 chābié hěn dà, suǒyǐ . . .
 That's right. I'm in education.
 When I'm in the States I often like
 to read books about education in
 China, but I always feel that we
 don't have enough data to do actual
 research on it. There's a lot we
 don't understand well enough.
 Furthermore, some of the data
 is very different from the [true]
 situation in China, so . . .
- L: Nín yǒu shénme wèntí jiù
 tíchulai, yěxǐ wǒ kényǐ bāng nín
 yìdiǎnr máng ne?
 Ask me any questions you have,
 maybe I can help you with them.
- A: Nǐ dēngyìdēng, wǒ shìshì, kàn
 néng bu néng shuōqīngchū a!
 Wait a second, let me try and see
 if I can explain it clearly.
- L: Méi guānxi, nín mànmanr shuō.
 It doesn't matter, take your time.

- A: Zài nǐmen zhèr, dàxué fēn yīlèi èrlèi, zhōngxué xiǎoxué yě yǒu zhōngdiǎn zhōng-xiǎoxué hé pǔtōng zhōng-xiǎoxuéde qūbié. Zhèiyang zuòde mùdì shì shénme ne? Wǒ shì shuō . . .
- Here, your universities are divided into Class I and Class II, and your middle schools and elementary schools distinguish between key and regular ones. What is the purpose for doing that? I mean . . .
- L: Ng, nǐ shuōxiāqu.
- Uh-huh, go on.
- A: Wǒde yìsī shì, yàoshì bǎ zhōngdiǎn fàng zài jǐgè xuéxiào-shang, néng bu néng pǔbiàn tí-gāo jiàoyu shuǐpíng ne?
- I mean, if you put the emphasis on a few schools, will you be able to make a general improvement in the level of education?
- L: Zhèi shì yíge hěn hǎode wèntí. Nǐ zhīdao, Zhōngguó yǒu shíyīduō rénǒu, yǒu nàme duō rén xūyào shòu jiàoyu, kěshì jiàoyude qíngkuàng bù néng ràng rén mǎnyì.
- That's a very good question. You know, China has over a billion people. There are so many people who need to get an education, but educational conditions are not satisfactory.
- A: Ng.
- Uh-huh.
- L: Tèbié shì jīngguò Wénhuà Dà Gé-míng yǐhòu, jiàoyu fāngmian zhēn yǒu bù shǎo wèntí, suǒyǐ zài mùqiánde qíngkuàng xià, wǒmen děi bǎ zhōngdiǎn fàng zài yǐbùfēn dàxué, zhōngxué, hé xiǎoxuéshang.
- Especially since the Cultural Revolution, there have been a lot of problems in the area of education, so under the present conditions, we must put the emphasis on a portion of our colleges, middle schools, and elementary schools.
- A: Nàme, zài zhōngdiǎn dàxuéli, nǐmen rènwéi zuì zhǔyào de gōngzuò yǒu shì shénme ne?
- Then in key colleges, what do you consider to be the principal job?
- L: Shǒuxiān děi xiǎng bànǎ tígāo jiàoshīde shuǐpíng. Xiànzài jiàoshī shùliang bú gòu, shuǐpíng bù gāo.
- First of all we must try to raise the level of the instructors. At present the number of instructors is insufficient and their level is low.
- A: Ng, zhèi shì yíge zhòngyào de wèntí.
- Mm, that's an important problem.
- L: Shì, zhèige wèntí hé tígāo zhènggè mínzúde jiàoyu shuǐpíng yǒu hěn dàde guānxi.
- Yes, it's a question that has great bearing on raising the educational level of the whole nation.
- A: Hǎo, nàme dièr ne?
- Okay, then the second thing?
- L: Gāo Sìge Xiàndàihuà xūyào hěn duō shòuguó jiàoyude rén, kěshì zhèijiàn shì bú shì zài duǎn
- To carry on the Four Modernizations we need a lot of educated people, but this can't be accomplished in

- shíjiānli kéyì zuòhǎode. Zhèi yidiǎn nín dàgài tóngyì ba?
- A: Wǒ dǒng, wǒ dǒng. I understand, I understand.
- L: Suóyì, wǒmen bàn yìxiē zhòngdiǎn xuéxiào, wèide shì jiākuài jiàoyu sùdu. So we are setting up some key schools in order to speed up the educational process.
- A: Jiākuài jiàoyu sùdu? Nǐde yìsi shì shuō, zhòngdiǎn xuéxiào de tiáojiàn bǐjiào hǎo, xuésheng, jiàoshīde shuǐpíng yě bǐjiào gāo, zhèiyang, xuésheng jiù yǒu jīhuì zài bǐjiào duǎnde shíjiānli xué bǐjiào duōde dōngxì. To speed up the educational process? You mean, key schools have better conditions, and the level of their students and teachers is higher, so the students have the opportunity to learn more things in a shorter time.
- L: Duì le. Right.
- A: Nàme nǐmen pài chū guóde liúxuéshēng shì bu shì dōu shì cóng zhòngdiǎn xuéxiàoli lái de ne? Then are all the students you send abroad from key schools?
- L: Tāmen duōbàn shì cóng zhòngdiǎn dàxué lái de, tèbié shì yánjiūshēng. They're mostly from key universities, especially the graduate students.
- A: Wǒ jiànguó jǐwèi lái Měiguó niàn shūde liúxuéshēng, tāmen dōu shì xué kēxué jìshude. Tīngshuō tāmen xuéde fēicháng nǔlì. Zhōngguó liúxuéshēngde xuéxí zhòngdiǎn shì kēxué jìshu, duì bu duì? I've met several Chinese going to school in the United States. They were all studying science and technology. I hear that they were very hard-working. Chinese students abroad concentrate on science and technology, isn't that right?
- L: Nín shuōde duì, tāmen zhǔyào shì xué zìrán kēxué. Zhèi shì wǒmen mùqián zuì dàde xūyào. That's right, they mainly study the natural sciences. That's our greatest need at present.
- A: Tāmen huí guó yǐhòu dōu gǎo yánjiū gōngzuò ma? After they return home do they all do research work?
- L: Bù yíding. Wǒ xiǎng yǒu yí dà bùfen hái dèi zài dàxué dānrèn jiàoshīde gōngzuò. Shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuà líbùkǎi jiàoyu ma? Jiàoshòu, yǒu shíjiān gěi wǒ jièshào jièshào Měiguóde jiàoyu qíngkuàng a! Not necessarily. I think that a large portion of them still have to take up teaching positions in universities. Education is essential to achieving the Four Modernizations! Professor, when you have the time, tell me about education in America!
- A: Hǎo, nǐ duì nǐfāngmiàn de qíngkuàng zuì yǒu xìngqù? Sure. What aspect are you most interested in?

L: Wǒ duì xiǎoxué jiàoyu, értóng jiàoyu zuì yǒu xìngqù, yīnwèi, wǒ xiǎng yíge rén kāishǐ shòu jiàoyu de nàiduǎn shíjiān shì fēicháng zhòngyào de.

I'm most interested in primary school and child education, because I think the period when a person begins his education is very important.

A: Wǒ tóngyì nǐde kānfǎ, érqǐě, chúle shàng xué yǐwài, jiāting hé shèhuìde jiàoyu yě fēicháng zhòngyào. Yǒude shíhou, fùmǔmen de jiàoyu qíngkuàng hé háizimen yǒu fēicháng dàde guānxi.

I agree with you. Furthermore, besides attending school, the education one gets in the home and in society are also very important. Sometimes the parents' education has a great bearing on the children's.

L: Duì. Suǒyì gāohǎo jiàoyu shì zhènggè shèhuìde gōngzuò, wǒmen měige rén dōu yǒu zéren.

Right. So improving education is the job of our entire society. Each of us has the responsibility for it.

A: Nǐ shuōde zhēn hǎo. Duì le, jīntiān wǒmen cānguānde Běidà, shì bu shì Zhōngguó zuì hǎode dàxué ne?

Well said. Oh yes--is Beijing University, which we're going to visit today, the best university in China?

L: Běidà shì hěn yǒu míngde dàxué, kěshì hěn nán shuō shì bu shì zuì hǎode. Zài Zhōngguó yǒu jǐge dàxué dōu bú cuō. Běidàde jiàoyu zhīliang jǐbenshang ràng rén mǎnyì.

B.U. is a very famous university, but it's difficult to say if it's the best. There are several universities in China that are pretty good. The quality of education at B.U. is basically satisfactory.

Shíjiān bù zǎo le, nín chī zǎofàn le meiyou?

It's getting late, have you had breakfast?

A: Òu, wǒ hái méi chī zǎofàn ne, wǒ mǎshàng jiù qù.

Oh, I haven't had breakfast yet. I'll go right away.

L: Bié jí, wǒmen děngzhe nín.

No hurry, we'll wait for you.

A: Hǎo, wǒ hěn kuài jiù lái.

Okay, I'll be there shortly.

Unit 2, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American college student runs into a student from China at the Dupont Circle subway station in Washington, D.C.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

suàn	to be counted as (good, bad, etc.)
kējì	science and technology (abbreviation for <u>kēxué jìshù</u>)
huìhuà	conversation
jiǎnchēng	abbreviation
yángé	to be strict

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where did the American student learn Chinese? Where did the Chinese student learn English?
2. What was language study like at B.U.? Do you think it is different from an American university? How do you know?

3. What is the abbreviation for science and technology? Put the following into abbreviated form.

wénhuà (culture)	jiàoyù (education)	<hr/> (the field of culture and education)
rénmín (the people)	dàhuì (general member- ship meeting)	<hr/> (People's Congress)
yǔyán (spoken language)	wénzì (writing)	<hr/> (language and literature)

4. What is the Chinese student studying?
5. According to the Chinese student, what kinds of science are not so clearly separated in modern society?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, a young Chinese teacher at Běijīng University walks over to her American student who is sitting under a tree reading a book.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

Lǚ Xùn	(a famous Chinese author of the 1920s and 1930s)
yàoburán	otherwise
kùnnán	difficulty
niánlíng	age
Wénhuà Dà Gémíng	Cultural Revolution
dàxué bìyèshēng	college graduate

Wéngé

Cultural Revolution (abbreviation of
Wénhuà Dà Gémíng)

xuéyuàn

(academic) institute

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why does the student like to read Chinese literature? What is Ms. Lín's reaction?
2. Why are Chinese students who go abroad older than usual? What does the American say are other characteristics of these students?
3. How does Ms. Lín respond to the student's wish to talk with more Chinese?
4. Summarize this dialogue in two or three sentences.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

This conversation takes place at the Běijīng University library when an American graduate student and a Chinese graduate student happen to meet.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

cānkǎoshū

reference book

xī

department (of a school)

huó dòng

activity

làngfèi

to waste

jiàokēshū

textbook

Questions for Exercise 4

1. How does the American student feel about his study of Chinese?
2. Are post-Cultural Revolution college students in China very familiar with the social situation in their country? Why?
3. Why do the American students want to go outside the university?

4. What sentences does the American use to take leave of the Chinese?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

At the Dupont Circle subway station in Washington, D.C., an American college student (A) runs into a student from China (B).

- A: Duìbuqǐ, nǐ shì cóng Zhōngguó lái de liúxuéshēng ba?
Excuse me, you must be a student from China, aren't you?
- B: Shì a! Nǐde Zhōngwén zěnme hǎo, qùguo Zhōngguó ba?
Yes! Your Chinese is so good! Have you been to China?
- A: Hái méiyǒu, yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì wǒ yíding yào qù kànkan.
Not yet, but if I get the chance to I'm sure I'll go visit.
- B: Nà nǐde Zhōngwén jiù shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde?
Then you learned all your Chinese here in Washington?
- A: Eng. Jǐnián yǐqián wǒ zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué xuéguo yīnián, lái Huáshèngdùn yǐhòu yòu yìzhí zài xué. Kěshì Zhōngwénde shuǐpíng háishi bú gòu gāo.
Mm. A few years ago I had a year of Chinese at the University of California, and since I came to Washington, I've been studying it all along. But my level in Chinese still isn't high enough.
- B: Nǐ méiyǒu qùguo Zhōngguó, Zhōngwén zěnme hǎo le, wǒ lái Měiguó yǐjīng yīnián, Yīngwén shuǐpíng háishi tígāode hěn màn.
Your Chinese is this good and you've never been to China, but I've been in the States a year already and my English level is still improving very slowly.
- A: Zài Zhōngguóde shíhòu nǐ xuéguo Yīngwén ba?
You studied English when you were in China, I suppose?
- B: Xuéguo, xuéguo sānnián bàn ne!
Sure, I studied it for three and a half years!
- A: Shì Yīngguó Yīngwén?
British English?
- B: Shì, èrqiě jiàoshī yě dōu shì Zhōngguó rén, suǒyǐ chū guó yǐhòu zuì dàde wèntí shì tīngbudǒng, shuōbuchūlái. Kàn shū bǐ shuō huà róngyìduō le.
Yes, and my teachers were all Chinese, so after I left China my biggest problem was that I couldn't understand people talking and I couldn't speak. Reading is a lot easier than speaking.
- A: Zài Zhōngguóde shíhòu, nǐ zài nǎige dàxué niǎn shū?
In China, what university were you studying at?
- B: Zài Běidà. Běidàde Yīngwén hái suān bú cuō, búguò, wǒmen xué kējìde xuésheng zhōngdiǎn shì kàn shū, fānyì, bú shì huìhuà.
At B.U. B.U. is pretty good for English, but for us students in science and technology the emphasis is on reading and translating, not on conversation.

- A: Kējì? Shì bu shì kēxué jìshù? "Kējì"? Is that science and technology?
- B: Shì. Wǒmen chángcháng yòng hěn duō jiǎnchēng, duǒbuqǐ ya! Right. We use a lot of abbreviations, pardon me!
- A: Nà méiyǒu shenme. Búguò wǒ hái yǒu yídiǎnr bù dǒng. No problem. But there's still something I don't understand.
- B: Shénme dìfangr? What?
- A: Nǐmen cháng shuō kēxué fēn liǎng-bùfen, yíbfēn shì shèhuì kēxué, yíbfēn shì zìrán kēxué. Nàme kēxué jìshù shuōde jiù shì zìrán kēxué ma? You often say that science has two divisions. One is social science and the other is natural science. So does science and technology refer only to the natural sciences?
- B: Zhè bú shì nàme yán'gáde, tèbié shì xiàndài shèhuì, zìrán kēxué hé shèhuì kēxué jiù fēnde bú nàme qīngchū le. This [distinction] isn't so strict. Especially in modern society, the natural sciences and the social sciences aren't so clearly separated.
- A: Zhèi wǒ tóngyì. Zài fēn lèide wèntíshang, wǒmen yǒu hěn duō shuōfǎ hé nǐmen bú tài yíyàng. I agree with that. On questions of categorization, we have a lot of ideas that are different from yours.
- B: Òu, chē lái le, wǒ yào shàng chē le. Yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì zài tán. Oh, here comes the train. I have to get on it. In the future we'll talk some more if we get the chance.
- A: Hǎode, xiàcì wǒmen yòng Yīng-wén tán. All right. Next time we'll talk in English.
- B: Hǎo, xièxie nǐ, zàijiàn. Okay, thank you. Good-bye.
- A: Zàijiàn. Good-bye.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

On the campus of Beijing Language Institute, an American student (B) is sitting under a tree reading a book. A young teacher (A) from the Chinese department walks over to chat.

- A: Zài niàn shénme ne? What are you reading?
- B: Ò, Lín Lǎoshī, nín hǎo! Wǒ zài kàn Lǚ Xùn Xiǎnshengde xiǎoshuō. Oh, Miss Lin (Teacher Lin), how are you! I'm reading some fiction by (Mr.) Lü Xùn.
- A: Shì nǎyípiān na? What piece?

B: "Yào." Wǒ hěn xǐhuan Lǚ Xùn
Xiānshengde xiǎoshuō.

"Medicine." I like Lǚ Xùn's fiction
very much.

A: Wǒ xiǎng, zài Měiguóde shíhou,
Zhōngguó lìshǐ, Zhōngguó wénxué,
nǐ dāgài niànde bù shǎo.

I guess you've probably read quite
a lot of Chinese history and litera-
ture in America.

B: Xué Zhōngwén, bìxū shǒuxiǎn xué
yidiǎnr lìshǐ hé wénxué, dǒng
yidiǎnr Zhōngguó wénhuà, yàobu-
rán xué Zhōngwén yíding yǒu hěn
dàde kùnnan. Zhōngguó liúxué-
shēng yě shì zhèiyang zuò ma?

To study the Chinese language, you
have to first study a little history
and literature, and understand a lit-
tle Chinese culture, otherwise you're
sure to have a hard time studying the
language. Do Chinese who go abroad
to study do the same thing?

A: Wǒmende xuéxí tiáojiàn hái shì
bú cuòde, kěshì liúxuéshēng
chū guó yǐqián děi duì nèige
guójiāde wénhuà zuò bǐyàode
liǎojiě. Zài zhèifāngmiàn, wǒ-
men zuòde hái hěn bú gòu.

Our conditions for study are fair-
ly good, but before a student goes
abroad, he ought to acquire the req-
uisite understanding of the country
[he is going to]. In this area, we
have as yet done far from enough.

B: Wǒ tīngshuō Zhōngguó liúxué-
shēngde niánlíng dōu bú tài
xiǎo le, duōbànr shì Wénhuà Dà
Gémíng yǐqián bǐyède.

I understand that the Chinese stu-
dents going abroad aren't very young;
most of them graduated [from college]
before the Cultural Revolution.

A: Shì. Wénhuà Dà Gémíng yǐqián
dàxué bǐyèshēng pūbiànde zhǐliàng
bǐjiào gāo, hé WénGé yǐhòude
dàxuéshēng chābié bù xiǎo.

Yes. In general the quality of col-
lege graduates from before the Cul-
tural Revolution is higher. They're
quite different from the post-Cul-
tural Revolution college students.

B: Nàme shùliang ne?

How about in terms of numbers?

A: Shùliang yě bù shǎo.

Their numbers are quite large, too.

B: Nàme zhèixiē bǐyèshēng shì bu
shì dōu dānrèn bǐjiào zhōngyàode
gōngzuò ne?

So do these graduates all take on
rather important jobs?

A: Bù dōu yíyàng. Mùqián, Wénhuà
Dà Gémíng yǐqián
dàxué bǐyè-
shēng yǒu hěn duō dānrèn bǐjiào
zhōng yàode gōngzuò. Bǐfāng shuō
wǒmen Xuéyuàn ba, gōngzuòde bǐ-
jiào hǎode yě duōbànr shì nèige
shíhoude dàxuéshēng. Dāngrán,
hái yǒu gèng lǎode.

They're not all the same. At pres-
ent, there are many pre-Cultural Revo-
lution college graduates who have
taken on rather important jobs. For
example, in our Institute, those who
do their work comparatively well are
mostly college students from that
time. Of course there are older
ones as well.

- B: Wǒ hěn xǐhuan wǒmende lǎoshī, yě hěn xǐhuan Yǔyán Xuéyuàn, wǒ zhǐ shì xīwàng yǒu bǐjiào duōde jīhuì hé Zhōngguó xuésheng, lǎoshī duō tántan. I like our teachers very much, and the Institute, too. I just wish we would have more opportunities to talk with the Chinese students and teachers.
- A: Hǎo, hǎo, yǒu shíjiān wǒmen duō tántan. Nǐ kàn shū ba. Yǐhuǐr jiān. All right, we'll talk more when we get the time. You go on reading. See you in a while.
- B: Lín Lǎoshī yǐhuǐr jiān. See you in a while, Miss Lín.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

An American graduate student (A) walks up the stairs in front of the Beijing University library. A Chinese graduate student (B), whose arms are full of books, is trying to open the door with his foot.

- A: Wǒ lái, wǒ lái! Dēngyidēng, wǒ lái kāi ni kāi mén. I'll get it, I'll get it. Wait a second, I'll open the door for you.
- B: Xièxie ni. Thank you.
- A: Zhè dōu shì nǐ jiède shū a? These are all books you borrowed?
- B: Shì a! Yòngle liǎngge xīngqīde gōngfu, hǎo róngyi cái kànwán le. Yeah! It took me long enough to finish reading them--two weeks!
- A: Bú cuò, liǎngge xīngqī kàn zhème duō Yīngwén cānkǎoshū, sùdu bú màn na! Not bad! To read all these English reference books in two weeks, that's a pretty good speed!
- (They enter the door and "B" goes to return his books. "A" sits down at a table. A few minutes later, "B" comes over to her.)
- A: Xiūxi jǐfēn zhōng zài jìnqu kàn shū, hǎo bu hǎo a? Why don't you rest a few minutes before you go in to study, okay?
- B: Hǎo. Nèitiān, xīli yánjiūshēng kāi huì, dàjiā dōu rènwéi nǐ tán-de hěn hǎo, yě dōu juéde nǐde Zhōngwén bǐ gāng lái Běidàde shíhou hǎode duō le. Okay. The other day when the graduate students in the department held a meeting, everyone thought that what you said was very good, and we all felt that your Chinese is much better now than when you first came to B.U.
- A: Kěshì wǒ háishi juéde xuéxí sùdu tài màn, wǒmen dōu xīwàng néng jiākuài sùdu, tígāo shuō huàde shuǐpíng. But I still feel that our pace of study is too slow. We all wish we could speed up the pace to improve our speaking.

B: Nèitiān nǐ tíchulaide guānyú yào liǎojiě Zhōngguó shèhuìde wèntí, xuéxiào fāngmiàn yíding huì kǎolǚde. Kěshì, wǒ xiǎng, nǐmen shuō Zhōngwénde jīhuì bù shǎo a! Yǒu Zhōngguó lǎoshī, yǒu Zhōngguó tóngxué, érqǐě nǐmende Zhōngwén dōu bú cuò le, nǐmen wàiguó xuésheng zìjǐ yě kényī shuō Zhōngwén ma!

I'm sure the school will consider the question you brought up about wanting to learn about Chinese society. But it seems to me you have plenty of chances to speak Chinese! There are the Chinese teachers, and your Chinese classmates. Besides, you all speak Chinese very well now. You foreign students can speak Chinese among yourselves!

A: Wǒmen zìjǐ zài yìqǐ shuō Yīngwén shì hěn zìrán de. Érqǐě, xuéxiàoli dōu shì xuésheng hé lǎoshī. Wǒmen hěn xīwàng hé shèhuìshàngde pǔtōng rén tānyitán.

It's natural for us to speak English together. Besides, in school it's all students and teachers. We want very much to converse with ordinary people in society.

B: Wǒmen zhèixiē xuésheng duōbànr yě dōu shì cóng pǔtōngde jiātínglǐ lái de ma. Tèbié shì jīngguó Wénhuà Dà Gémíng yǐhòude dàxuéshēng duōbànr dōu zài shèhuìshàng gōngzuòguo hěn duō nián, bǐjiào liǎojiě shèhuìde qíngkuàng.

Most of us students are from ordinary families, you know. In particular, most college students after the Cultural Revolution have worked in society many years and understand the social situation pretty well.

A: Ò, zhè hái shì yǒu qūbiéde. Shèhuìde qíngkuàng gēn dàxuélǐde qíngkuàng hěn bù yíyàng. Wǒmen lái Zhōngguó nián shùde wàiguó liúxuéshēng, yánjiúshēng, dōu hěn xiǎng duō liǎojiě Zhōngguóde qíngxíng, tèbié shì xiǎng liǎojiě nǐmen shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuàde qíngkuàng.

Oh, there's still a difference. Society is quite different from the situation in the university. All of us foreign college and graduate students who come to China to study want to understand the situation here, and especially how the accomplishment of the Four Modernizations is progressing.

B: Dāngrán, dāngrán. Zhèyìdiǎn wǒmen shì qǐngchūde. Wǒmen xiǎng tài duōde shèhuì huódòng dàgài huì làngfèi nǐmen bù shǎode shíjiān.

Of course, of course. We understand that. But we think that too many social activities would probably waste a lot of your time.

A: Ò! Méiyǒu wèntí, zài Měiguóde dàxuélǐ, wǒmen bú jiù shì zài xuéxiào hé túshūguǎnlǐ nián shù, shèhuì shēnghuó shì wǒmen zuì zhōngyàode jiàokēshù, yě shì zuì hǎode lǎoshī.

Oh, that's no problem. In American universities, we don't just study in school and in the library. Social life is our most important textbook and our best teacher.

B: Hǎode, hǎode, wǒ yíding hé xīlǐ tānyitán, duō gěi nǐmen ānpai yìdiǎnr cānguān fāngwènde huódòng.

All right, I'll be sure to talk with the department, and set up more visiting activities for you people.

A: Hǎode, xièxie nǐ. Nǐ kuài jìnqu
niǎn shū ba! Bú zhàn nǐde shí-
jiǎn le. Zàijiàn.

Good, thank you. Now you go on in
and study. I won't take up any more
of your time. Good-bye.

B: Zàijiàn.

Good-bye.

Unit 3, Reference List

1. A: Tāmen quān zhèige gōngshè jiào shénme? Dānzishang yǒu méiyǒu xiězhe?
 B: Xiězhe ne, jiào "Sìjìqīng." Yes, it's called Sìjìqīng.
2. A: Zhèige gōngshè shíwǔge dàduì-de chǎnliàng dōu zhème gāo ma?
 B: Chābuduō, zài shāndìde liǎngge dàduì, chǎnliàng shǎo yídiǎnr. Almost. The two brigades in the mountains have somewhat lower outputs.
3. A: Běijīng jiǎoqū shēngchǎn yìzhǒng yǒu míngde dàozi, jiào shénme?
 B: Jiào Jīngxīdào. Běijīngde jīng, dōng-xī-nán-běide de xī. It's called Jīngxīdào. Jīng as in Běijīng, xī as in dōng-xī-nán-běi.
4. A: Quánguó yígòng yǒu jǐge píngyuán?
 B: Miànjì bǐjiào dàde yǒu sìge, dōu shì shēngchǎn liángshìde zhǔyào dìqū. How many flatland regions are there in the whole country?
 There are four which are relatively large; all of them are major grain-producing regions.
5. A: Nèige shēngchǎn shūcàide dàduì zhǐ yǒu liùshí hù?
 B: Shì a, èrbǎiduōkǒu rén měinián mài gěi guójiā bù shǎode cài na! The brigade that produces vegetables has only sixty households!
 Yes, for two hundred people, they sell a lot of vegetables to the state every year!
6. A: Xiànzài, gāo jīngjì jiànshè hái shì Zhōngguó rénmín zuì zhòngyàode gōngzuò a!
 B: Shì, suīrán zhèixiē nián fāzhǎn sùdù hěn kuài, kěshì jīngjì hái shì wǒmende gōngzuò zhòngdiǎn. Today, engaging in economic construction is still the most important work of the Chinese people!
 Yes, although the pace of development has been very fast the past few years, the economy is still the main focus of our work.

7. A: Hē! Nǐmende càidī shōude bù shǎo a!
 B: Jiù shì ma, měimǔ dì dōu shōu yíwànduō jīn na!
8. A: Zhèige gōngshè jīxièhuà yǐhòu, mǔchǎn tígāole duōshǎo?
 B: Tígāole yíbàn duō yidiǎn, chābuduō bǎifēnzhī wǔshíyī.
9. A: Nǐ jiù cānguānle "Sìjìqīng?" Bǐde jǐge xiānjìn gōngshè ne? Shénme shíhou qù ya?
 B: Guò jítiān jiù qù, péi jǐwèi nóngyè zhuānjiā yìqǐ qù.
10. A: Zhèige dìqūde nóngyè shēngchǎn yǒu shénme tèdiǎn ma?
 B: Wǒmen shìzhe zǔzhīle jǐge zhuānyèhuàde gōngshè, tāmen-de shēngchǎn bǐjiǎo yǒu tèdiǎn.
11. A: Nǐmen gōngshè yǒu zhème duō dà tuōlājī!
 B: Ng, píngjūn měige dàduì èrshítái, wǒmen hái xiǎng duō mǎi jítái ne!
12. A: Cóng túpiànshang kàn, nǐmen gōngzuòde hǎo xīnkǔ.
 B: Méiyou shenme xīnkǔ, jiù shì zài xuéxiào hòubianr zhòng diǎnr cài.
13. zhuānyè special line/field/discipline
14. jīqī (jīqī) machine

Unit 3, Vocabulary List

bǎifēn zhǐ	percent
càidī chǎnliàng	vegetable plot output, yield
dàduì dàozi dì	(production) brigade rice; paddy earth, soil; land; fields
fāzhǎn	to develop, to expand, to grow
gōngshè guān X jiào Y	commune to call X Y
-hù -huā	household, family -ize
jiànshè	to construct, build; construction, reconstruction
jiāoqū Jīngxīdào jīxièhuà	suburbs, outskirts (a kind of rice plant) to mechanize
-kǒu	(counter for people)
liángshi	grain, cereals
miànjī -mǔ mǔchǎn	(surface) area <u>mu</u> , a unit of area per- <u>mu</u> yield
píngjūn píngyuán	average, mean plain, flatlands
quánguó	the whole country
rénmín	the people
shāndì shōu shūcài Sījīqīng	mountainous region, hilly area to harvest vegetable (a commune in Běijīng suburbs)
-tái tèdiǎn tuōlājī túpiàn	(counter for machines) distinctive trait, characteristic tractor picture, photograph

xiānjìn
xīnkǔ

to be advanced
to be hard work; to be toilsome,
to be arduous; to work hard, to
go through hardships, to go to
great trouble

zhōng
zhuānjiā
zhuānyè
zhuānyèhuà
zǔzhī

to plant
specialist, expert
special line/field/discipline
to specialize; specialization
to organize, to form

Unit 3, Reference Notes

1. A: Tāmen guān zhèige gōngshè What do they call this commune? Is
 jiào shénme? Dānzishang it written on the list?
 yǒu méiyǒu xiězhe?
- B: Xiězhe ne, jiào "Sìjìqīng." Yes, it's called Sìjìqīng.

Notes on No. 1

guān...jiào...: Guān A jiào B means "to call A B."

Guǎngdōng rén guān qípáo jiào Cantonese call qípáos (a kind of
 "chángshān." dress) "chángshān."

gōngshè: "commune" This is short for rénmín gōngshè, "people's commune"
 (the word rénmín is taught in exchange 6). Gōng means "public," and shè is
 an "organized body."

People's communes, of which there are now over 52,000 in China, are the administrative units of the countryside. There are three levels of commune organization: the production team, with from eleven to over one hundred households; the production brigade, with from twenty to over one thousand households; and the commune itself, with from six to seventeen brigades or from fifty-six to 275 teams. A typical commune might have a population of 22,500 people, broken down into fifteen production brigades of three hundred families each, and each brigade would in turn be composed of ten production teams of thirty families. (Of course, no actual commune would be divided up so evenly.) A typical county might be made up of thirteen communes of this size.

The people's communes were formed after a long series of changes in the organization of the countryside, beginning with the Land Reform Movement of 1950. This movement distributed the land to the peasants; the next step was to begin the coordination of their efforts in production. They did this in 1951 by forming mutual aid teams, also called work exchange teams. The peasants still owned their own land, plows, and livestock, but they pooled their manpower, tools, and other resources to get the work done.

In 1953, elementary agricultural cooperatives were organized by merging several mutual aid teams. The land, tools, and livestock became the property of the cooperative, but the profits from the land were distributed, not retained by the commune for investment. In 1956, when advanced agricultural cooperatives were established, the distribution of profits was abolished.

In 1958, the last step to communize China was taken. The people's communes were formed by the merging of several advanced agricultural cooperatives. What was formerly an advanced agricultural cooperative became a production brigade. The original plan for communization had called for completion in 1967. Since no major problems were encountered, the plan was completed nine years ahead of time.

Today, commune members still live in individual houses. All the land, buildings, shops, clinics, large machinery, electrical power stations, factories, and so on, belong to the commune. However, the planning of the production and the payment of the members, which depends on the amount of production, is done on the production team level. All the teams have their own livestock, but they take turns borrowing large machines such as planters or tractors from the commune. Production teams often specialize in one type of activity, such as crop raising, machinery repair, or animal husbandry. Production brigades handle tasks which are beyond the capacity of a team, such as irrigation or the purchasing of a tractor. Truly large projects like road construction or the establishment of a large, well-equipped hospital, must be taken on by the commune.

yǒu méiyou xiězhe: -Zhe is the marker of duration. Together with a verb, it describes a STATE, for example:

Mén	kāizhe.
(The door	is in the state of having been opened.)

"The door is open."

Mén	guānzhe.
(The door	is in the state of having been closed.)

"The door is closed."

Thus, xiězhe, in exchange 1, means literally "in the state of having been written."

To make a verb plus -zhe negative, use méi(you) (not bù):

Mén méi kāizhe.

The door is not open.

Mén méi guānzhe.

The door is not closed.

Dānzishang méi xiězhe.

It isn't written on the list.

To make a question, use one of the following patterns:

Mén kāizhe ma?

Mén yǒu méiyou kāizhe?

Mén kāizhe meiyou?

Is the door open?

Ne is often added onto the end of a sentence with -zhe:

Mén kāizhe ne ma?

Is the door open?

Kāizhe ne.

Yes, it's open.

Many speakers of standard Chinese do not use this -zhe; they would replace it by phrasing such as Mén kāile and Dānzishang yǒu méiyou xiě (or xiě le méiyou). These sentences are also perfectly good Chinese.

Sìjìqīng: A commune in rural Běijīng. Literally, the name means "four-seasons-green," in other words, "green all year round."

Half the population of the municipality of Běijīng lives in rural areas, in 272 people's communes. The principal crops are wheat, rice, and vegetables, including cabbage, eggplants, cucumbers, and tomatoes. There are also orchards producing apples, pears, peaches, and persimmons. About half the vegetables grown in Běijīng's communes supply the city's needs completely and half are shipped elsewhere.

2. A: Zhèige gōngshè shíwǔge dàduì-
de chǎnliàng dōu zhème gāo
ma? Is the output this high in all
fifteen brigades of this commune?
- B: Chàbuduō, zài shāndìde
liǎngge dàduì, chǎnliàng
shǎo yidiǎnr. Almost. The two brigades in the
mountains have somewhat lower
outputs.

Notes on No. 2

dàduì: "(production) brigade," short for shēngchǎn dàduì.

chǎnliàng: "output, yield," literally, "production-amount."

shāndì: "mountainous region; hilly area; hilly country," literally, "mountain-land."

Āěrbā'níyà shì shāndì guójiā. Albania is a mountainous country.

Zài shān Output is somewhat lower in
mountainous regions.

Nèige dìfāng shì shān , kāi chē That's hilly country; it isn't
bù tài fāngbian. easy to drive there.

3. A: Běijīng jiǎoqū shēngchǎn yì-
zhǒng yǒu míngde dàozi,
jiào shénme? There's a famous kind of rice pro-
duced in the suburbs of Běijīng.
What's it called?
- B: Jiào Jīngxīdào. Běijīngde It's called Jīngxīdào. Jīng as in
jīng, dōng-xī-nán-běide Běijīng, xī as in dōng-xī-nán-
xī. běi běi.

Notes on No. 3

jiǎoqū: "suburbs, outskirts" The bound form jiāo means "suburbs," as in

in Běijīng xījiāo, "the western suburbs of Běijīng," yuǎnjiāo, "the outer suburbs," and jīnjiāo, "the close suburbs." (Qū, "area, district," will be introduced separately in Unit 5 of this module.)

Běijīng jiāoqū yígòng yǒu
èrbǎiqīshíèrge gōngshè.

Altogether, there are 272
communes in the suburbs of
Běijīng.

Sìjìqīng gōngshè zài Běijīngde
jīn jiāoqū.

The commune Sìjìqīng is in the
close suburbs of Běijīng.

dǎozi: "rice" in the paddy or after harvesting but before hulling.
(After hulling, it is called mǐ, and when cooked it is called fàn.)

Jīngxīdào: "Capital-West Rice," a variety famous for its good taste.

Běijīngde jīng: "jīng as in Běijīng" In conversation, you identify a word or character by giving a common phrase in which it is used. The pattern for doing this is

Phrase	-de	Word	
e.g., yī èr sān sì	-de	sì	"'four' as in 'one two three four'"

This pattern can be especially useful when you tell someone your Chinese name. If you were called Chén Dǐngwén (), for example, you could identify the characters of your first name by saying Yídìngde dǐng, wénxuéde wén, "Dǐng as in yídìng ('certainly'), and wén as in wénxué ('literature')."

dōng-xī-nán-běi: While in English we usually name the directions of the compass in the order "north, south, east, west," in Chinese they are usually named in the order

dōng xī nán běi	or	dōng nán xī běi
east west south north		east south west north

4. A: Quánguó yígòng yǒu jǐge píng-yuán? How many flatland regions are there in the whole country?
- B: Miànji bǐjiāo dàde yǒu sìge, dòu shì shēngchǎn liángshide zhǔyào dìqū. There are four which are relatively large in area; all of them are major grain-producing regions.

Notes on No. 4

quánguó: "the whole country"

Wú Zuòrénde huà zài quánguó hěn yǒu míng.

The paintings of Wú Zuòrén are famous throughout the country.

Quánguó chǎnliàng zuì gāode dìqū shì Sìchuān.

The area of the country with the highest output is Sìchuān.

Běijīng Yāo-líng-yāo Zhōngguóde
jiàoyu shìliàng quánguó dìyī.

The educational quality of Běijīng's
No. 101 Middle School is first
in the country.

miànjī: "(surface) area" (For the second example, you need to know
píngfāng gōnglǐ, "square kilometer.")

Zhèige gōngshède miànjī duō dà? What is the area of this commune?

Zhōngguóde miànjī shì jiǔbǎi China's area is 9.6 million square
liùshiwàn píngfāng gōnglǐ. kilometers.

miànjī bǐjiào dàde yǒu sìge: This is a useful structure with yǒu:

Miànjī bǐjiào dàde (píngyuán)	yǒu sìge.
(As for the ones [flatlands] with a relatively large area,	there four.) are

"There are four with a
relatively large area."

Tā bú yuànyì qù Zhōngguóde yuányīn	zhǔyào liǎngge. yǒu
(As for the reasons why he doesn't want to go to China,	there are two.) mainly

"There are mainly two
reasons why he doesn't
want to go to China."

Zuótiān méi lái de (rén)	yǒu duōshǎo?
(As for those [people] who didn't come yes- terday,	there how many?) were

"How many people were
there who didn't come
yesterday?"

Zhōngwén shuōde nàme hǎode Měiguó rén	méiyǒu jǐge.
(As for Americans who speak Chinese that well,	there a few.) aren't

"There aren't but a few
Americans who speak
Chinese that well."

liángshi: "grain, cereals," but in Chinese terminology this can also
include other staples like beans and sweet potatoes.

5. A: Nèige shēngchǎn shūcài de dàdū zhǐ yǒu liùshí hù! The brigade that produces vegetables
has only sixty households!

B: Shì a, èrbǎiduōkǒu rén měi-nián mài gěi guójiā bù shǎo-
de cài na! Yes, for two hundred people, they
sell a lot of vegetables to the
state every year!

Notes on No. 5

hù(r): "household, family" The original meaning of this word was "door." Now it has become the counter for households. Besides its use in exchange 5, -hù can also be followed by the noun rénjiā, "people-home," that is, "family":

Zhèige dàduì yǒu duōshao hù
rénjiā?

How many households are there
in this brigade?

Zài Měiguó, chàbuduō měihù dōu
yǒu diànshì.

In American, almost every family
has a television.

kǒu: Literally, "mouth," this is the counter for people considered as making up a family, as in

Nǐ jiā yǒu jǐkǒu rén?

How many people are there in your
family?

mài gěi guójiā: "sell to the state" Every year, a production team must give a certain percentage (usually from five to seven percent) of its produce and cash income in taxes to the state. In addition, they must sell a quota of grain to the state, the quantity being established according to the population of the team, and the area and productivity of the land. If the team is left with additional grain after fulfilling their quota, they decide for themselves how much of it they will sell for cash to the state at a higher price and how much will be put into the team's grain reserves. The state sets quotas for grains; fruit and vegetable supply and demand are coordinated by local government authorities.

...bù shǎode cài na!: Na is not a new word for you; it is just a contraction of ne and a. You have learned that ne is the marker of absence of change. Here it has a special function: to show that the speaker is trying to convince the listener of the greatness of an amount, the great extent of a condition, or a fact which surpasses ordinary expectations. Examples:

Tāde shōurù bù shǎo ne!

His income is not small (i.e., more
than you would suspect)!

Tā shuōle yào zuò dào hěn wǎn ne.

She said she was going to work until
very late.

Hǎo rè'naode dìfang na!

What a lively place!

Kān tā nàme niánqīng, hái néng
qù zuò jiàoshòu ne!

Isn't it something that someone
as young as he can be a professor!

Yào cānguān nàme duō dìfang,
yíge xīngqī nǎr gòu? Liǎngge
xīngqī hái bú gòu ne!

How could one week be long enough
to visit so many places? Two
weeks wouldn't even be enough!

Zhème dàde rén hái kū na!

Imagine, such a grown-up person
crying!

6. A: Xiànzài, gāo jīngjì jiànshè
hái shì Zhōngguó rénmin zuì
zhòngyào de gōngzuò a!

Today, engaging in economic construction is still the most important work of the Chinese people!

B: Shì, suīrán zhèixiē nián
fāzhǎn sùdù hěn kuài, kěshì
jīngjì hái shì wǒmen de gōng-
zuò zhòngdiǎn.

Yes, although the pace of development has been very fast the past few years, the economy is still the main focus of our work.

Notes on No. 6

jiànshè: "to construct, to build up; construction" This is mostly used in a special sense: to construct or build up a country. The jargon "socialist construction," "the construction of China," or "China reconstructs" conveys an attitude toward the "mission" facing the country: to build China from the ruins left by a semi-feudal, semi-colonial society into a socialist power and to create the conditions for the transition to Communism. "Socialist construction" includes the reform of the superstructure as well as the development of the national economy.

Wǒmen yào bǎ Zhōngguó jiànshè-
chéng yíge xiàndàihuàde shè-
huìzhǔyì guójiā.

We want to build China into a
a modern socialist nation.

rénmín: "the people" You have seen this word already in Rénmínbì, "People's currency." Distinguish between rénmín and rénmen. Rénmen (with the plural ending -men) refers to any and all people, without class implications. It has approximately the same scope as dàjiā, "everyone." Rénmín, on the other hand, refers to the broad masses and lower-level cadres, and excludes state and class enemies.

Zhōngguó rénmin xiwàng néng
shēnghuóde āndìng.

The Chinese people hope to be able
live peaceful and settled lives.

Quánguó yígòng yǒu wǔwàn èrqiān-
duō rénmin gōngshè.

There are over 52,000 people's
communes in the whole country.

fāzhǎn: "to develop, to grow" In the Society module, you learned the adjectival verb fādá, "to be developed." Now you see the action verb for "to develop."

Zhài èrshinián lái, Rìběnde
qìchē gōngyè fāzhǎnde bǐjiào
kuài.

Over the past twenty years, Japan's
automobile industry has developed
rather quickly.

Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ zài nǚlì fāzhǎn
gōngyè.

The Chinese government is working
hard to develop industry.

Tā yánjiū fāzhǎnzhōng guó'ide
jīngjì qíngkuàng.

He studies the economic situation
of developing countries.

7. A: Hē! Nǐmēnde càidì shōude bù shǎo a!

Wow! You've harvested quite a lot from your vegetable plots!

B: Jiù shí ma, měimǐ dì dōu shōu yíwànduǒ jīn na!

Sure, we harvested over ten thousand catties from each mu of land!

Notes on No. 7

càidì: "vegetable plots" or "vegetable fields" (large or small).

shōu: "to harvest"

Lǎo Wángde càidì měinián shōude fānqié dōu hěn duō.

Lǎo Wáng harvests a lot of tomatoes from his vegetable plots every year.

Shōubudào liángshí, zěnme chí fàn ne?

If we can't harvest any grain, how will we eat? (rhetorical question said by farmers when working in the fields)

mǔ: A Chinese unit of area equal to 1/15 hectare. In English this is simply written mu (or sometimes mou).

dì: "land," "ground," or "fields"

Zhèikuài dì yǐqián shì wǒ fùqīnde.

This piece of land used to belong to my father.

Tā cóng dìshang zhǎodàole nèizhǐ bǐ.

He found that pen on the ground.

Shuì dìshang ba! Lián jiàoshòu dōu shuì nàr ne!

Sleep on the ground! Even professors sleep there!

Zhème zǎo nǐmen jiù dào dīli qù gōngzuò la!

You're going to work in the fields so early!

shōude bù shǎo: "harvested quite a lot" Here are some more examples of the pattern Verb -de Quantity:

Nǐ chīde tài shǎo.

You're eating too little.

Guānyú zhèige, wǒ zhīdaode bù duō.

I don't know much about this.

Tā kàn xiǎoshuō kànde bǐ wǒ duō.

He reads more fiction than I.

Wǒ bú shì jiào nǐ shǎo mǎi yí-diǎnr ma? Nǐ mǎide tài duō le!

Didn't I tell you not to buy very much? You bought too much!

8. A: Zhèige gōngshè jīxièhuà
yībàn, mùchǎn tígāole duō-
shǎo? Since this commune was mechanized,
how much has the yield per mu
been increased?
- B: Tígāole yībàn duō yidiǎn,
chābuduō bǎifēnzhī wūshiyī. It was raised a little more than half,
about fifty-one percent.

Notes on No. 8

jīxièhuà: "to mechanize; mechanization" Jīxiè means "machinery," "mechanics," or "mechanical." -Huà is the syllable which corresponds to "-ize" (make into), which you learned in the previous unit in xiàndàihuà, "to modernize."

Nóngyè jīxièhuà xiànzài shì
nóngcūnde zhòngdiǎn gōngzuò. Agricultural mechanization is now
the key task in rural areas.

Nǐmen dàduìde jīxièhuà shuǐpíng
xiāngdāng gāo a! The level of mechanization in your
brigade is quite high!

yībàn duō yidiǎn: "a little more than half" [The opposite, "a little
less than half," could be said as chǎnyidiǎnr yībàn, yībàn shǎo yidiǎnr, or yī-
bàn bú dào yidiǎnr.]

bǎifēnzhī wūshiyī: "fifty-one percent" Chinese does not have a separate
word for "percent," expressing percentages with the same pattern used for all
fractions. First, therefore, you should learn how to express fractions. In
Chinese, the two parts of a fraction are stated in the reverse order from Eng-
lish, with the word -zhī in between. (-Zhī is a literary word with the same
use as -de: possessive or modification marker.)

sānfēn zhī èr

(3 parts 's 2) "two parts out of three,"
i.e., "two thirds"

Here are a few more examples:

$\frac{1}{2}$ èrfēnzhī yī* $\frac{1}{3}$ sānfēnzhī yī $\frac{1}{4}$ sìfēnzhī yī $\frac{1}{20}$ èrshífēnzhī yī

$\frac{5}{4}$ sìfēnzhī wǔ $\frac{5}{8}$ bāfēnzhī wǔ $\frac{17}{19}$ shíjiǔfēnzhī shíqī

Percentages (hundredths) are expressed like this:

bǎifēn zhī wūshiyī

(100 parts 's 51) "fifty-one parts out of one hundred,"
i.e., "fifty-one one hundredths"
or "fifty-one percent"

*Normally, of course, you would say yībàn.

"One hundred percent," therefore, is bǎifēnzhī bǎi:

Tā shì bǎifēnzhī bǎide
Měiguó rén.

He is one hundred percent American.

9. A: Nǐ jiù cānguānle "Sìjìqīng?"
Biéde jǐge xiānjìn gōngshè
ne? Shénme shíhou qù ya?

You've only visited Sìjìqīng? How
about the other advanced communes?
When are you going to them?

B: Guò jítīān jiù qù, péi jǐ-
wèi nóngyè zhuānjiā yìqǐ
qù.

We'll be going in a few days. We're
going with several specialists in
agriculture.

Notes on No. 9

biéde jǐge...: "the other few" Compare:

Nǐ jiù cānguān gōngshè ma?
Bù cānguān biéde shénme dìfang?

You're only visiting communes?
You're not going to visit any
other kinds of places?

xiānjìn: "advanced" This is used to describe people, work units, or methods of a high level, worthy of emulation. Individuals may be designated as advanced workers (xiānjìn gōngzuòzhě) by their unit leaders or elected by their fellow workers, and units such as factories and communes may be designated as advanced by government authorities. To qualify as advanced, a unit must have carried out all political movements successfully, successfully put into effect each policy directive, and completely met the quota for its product under the national plan.

guò jítīān: "in a few days" (literally, "pass a few days")

Qǐng nǐ guò yíhuǐr zài dǎlai.

Please call back in a while. (In
this case, guò yíhuǐr means děng
yíhuǐr.)

Zài guò jǐge xīngqī, tāmen jiù
yào shōu dàozi le.

In another few weeks, they are
going to harvest the rice.

Bàba mǎma xiān dào le. Yòu
guòle yíhuǐr, dìdì mèimei
yě lái le.

Mother and father arrived first.
Then after a while, younger brother
and sister came too.

zhuānjiā: "specialist, expert" The ending -jiā enters into many words describing people. It has a slightly different meaning from -zhě, which you learned in unit 1. -Zhě is only added to verbs; -jiā can be added to nouns as well as verbs. -Zhě means simply "a person who...", but -jiā is used for professionals or specialists in some activity. Thus, zuòjiā is "professional writer, author," but zuòzhě is just "writer" (not specifying whether writing is the person's career).

The ending -jiā is added to subjects of study, as in zhèngzhixuéjiā,

"political scientist," and jīngjìxuéjiā, "economist." In the PRC, some words with the ending -jiā carry elitist overtones and are sometimes replaced by other terms.

10. A: Zhèige dìqūde nóngyè shēngchǎn yǒu shénme tèdiǎn ma? Is there anything distinctive about the agricultural production of this region?
- B: Wǒmen shìzhe zǔzhìle jǐge zhuānyèhuàde gōngshè, tā-mende shēngchǎn bǐjiǎo yǒu tèdiǎn. We have organized a few specialized communes on a trial basis. Their production set-up is rather distinctive.

Notes on No. 10

yǒu shénme tèdiǎn ma?: "does...have any distinctive points?" is here translated more idiomatically as "is there anything distinctive about...?"

shìzhe zǔzhìle...: "trying-ly organized..." i.e., "organized on a trial basis"

Nǐ shìzhe nàiyang zuò xíng bu xíng. Try doing it that way and see if it works.

Zhèishuāng xié wǒ shìzhe chuān, chuānbushàng. I tried to put these shoes on, but couldn't get them on.

Do not overuse shìzhe; there are other more common ways to express English "try." Sometimes the idea of trying is implicit in the verb itself, as in

Zhèipiān wénzhāng wǒ kànle, kànboxiǎqù. I tried to read this article, but I couldn't.

Wǒ gěile, tā bú yào. I tried to give it to him, but he didn't want it (wouldn't take it).

Sometimes, "try" can be expressed by reduplicating the verb:

Nǐ chuānchuan. Try it on.

Wǒ chuānle chuān, chuānbushàng. I tried to put it on, but couldn't get it on.

Wǒ kāile kāi, kāibukāi. I tried to open it, but couldn't get it open.

or by a reduplicated verb plus kān:

Wǒ méi zuòguo jiǎozi, zuòzuo kān ba. I've never made jiǎozi (dumplings), but I can try.

zǔzhī: "to organize; organization"

Zhèipiān wénzhāng zǔzhīde hěn hǎo. This article is well organized.

Wǒmen zǔzhīle yíge lǚxíngtuán, xiǎng dào Ōuzhōu qù wánwanr. We organized a tour group; we want to go on a trip to Europe.

Zhèige zǔzhī yǐjīng yǒu wǔshiwàn rén le. This organization already has 500,000 people.

zhuānyè: "special line/field/discipline; specialization" This is used in the PRC for one's "major" subject in college, or for one's professional specialization.

Wǒ zài dàxué xuéde zhuānyè shì zhèngzhīxué. My major in college was political science.

Shùxué zhuānyè zhēn méi yìsi, nǐ wèishénme hái yào xué ta? Majoring in math is really boring; why do (did) you want to take it?

Zhèige zhuānyè zài Zhōngguó hěn shǎo yǒu rén xué. Very few people study this specialization in China.

zhuānyèhuà: "specialized; specialization"

Gōngchǎngde zhuānyèhuà yuè lái yuè pǔbiàn le. The specialization of factories is becoming more and more common.

Zhuānyèhuà(de) rénmin gōngshè yǒu tāde hǎochù. Specialized communes have their advantages.

11. A: Nǐmen gōngshè yǒu zhème duō dà tuōlājī! Your commune has so many large tractors!

B: Ng, píngjūn měige dàduì èrshítái, wǒmen hái xiǎng duō mǎi jítái ne! Yes, every brigade has twenty on the average, and we want to buy a few more!

Notes on No. 11

tuōlājī: "tractor" This word may be a sound borrowing from the English word "tractor," but it also makes good sense in Chinese, since the parts mean literally, "drag-pull-machine."

píngjūn: "average" This can be used as an adjective, an adverb, or a verb:

Zhōngguó gōnggrénde píngjūn shōurù bù duō. The average salary of Chinese workers is not much.

Píngjūn yíge rén shíge jiǎozi zěnmé gòu! How could an average of ten jiǎozi (dumplings) per person be enough!

Píngjūnqilai wōmen měige rén
yǒu shíkuài qián.

When you average it out, each of
us has ten dollars.

-tái: Literally, "platform" (as you learned in zhàntái, "station platform"), this is the counter for machines. (The word for "machine," jīqì, is number 14 on this reference list.)

měige dàduì èrshítái: "twenty for each brigade" No verb is necessary here. Compare:

Yíge rén yíkuài.

One piece (e.g., of cake) per person.

měige xīngqī yíci

once every week

Wōmen xuéxiào píngjūn wúge
xuésheg yíge lǎoshī.

In our school, there is one teacher
for every five students on the
average.

hái xiǎng duō mǎi jǐtái: "still want to buy a few more" English "more" sometimes contains the meaning of "still, additionally" (hái), so the word "still" is not absolutely necessary in the English translation for 11B. Look at other examples of the common pattern hái...duō...:

Zhèige xiǎo nánháizi hái xiǎng
duō chī yíge píngguǒ, kěshì
tā māma bù gěi!

This little boy (still) wanted to
have another apple, but his mother
wouldn't give it to him!

Wǒ hái xīwàng duō xué jǐge yuè
Zhōngwén.

I would like to study Chinese for
another few months.

Tā hái děi duō děng jǐtiān cái
néng zǒu.

He still has to wait another few
days before he can leave.

12. A: Cóng túpiànshang kàn, nǐmen
gōngzuòde hǎo xīnkǔ.

From the picture it looks like you're
working very hard.

B: Méiyou shenme xīnkǔ, jiù shì
zài xuéxiào hòubianr zhòng
diǎnr cài.

Not so hard. We're just planting
some vegetables behind the school.

Notes on No. 12

túpiàn: "picture, photograph" This is usually used for photographs, as in túpiàn zhǎnlǎn, "photo exhibition" (but some people use it for any kind of illustration).

xīnkǔ: "to be arduous, tiring, hard" (literally, "pungent-bitter")

Tā báitiān zuò shì, wǎnshang
niàn shū, tài xīnkǔ le.

It's too tiring for her, working
during the daytime and studying
at night.

Nǐ zhème xīnkǔ yào lèibīngde.

You're going to get sick from
fatigue by working so hard.

zhòng: "to plant" or "to grow" things:

Zhèikuài dì zhòng shénme yě
bù shōu.

You don't harvest anything you
plant on this land!

Zhòng liángshí shì nóngmínde shì.

Growing-grain is the business of
the peasants.

Zhèige shǎoshù mínzú zài shān-
shang zhòngle bù shǎo qíguài de
dōngxi lái chī.

This minority nationality grows
a lot of strange things on the
mountain to eat.

13. zhuānyè

special line/field/discipline
(See Notes on No. 10)

14. jīqì (jīqī) (yītái)

machine

Unit 3, Review Dialogue

While walking along Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard in Běijīng, Ms. Olsen (A), an agricultural specialist from the United States, and Chén Guóqiáng (B), from the China Travel Service, stop to look at the photos and articles displayed in the building of the People's Daily. They are looking at an article about a model commune, Sījìqīng.

- A: Zhèige dìfang shì bu shì wǒmen yào qù cānguānde? Is this one of the places we're going to visit?
- B: Shì. Guò liǎngtiān wǒmen jiù qù. Yes. We'll be going in a couple of days.
- A: Wǒ kàn, zhèige rénmin gōngshè hǎoxiàng yǒu yìdiǎnr tèbié ma, tā-mende shēngchǎn zhǔyào shì shūcǎi hé shuǐguǒ. It looks to me as if this people's commune is rather special. Their production is mainly vegetables and fruits.
- B: Nǐ shuōde yìdiǎnr yě bú cuò, zhèi jiù shì yǒu míngde Sījìqīng Rénmin Gōngshè. You're absolutely right. This is the famous Sījìqīng People's Commune.
- A: "Sījìqīng"?" "Sījìqīng?"
- B: Duì le, "yìnián sìjì"de "sìjì," "qīng shān lǜ shuǐ"de "qīng". Nín zài Běijīng Fàndiàn chīde cài dàbùfen dōu shì tāmen shēngchǎnde. Yes. "Sìjì" ["Four Seasons"] as in "yìnián sìjì" ["throughout the four seasons of the year," and "qīng" ["green"] as in "qīng shān lǜ shuǐ" ["green hills and green water"]. Most of the food you eat at the Běijīng Hotel is produced by them.
- A: Òu! Oh!
- B: Tāmen gōngshè yǒu sìwànduǒ mǔ tǔdì, dàbùfen dōu shì cài dì. Their commune has over four hundred mu of land. Most of it is vegetable plots.
- A: Càidìde miànji zhàn bǎifēnzhī duōshǎo? Zhèr yǒu méiyǒu xiězhe? What percentage do the vegetable plots take up? Is it written here?
- B: Zhèr xiězhe ne. Càidì zhàn liǎngwàn liǎngqiān mǔ, yǐbàn duō yìdiǎnr. Yes, it is. The vegetable plots take up 22,000 mu, a little more than half.
- A: Nàme, hái yǒu yíwàn bāqiān mǔ ne? Zhòngde dōu shì shénme? And what about the other 18,000 mu? What do they grow there?
- B: Tāmen shuō yòng yíwàn mǔ dì zhòng liángshí. They say they use 10,000 mu to plant grain.

- A: Ng. Zhǔyào shēngchǎn shénme liángshí? What grain do they mainly produce?
- B: Dàozi, yǒu míngde Jīngxīdào! Nín lái zhèr yīhòu, tiāntiān chí! Rice, the famous Capital-West rice. You've been eating it every day since you came here.
- A: Āhà! Yuánlái "Jīngxīdào" shì Sìjìqīng shēngchǎnde. Tīngshuō chǎnliàng hěn gāo ou! Mùchǎn yǒu yìqiānduō jīn ba? Ah! So Sìjìqīng produces Capital-West rice. I hear that the yield is very high! The per-mu yield is over one thousand catties, isn't it?
- B: Yǒu, mùchǎn zǒng zài yìqiān yìqiān yībǎi jīn zuǒyòu. Yes. The per-mu yield is always approximately 1,100 catties.
- A: Ng, zhēnde bú cuò. Nà língwài bāqiān mǔ dōu shì shuǐguǒ? Mm, that's really quite good. So then are the remaining 8,000 mu all fruits?
- B: Shì. Tāmen gōngshède shuǐguǒ chǎnliàng yě hěn gāo. Yes. Their commune has a very high fruit yield, too.
- A: Wǒ hái yǒu yíge wèntí, quán gōngshè yǒu duōshǎo rénkǒu, yǒu duōshǎo láodònglǐ? I have one more question. What's the population of the whole commune, and how many laborers are there?
- B: Yǒu yíwàn líng bābǎiduō hù, sìwàn sānqiānduō kǒu rén, liǎngwàn liǎngqiānduō láodònglǐ, píngjūn měige láodònglǐ dēi guǎn liǎngmǔ dì na! There are 10,800 households, over 43,000 people, and over 22,000 laborers. On the average, every laborer has to take care of two mu of land!
- A: Yíge rén guǎn liǎngmǔ dì hěn xīnkǔ ma? Is it very hard work for one person to take care of two mu?
- B: Zhòng cài, shǒu cài, xiǎnzài hái méi bànfa kào jīqì, quán dēi kào shǒu, zěnmē bù xīnkǔ ne? At present they still don't have the means to adopt machines. Planting and harvesting have to be done entirely by hand. It's hard work all right.
- A: Nǐ kàn, túpiànshang yǒu bù shǎo tuōlājī, tāmende jīxièhuà shuǐpíng xiāngdāng gāo ma. But look, in these pictures there are lots of tractors. Their level of mechanization is pretty high!
- B: Zhèige gōngshè xiāngdāng xiānjìn, yǒu yībǎi bāshí liǎng qìchē, dà xiǎo tuōlājī sānbǎi qīshíduō tǎi, kěshì zhèixiē qìchē zhǔyàode gōngzuò shì bǎ cài sòng dào chénglǐ qu. This commune is quite advanced. They have 180 automobiles, and over 370 tractors. But the main job of these vehicles is to take the vegetables into the city.
- A: Ng, wǒ dǒng le, wǒ juéde zhèige gōngshè hěn yǒu tèdiǎn, nǐ zài duō tántan, hǎo bu hǎo? Mm, I see. This seems to be a very distinctive commune. Could you tell me more about it?

- B: Hǎo a! Zhèige gōngshède měige shēngchǎn dàduì dōu yǒu zìjǐde shēngchǎn zhòngdiǎn—shēngchǎn dàduì nǐ dǒng bu dǒng?
- A: Wǒ zhīdao shēngchǎn dàduì, shēngchǎnduì, shenmede.
- B: Nà hǎo, wǒmen guān tāmen zhèizhǒng zǔzhǐ shēngchǎnde bànfǎ jiào zhuānyèhuà shēngchǎn.
- A: À! Měige shēngchǎn dàduì dōu yǒu zìjǐde zhuānyè. Hǎojǐle. Zhèidui fāzhǎn shēngchǎn yídìng yǒu hěn dàde hǎochu.
- B: Shì ma! Shēngchǎn fāzhǎnle, rénminde shēnghuó shuǐpíng cái néng tígāo ma!
- A: Nàme, zhèizhǒng zhuānyèhuà shēngchǎn zài quánguó shì bu shì hěn pǔbiàn ne?
- B: Bú shì, quánguó dàbùfen gōngshè zhǔyào háishì shēngchǎn liángshí, zài dà chéngshìde jìn jiāoqū cái yǒu xiàng Sījīqīng zhèiyangde gōngshè.
- A: Yǒu jīhuì, wǒ hái xiǎng qù cānguān yīliǎngge pǔtōngde gōngshè. Hái yǒu píngyuán hé shāndìde nóngyè shēngchǎn qíngkuàng dàgài yě yǒu hěn duō bù tóng, rúguǒ yǒu jīhuì, wǒ hěn xiǎng qù liǎojiě yíxià tāmende qūbié.
- B: Hǎode. Zuìjìn jǐnián Zhōngguó nóngyè jiànshè fāzhǎnde hěn kuài. Nín shì zhuānjiā, nínde yījian duì wǒmen de gōngzuò yídìng yǒu hěn dàde bāngzhū, wǒ yídìng duǒ gěi nín ānpai jǐge dìfang.
- A: Bú bì kèqì, nín ānpaihǎole, qǐng zǎo yidiǎnr gàosu wǒ.
- Every production brigade of the commune has its own production priority—do you understand "production brigade?"
- I know about productions brigades, production teams, and so forth.
- Okay, well we call this method of organizing production of theirs specialized production.
- Ah! Each production brigade has its own specialty. Great. This must be of great help in expanding production.
- Sure! The people's standard of living can only be raised when production expands.
- So is this kind of specialized production very common throughout the whole country?
- No, most of the communes in the country still mainly produce grain. It's only in the close suburbs of big cities that one finds communes like Sījīqīng.
- If I get the chance, I'd also like to visit one or two ordinary communes. Also, farming production is probably very different on the plains from that in mountainous regions. If it's possible, I'd like very much to go look into the differences.
- All right. In the past few years, China's agricultural construction has been moving rapidly ahead. As an expert, your opinions can help us a great deal in our work. I'll be sure to arrange a few more visits for you.
- You needn't be polite. Please let me know soon after you've made the arrangements.

Unit 3, Tape 2 WorkbookExercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American is looking over the selection in front of a vegetable stall in Dōngdān market in Běijīng and strikes up a conversation with the salesperson.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

qīngjiāo	green pepper
běndì	this locality
chū	to produce
jǔ ge lìzi	to give an example
sì jì	four seasons
yìnián sìjì	in all four seasons of the year, all year round
chūnjì	spring season
qiūjì	fall season
sì jì cháng lǜ	green all year round
zǒng miànjī	total area

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where are green peppers grown?

2. What is the main product of most people's communes?
3. How does the salesperson explain the components of the word Sijiqing?
4. How much of Sijiqing's total area is planted to vegetables?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American who is examining several varieties of rice in the Beijing Agricultural Exhibition Center talks with a worker.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

pǐnzhǒng	variety
Qiānjīndào	Thousand-Catty Rice
míngcí	term, expression
Cháng Jiāng	the Yangtze River
Jiāngnán	the area south of the lower reaches of the Cháng Jiāng (Yangtze River)
nóngyèqū	farming region
àn	shore, bank, coast
píng	to be flat, to be level
Huáng Hé	the Yellow River

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the chief characteristic of Capital-West Rice?

2. How are conditions in the Jiāngnán region suitable for the development of agriculture?
3. How does the yield of Thousand-Catty Rice compare with the average yield for grains?
4. Describe the production brigade in Shānxī that the American heard about.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

This conversation takes place during a visit by an American farm owner to the apple orchard of Nánkǒu Farm in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

nóngchǎng	farm
nóngmín	peasant
gōngren	worker
yīnián bǐ yīnián duō	more and more every year
píngjūnshù	an average number, a mean
xiànjīn	cash
cúnguǎn	savings
dàibiǎotuán	delegation

Questions for Exercise 4

1. What is the first question the American asks the worker?
2. Who runs Nánkǒu Farm?
3. What are the differences between peasants and agricultural workers?
4. How has the income of peasants changed? What is the major cause of the change?
5. What is the American's comment about the success of China's efforts to modernize agriculture?

6. (Extra) Pretend that you are going to visit a farm around Běijīng. Make a list of questions you would like to ask the workers.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

This dialogue takes place in front of a vegetable stall in Dōngdān market in Běijīng. An American customer (A) is looking over the selection. Here he talks with the salesperson.

- A: Ài, zhèige qīngjiāo hǎo dà a! Yě hěn xīnxiān, shì běndì chūde ba?
 Wow! These green peppers are so big! They're very fresh, too. They must be local produce, aren't they?
- B: Shì cóng jiāoqū lái de.
 They come from the suburbs.
- A: Běijīng jiāoqūde rénmin gōngshè dōu zhòng shūcài ma?
 Do all the people's communes in the suburbs of Běijīng grow vegetables?
- B: Xiànzài de rénmin gōngshè zhǔyào hái shì zhòng liángshí, jiāoqūde gōngshè yǒu xiē dāduì zhòng shūcài, dāngrán yě yǒu zhuānyèhuàde gōngshè.
 These days most people's communes still mainly produce grain. In communes in the suburbs, some brigades grow vegetables, and, of course, there are also specialized communes.
- A: Zhuānyèhuà shì shénme yìsi?
 What does specialized mean?
- B: Zěnmē shuō ne? Wǒ shìzhe jǐ ge lǐzi ba.
 How should I explain it? I'll try and give you an example.
- A: Ng, nǐ shuōshuo kàn.
 Mm, go ahead.
- B: Bīfāng shuō Sìjìqīng zhèige gōngshè.
 For instance, the commune Sìjìqīng.
- A: "Sìjìqīng" shì shénme yìsi?
 What does "Sìjìqīng" mean?
- B: Ng, "yī èr sān sì" de "sì," "chūnji, qiūji" de "jì," "qīng" jiù shì "lǜ" de yìsi.
 Sì ["four"] as in yī èr sān sì ["one two three four"], jì ["season"] as in chūnji, qiūji ["spring season, fall season"]. Qīng means "green."
- A: À! Nà shì sì jì cháng lǜde yìsi.
 Ah! So it means "green all year round."
- B: Duì le, jiù shì yīnwei nèige gōngshè yīnián sìjì dōu shì lǜde, wǒmen cái guān ta jiào Sìjìqīng. Nà shì ge xiānjīnde gōngshè. Tāmen jiù zhòng cài!
 Right. It's precisely because the commune is green all year round that we call it Sìjìqīng. It's an advanced commune. They grow only vegetables.
- A: Jiù zhòng cài?! À! Duì le, duì le, suǒyǐ guān zhèige gōngshè jiào zhuānyèhuà gōngshè.
 Only vegetables? Oh! Of course. That's why they call it a specialized commune.
- B: Òu, wǒ shuōde "jiù zhòng cài" bù shì shuō bǎifēnzhī bǎi a! Jiù shì
 Oh, when I said "only vegetables," I didn't mean one hundred percent! I

shuō, cǎidǐde miǎnji hěn dà, zhān gōngshè zǒng miǎnji de bǎifēnzhǐ qī-bāshí!

mean that the area of their vegetable plots is very large. They make up seventy or eighty percent of the commune's total area!

A: Suǒyǐ zhèige xiānjīn gōngshè zhūyàode shēngchǎn shì shūcài!

So the main product of this commune is vegetables!

B: Duì le, yìdiǎnr dōu bú cuò! Zhèige dà qīngjiǎo jiù shì cóng nàr lái de. Duō mǎi jǐge ba!

Right, absolutely correct. These big green peppers are from there. Buy a bunch of them!

A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìjīn.

Okay, I'll take one catty.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

In the Běijīng Agricultural Exhibition Center, an American (A) is examining several varieties of rice. He talks with a worker from the Center (B).

A: Nǐmende dàozi pǐnzhǒng hěn duō ma!

You have so many varieties of rice!

B: Pǐnzhǒng shì bù shǎo, chǎnliàng bǐjiǎo gāode shì zhèi shíjǐzhǒng.

Yes, there are a lot of varieties. The ones with the highest yields are these ten or so here.

A: Tāmende chǎnliàng zài zhèr yǒu méiyǒu xiězhe?

Are their yields written down here?

B: Xiězhe ne! Nǐn xiǎnzài kàndaode shì Jīngxīdào, mǔchǎn yìqiān yībǎi jīn zuǒyòu.

Yes. What you're looking at now is Capital-West Rice. It has a per-mu yield of approximately 1,100 catties.

A: Ò, zhè jiù shì Qiānjīndào de yìzhǒng le.

Oh, this is one kind of Thousand-Catty Rice.

B: Ng. Jīngxīdào de tèdiǎn jiù shì hǎo chī. "Qiānjīndào" zhèige míngcí zuì zǎo shì zài Jiāngnán yòng, xiǎnzài Jiāngnán dàozi chǎnliàng hái shì bǐjiǎo gāo yìxiē.

Mm. Capital-West Rice is distinguished for being good to eat. The term Thousand-Catty Rice was first used in Jiāngnán [the area south of the lower reaches of the Yangtze River]. Today the yield of rice in that area is still comparatively high.

A: Duì, Jiāngnán duōbàn shì píngyuán, méiyǒu shénme shāndī, shuǐ yòu fāngbian, nóngyè shēngchǎn fāzhǎnqilai bǐjiǎo yǒu tiáojiàn.

Of course. Jiāngnán is mostly flatlands. There are hardly any hills. Water is convenient, too. The conditions are better for the development of agriculture.

B: Jiù shì ma! Suǒyǐ Jiāngnán yìzhǐ shì wǒ guó zhōngyàode nóngyèqū.

Exactly! That's why Jiāngnán has always been an important agricultural region of our country.

- A: Búguò, wǒ xiǎng xiǎnzài Huáng Hé liǎng àn de nóngyè shēngchǎn qíngkuàng yě bú cuò le. Tīngshuō, xiǎnzài liǎngshì měimǔ píngjūn chǎnliǎng dōu zài sì-wǔbǎijīn zuǒyòu le.
- B: Chābuduō shì zhèiyàng. Wǒ xiǎng zài guò jǐnián qíngkuàng huì gèng hǎo yíxiē.
- A: Shíduōnián qián wǒ tīngshuōguo Shānxī yíge shēngchǎn dàduì nàr chābuduō quán shì shāndì, méiyǒu jǐmǔ dì shì píngde, kěshì tāmen měinián yě mài gěi guójiā bù shǎo de liǎngshì ne!
- B: Xiǎnzài, zhèiyàngde dàduì, gōngshè bù shǎo le. Cháng Jiāng, Jiāngnán, Huáng Hé shàng xià nǎr dōu yǒu a!
- A: Ng, bú cuò bú cuò, Zhōngguóde nóngyè dà yǒu xīwàng!
- But I think that now agricultural production is quite good on both sides of the Yellow River. I hear that the average per-mu yield of grain is now around four or five hundred catties.
- That's about the way it is. And I think that in another few years the situation will be even better.
- Ten or so years ago I heard about a production brigade in Shānxī that was almost all on hilly land. There were only a few mu of flat land, but they still sold a lot of grain to the state every year!
- These days, there are a lot of brigades and communes like that. They're everywhere--the Yangtze River, Jiāngnán, and the Yellow River area.
- Mm, great, great. China's agriculture has a great future!

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

An American farm owner (A) is visiting Běijīng's Nánkǒu Farm. In the apple orchard, he talks with a responsible person from the farm (C).

- C: Wǒmende píngguǒ zěnmeyàng? Hái kényi chī ba?
- A: Ng, zhēn bú cuò, hěn tián, hěn hǎo chī.
- C: Lái, zài chī yíge!
- A: Ò, bù néng zài chī le, wǒmen jiù liáoliao tiānr ba!
- C: Hǎo a! Nǐ xiǎng liáo shenme?
- A: Nǐmen nóngchǎngde zǔzhi hé rénmin gōngshè yǒu hěn dàde qūbié ma?
- C: Yǒu. Nóngchǎng shì guójiā bànde. Zài nóngchǎng gōngzuòde rén bú shì pǔtōngde nóngmín, shì nóngyè gōngren.
- How are our apples? Not too bad, are they?
- Mm, they're really good. Very sweet. Delicious.
- Here, have another!
- Oh, I can't eat any more. Let's just chat!
- Sure! What would you like to talk about?
- Is there a big difference between the organization of your farm and that of a commune?
- Yes. The farm is run by the state. The people who work on the farm aren't ordinary peasants, they're agricultural workers.

- A: Ò. Nàme nóngyè gōngren shì nà zhèngrǔ gōngzīde. Tāmen hé nóngmín hái yǒu shénme bù yíyàngde meiyǒu?
- C: Méiyǒu shenme. Tāmende gōngzuò shì yíyàngde, dōu shì gāo nóngyè shēngchǎn.
- A: Nóngyè gōngrende shōurù bǐ nóngmín duō ba?
- C: Bù yíding. Xiànzài yǒu zìyóu shìchǎng, yìbānde nóngmínde shōurù dōu bǐ yǐqián duōduō le.
- B: Shì ma?
- A: Lí wǒmen nóngchǎng bù yuǎnde dìfangr yǒu yìge gōngshè, yìqián, jīxièhuà shuǐpíng yě bù gāo, dàjiā xīnxīnkùkù gōngzuòle yìnián, gōngshè shōurù bù duō, jiǎli fēnde yě bù duō, shēnghuó zhēn bù róngyì. Kěshì xiànzài yǒule zìyóu shìchǎng tāmende qīngkuàng hǎoduō le, chūle zhōng liángshì yìwài, tāmen yě yǒule shūcài, shuǐguǒ, shenmede, shōurù yìnián bǐ yìnián duō a!
- A: Nàme xiànzài píngjūn měige láodònglǐ yìnián kéyì yǒu duōshǎo xiànjīn shōurù?
- C: Píngjūnshù wǒ bú tài zhīdao. Wǒ rènshi yìjiā rén, jiǎli yǒu dǎren xiǎoháizi qī-bākǒu, yǒu sìge bàn láodònglǐ. Cóngqián niánnián méiyǒu shénme xiànjīn shōurù.
- A: Zěnme huì méiyǒu xiànjīn shōurù ne?
- C: Yìnián jiù néng fēn diǎnr liángshì, nǎr hái yǒu shénme xiànjīn a!
- A: Xiànzài ne?
- Oh, so agricultural workers are on government salary. Are they different in any other ways from peasants?
- Not really. Their work is the same. They're both in agricultural production.
- Agricultural workers have higher incomes than peasants, don't they?
- Not necessarily. Now, with free markets, most peasants have a much higher income than before.
- Is that so?
- Not far from our farm there's a commune. In the past, their level of mechanization wasn't high. After everybody had toiled for a whole year, the commune didn't have much income, so each family's allotment wasn't much either. Life was really hard. But now, with free markets, their situation is much better. Besides growing grain, they now also have vegetables, fruits, and so on. Their income is more and more every year.
- So how much cash income can a laborer earn per year?
- I don't really know the average figure. I know one family with seven or eight adults and children, and four and a half laborers. It used to be that every year they didn't have any cash income.
- How could it be that they didn't have any cash income?
- In one year they could only get their little allotment of grain. How could they get any cash!
- How about now?

- C: Qùnián tāmen jiā fēnle bā-jiǔbǎi-kuài qián, hái yǒu yíge háizi shàngle dàxué. Nǐ kàn zěnmeyàng a? Last year their allotment was eight or nine hundred dollars, and one of their children started college. What do you think of that?
- A: Ng, shì hǎodeduō le, kěshì wèishenme gǎibiàn zhème dà ne? Mm, that is much better. But why has the change been so great?
- C: Zhèi jiù shì xiànzài zhèngfǔde jīngjì zhèngcè hǎo a! Jīngjì zhèngcè gǎibiànle, nóngcūnde shēnghuó jiù hǎo la! Xiànzài, nèige gōngshè yǒu yíbàn duō yìdiǎnrde hù zài yínhánglǐ yǒu cúnkuǎn. Nǐ kàn, nà bú shì hǎodeduō le ma? That's because now the economic policy of the government is good. Since the economic policy changed, life in rural areas has been good. In that commune now a little over half of the households have bank savings. See, isn't that much better?
- A: Nín shuō xiàng nèige gōngshè nèiyangde qíngqíng zài quánguó shì bu shì hěn pǔbiàn ne? Would you say that that commune's situation is very common throughout the country?
- C: Hěn pǔbiàn....Nǐmen zhèige nóngyè zhuānjiā dàibiǎotuán zǒule nàme duō dìfang, kànle nàme duō nóngchǎng, gōngshè, nín juéde zěnmeyàng ne? Yes, it's very common....Now that your delegation of agricultural specialists has been to so many places and seen so many farms and communes, what are your opinions?
- A: Wǒmen xiǎng zhèijīnián Zhōngguó nóngyède xiàndàihuà shì gǎode bú cuò. We think that in the past few years, the modernization of China's agriculture has come along very well.
- B: Shì ma! Wǒ gāngcái shuōde nèige gōngshè yě mǎile bù shǎo tuōlājī le. Tīngshuō xiànzài měige dàduì shíwǔtái, tāmen shuō tāmen hái xiǎng duō mǎi jítái na! You bet! That commune that I just mentioned has bought a lot of tractors. I hear that each brigade now has fifteen tractors, and they want to buy even more!
- A: Hǎo a! Hǎo a! Great, great!
- C: Duì le, wǒmen nóngchǎng dà ménkǒu yǒu hǎo duō túpiàn, lǐbian yě yǒu nèige gōngshède, wǒ dài nǐmen kànkan qu! Oh--at the front gate of our farm, there are a lot of pictures, including some of that commune. I'll take you to see them!
- A: Hǎo! Zǒu! Okay! Let's go!

Unit 4, Reference List

1. A: Wànli Chángchéng zhēn yǒu yíwàn lǐ cháng ma? Is the Great Wall of Ten Thousand Li really ten thousand li long?
- B: Chángchéng jīngguòle hǎojǐge shěng, yígòng yǒu yíwàn èrqīan lǐ cháng. The Great Wall goes through many provinces and is altogether twelve thousand li long.
2. A: Tīngshuō Wànli Chángchéng xiūguo hǎojǐcì le. I've heard that the Great Wall has been repaired a great many times.
- B: Shì, cóng Qíncháo dào xiànzài yízhí zài xiū. Yes, from the Qín Dynasty up until now, there have been repairs all along.
3. A: Bādǎlǐngshangde Chángchéng hǎoxiàng bú shì Qíncháo jiànzhùde. It seems to me that the Great Wall at Bādǎlǐng wasn't built during the Qín Dynasty.
- B: Ng, nǐ shuōde duì, shì Míngcháo chóngxiū jiànzhùde. Mm, you're right. It was rebuilt from scratch during the Míng Dynasty.
4. A: Zài lìshǐshang yǒu zhème duō cǐ yòng Běijīng zuò shǒudū. Throughout history Běijīng has been used as a capital so many times.
- B: Nà shì yīnwèi dìxíng hǎo. That's because the terrain is good.
5. A: Zhèizhǒng dìxíng bǐjiǎo róngyì fángbèi běifāng láide qīnlüè. This kind of terrain makes it easier to guard against invasion from the north.
6. A: Nǐmen yóulǎn jīhuàlǐ yǒu méiyǒu Shísānlǐng? Does your sightseeing plan include the Thirteen Tombs?
- B: Wǒ zhīdao nǐmen jiànzhù gōngsuǒzhě duì Shísānlǐngde dìxià gōngdiàn hěn yǒu xìngqu, wǒmen hòutiān qù. I know that all of you in architecture and structural engineering are very interested in the underground palaces at the Thirteen Tombs. We'll go the day after tomorrow.

7. A: Chúle gǔdài Zhōngguó jiànzhù yìshù yìwài, nǐmen hái xiǎng qù kàn shénme? What would you like to go see in addition to ancient Chinese architectural art?
- B: Tīngshuō yǒu jǐge jiàotáng yě kāi mén le. Wǒmen xiǎng qù kànkan. I've heard that there are also some churches which have opened. We would like to go see them.
8. A: Wǒ yào dào Tiān'ānmén qù kànkan. Zuǒ jǐlù gōnggòng qìchē hǎo? I want to go see the Gate of Heavenly Peace. What bus should I take?
- B: Xīngqītiān qìchē kě jǐ le. Nǐ zuì hǎo zǒuzhe qù. It's Sunday and buses are really crowded. It would be best to walk.
9. A: Wǒ hěn xīnshǎng nǐmen jiěfàng yǐhòu gāide Shí Dà Jiànzhù. I really admire the Ten Great Structures you've built since liberation.
- B: Nín tài kèqǐ le. You're too polite.*
10. A: Wǒmen yǐjīng juédìng chīle fàn yǐhòu qù mǎi dōngxī. We've already decided that after we eat we're going shopping.
- B: Hǎo. Cóng zhèr chuānguò guǎngchǎng jiù yǒu shāngdiàn le. Okay, from here cross through the square and there are some stores.
11. A: Gùgōng yìtiān kàndewán kànbuwán? Can you see all of the Imperial Palace in one day?!
- B: Yìtiān nǎr kàndewán! How could you see it all in one day?
12. A: Shéi qùguo Zhōngguó, shéi jiù huì xiǎngzhe ta. Whoever goes to China will always think of it.
13. chádài dynasty
14. The Major Chinese Dynasties
- | | | | |
|------|-----------|-------|---------------------------|
| Qīng | 1644-1911 | Suí | 581-618 |
| Míng | 1368-1644 | Hàn | 206 B.C.-A.D. 220 |
| Yuán | 1271-1368 | Qín | 221 B.C.-207 B.C. |
| Jīn | 1115-1234 | Zhōu | c. 11th century-256 B.C. |
| Liáo | 916-1125 | Shāng | c. 16th-11th century B.C. |
| Sòng | 960-1297 | Xià | c. 21st-16th century B.C. |
| Táng | 618-907 | | |

*He really is.

Unit 4, Vocabulary List

Bādǎilǐng (Bādǎilǐng)	(mountain northwest of Běijīng, site of a famous section of the Great Wall)
-cháo	dynasty (bound form)
cháodài	dynasty
chóngxīn	again, anew, afresh
chuānguò	to pass, to cross
dìxíng	topography, terrain
fángbèi	to take precautions against
gài	to build (buildings); to cover
gōngdiàn	palace
gōngzuòzhě	worker
guāngchǎng	(public) square
gǔdài	ancient times, antiquity
Gǔgōng	Former Imperial Palace
jǐ	to be crowded
jiànzhù (-zhù, -zhu)	to build, to construct; structure
jiàotáng	church, cathedral
juéding	to decide
kě	indeed, certainly
-lǐ	<u>lǐ</u> , a unit of length (1/2 km.)
Míngcháo	(name of a dynasty, 1368-1644)
Ōuzhōu	Europe
Qiánmén	(a gate in Běijīng)
Qíncháo	(name of a dynasty, 221-207 B.C.)
qīnlüè	to invade; aggression
shěng	province
Shísānlǐng	the Thirteen Tombs (Míng Tombs)
shǒudū	capital
Tiān'ānmén	the Gate of Heavenly Peace
Tiān Tán	the Temple of Heaven
Wànli Chángchéng	the Great Wall of Ten Thousand <u>Li</u>
xīnshǎng	to appreciate/enjoy/admire
xiū	to build, to construct (roads, reservoirs, etc.); to repair; to trim, prune
Yìhéyuán (Yì-)	the Summer Palace (in Běijīng)
yìshu	art
yóulǎn	to sightsee, to tour, to visit

Unit 4, Reference Notes

1. A: Wànli Chángchéng zhēn yǒu yíwàn lǐ cháng ma? Is the Great Wall of Ten Thousand li really ten thousand li long?
- B: Chángchéng jīngguòle hǎojǐge shěng, yígòng yǒu yíwàn èrqiān lǐ cháng. The Great Wall goes through many provinces and is altogether twelve thousand li long.

Notes on No. 1

li: A Chinese unit of length, equal to one-half kilometer. li is often used to measure the noun lù ("road," but here meaning simply "walking or riding distance"):

Cóng nǐ jiā dào xuéxiào yǒu jǐlǐ lù? How many li is it from your house to the school?

The unit of distance li is often used in rural areas, but rarely in the city.

Wànli Chángchéng: You learned Chángchéng, "the Great Wall," in the Meeting module. The descriptive term Wànli Chángchéng comes from the fact that the wall is over twelve thousand li in total length (approximately 6,700 kilometers).

yǒu yíwàn lǐ cháng: "is ten thousand li long" Use the verb yǒu (not shì) in sentences telling or asking length, height, area, time, age, etc. In such sentences, yǒu has the special meaning "to attain, to come up to (a certain level)."

Cóng zhèr dào huǒchēzhàn	:	yǒu duō yuǎn?	"How far is it from here to the train station?"
Chābuduō	:	yǒu yílǐ lù.	"It's about one <u>li</u> ."
Nǐde hái'izi	:	yǒu duō dà?	"How old is your child?"
Tā	:	yǒu sānsuì duō.	"He is over three years old."
Nǐ	:	yǒu duō gāo?	"How tall are you?"
Wǒ	:	yǒu yímǐ bā.	"I'm one meter eighty (cm)."
Shànghǎide dōngtiān	:	zhǐ liǎngge yuè.	"Winter in Shànghǎi is only two months (long)."
	:	yǒu	

The negative of such sentences uses méiyǒu:

- A: Dào huǒchēzhàn zhēn yǒu wǔlǐ lù ma? Is it really five li to the train station?
- B: Méiyǒu wǔlǐ, hěn jìn. No, it isn't. It's very close.
- Tā méiyǒu wǔshisuì, tā cái sìshíjǐ. He isn't (as old as) fifty years old; he's only forty-something.

jīngguòle hǎojǐge shěng: "goes through many provinces" This sentence illustrates well that completion -le is completely different from English past tense. Even with completion -le, the verb still means "goes through," not "went through." The completion of an event in the past can result in a present state (for example, the Great Wall was built in the past and is still standing), and so -le must sometimes be translated into English with the present tense. Other examples:

Wǒ xiànzài dǒngle tā wèishénme
méi gēn tā jiéhūn. Now I understand why he didn't marry
her.

Wǒ dàile yǎnjìng, nǐ dōu bú
rènshí wǒ le, shì ma? You don't recognize me with
glasses on, eh? (I am wearing
glasses.)

Zhèiběn shū jièshàole Měiguóde
zhèngzhì qíngkuàng. This book introduces the American
political situation.

shěng: "province" Shěng takes the counter -ge, or is sometimes used without a counter.

Zhōngguó yígòng yǒu èrshíèrge
shěng. China has twenty-two provinces
altogether.

2. A: Tīngshuō Wǎnlǐ Chángchéng
xiūguo hǎojǐcǐ le. I've heard that the Great Wall
has been repaired a great many
times.

B: Shì, cóng Qíncháo dào
xiànzài yìzhí zài xiū. Yes, from the Qin Dynasty up until
now, there have been repairs all
along.

Notes on No. 2

xiū: "to repair" roads, structures, cars, radios, shoes, etc. Also, "to trim" hair, fingernails, or "to prune" trees, shrubbery, etc. Also, "to build, to construct" reservoirs, railroads, roads, irrigation ditches, etc.

xiūguo hǎo jǐcǐ le: "has been repaired a great many times" The -le at the end of the sentence adds on the meaning "so far." Here are other examples of the pattern . . . -guo . . . -le:

Zhèige diányǐng tā kànguo liǎng-
cǐ le, hái bù zhīdào zěnmé huf
shì. He has seen this movie twice, and
he still doesn't know what it's
all about.

Tā kǎoguo liǎngcǐ le, dōu bù
xíng. He has taken the exam twice, but
didn't make it either time.

Qíncháo: "the Qin Dynasty" (221-207 B.C.)

yìzhí zài xiū: Literally, "all-along in-process-of repair," i.e., "it has been being repaired all along."

3. A: Bādǎlíngshangde Chángchéng
hǎoxiàng bú shì Qíncháo
jiànzhùde. It seems to me that [the section of] the Great Wall at Bādǎlíng wasn't built during the Qín Dynasty.
- B: Ng, nǐ shuōde duì, shì Míng-
cháo chóngxīn jiànzhùde. Mm, you're right. It was rebuilt from scratch during the Míng Dynasty.

Notes on No. 3

Bādǎlíng: A mountain seventy-five kilometers northwest of Běijīng, over which passes a section of the Great Wall dating from the Míng Dynasty (1368-1644). This is the usual spot to which tourists are taken to see the Great Wall. (Some people pronounce this with different tones: Bādǎlíng.)

hǎoxiàng: "to seem," but here meaning "it seems to me," as in

Wǒ hǎoxiàng zài nǎr jiànguo
zhèige rén. It seems to me I've seen this man somewhere before.

Nǐ hǎoxiàng gāosuguo wǒ zhèi-
jiàn shì. It seems to me you've told me this before.

jiànzhù: As a verb, "to build, to construct":

Zhèige dǎlóu shì něinián
jiànzhùde? When was this building constructed?

As a noun, "a structure" or "architecture":

Zhèi shì Qíncháo de jiànzhù. This is a structure from the Qín Dynasty.

Tā shì xué jiànzhùde. He studied architecture.

chóngxīn: "again, afresh, anew"

Zhèixiē pánziwǎn xǐde bù gānjīng, These dishes were not washed clean;
qǐng nǐ chóngxīn xǐ yíci. please wash them again.

Chóngxīn is often followed by zài, "again":

Zuòde bù hǎode huà, chóngxīn zài If (we) don't do it well, we'll do
zuò. it all over again.

4. A: Zài lìshǐshàng yǒu zhème duō
cì yòng Běijīng zuò shǒudū. Throughout history Běijīng has been
used as a capital so many times.
- B: Nà shí yīnwei dìxíng hǎo. That's because the terrain is good.

Notes on No. 4

zài lìshǐshàng: "in history, down through history" Chinese often uses -shang, "on," where English would use "in," especially for the meaning "in such-and-such a field or area": zài jīngjìshàng, "in economy, economically"; zài xuéxíshàng, "in (one's) studies"; zài shēngchǎnshàng, "in production"; and, of course, bào zhǐshàng, "in the newspaper," etc.

yòng...zuò...: "to use...as..."

Tā yòng tāmen jiāde kètīng
zuò bàngōngshì. He uses their living room as
an office.

5. A: Zhèizhǒng dìxíng bǐjiào
róngyì fángbèi běifāng
láide qīnlüè. This kind of terrain makes it easier
to guard against invasion from
the north.

Notes on No. 5

qīnlüè: As a verb, "to invade":

Sūlián wèishénme qīnlüè Āfùhàn? Why did the Soviet Union invade
Afghanistan?

As a noun, "invasion" or "aggression":

Wǒmen bìxū fángbèi Sūlián de
qīnlüè. We must guard against Soviet
aggression.

běifāng láide: "coming from the north" The word cóng, "from," is often omitted from phrases such as the following:

A: Nèige xuéxiào de Zhōngguó
xuésheng dōu shì Táiwān
láide ma? Are the Chinese students in that
school all from Taiwan?

B: Bú shì, yě yǒu dàlù láide. No, there are also some from the
mainland.

Cóng Shànghǎi qù Xīběi zhùde
rén hěn duō, Běijīng qùde yě
yǒu. There are many people who have gone
to live in the Northwest from
Shànghǎi, and there are also some
who have gone there from Běijīng.

Rén shì hóuzi biànde. Man came ("changed") from the monkey.

6. A: Nǐmen yóulǎn jīhuàlǐ yǒu méiyǒu Shísānlǐng?

Does your sightseeing plan include the Thirteen Tombs?

B: Wǒ zhīdao nǐmen jiànzhù gōngzuòzhě duì Shísānlǐngde dìxià gōngdiàn hěn yǒu xìngqù, wǒmen hòutiān qù.

I know that all of you in architecture and structural engineering are very interested in the underground palaces at the Thirteen Tombs. We'll go the day after tomorrow.

Notes on No. 6

yóulǎn: "to sightsee," "to tour"

Dào Běijīngde wàiguó rén dōu xiǎng qù Shísānlǐng yóulǎn.

Foreigners who go to Běijīng all want to go to the Thirteen Tombs to sightsee.

Dào Chángchéng qùde yóulǎnchē měitiān sībān.

There are four tour buses to the Great Wall every day.

Shísānlǐng: "the Thirteen Tombs," also called "the Míng Tombs," because they date from the Míng Dynasty. These are located outside of Běijīng.

gōngzuòzhě: "worker" in a particular field, e.g., jiàoyù gōngzuòzhě, "educational worker," xīnwén gōngzuòzhě, "journalist," yǔyán gōngzuòzhě, "language worker." Such terms are PRC usage, sometimes created to replace titles with elitist connotations.

Do not confuse this with the general term for "worker," gōngrén, which will be introduced in Unit 6.

7. A: Chūle gǔdài Zhōngguó jiànzhù yìshù yǐwài, nǐmen hái xiǎng qù kàn shénme?

What would you like to go see in addition to ancient Chinese architectural art?

B: Tīngshuō yǒu jǐge jiàotáng yǒu kāi mén le, wǒmen xiǎng qù kànkàn.

I've heard that there are some churches which have reopened. We would like to go see them.

Notes on No. 7

gǔdài: "ancient," the opposite of xiàndài. Gǔ-, "ancient," is used mainly in compound words:

Běijīng shì yíge gǔchéng.

Běijīng is an ancient city.

Gǔrén yǒu yíjù huà, "Jiāozhě bì bǎi."

The ancients had a saying, "Pride goeth before the fall."

Zài gǔshíhòu zhèige guójiāde wénhuà yǐjīng hěn fādá le.

This country's culture was already well developed in ancient times.

Gǔdài is also used as a noun meaning "ancient times, antiquity."

yìshu: "art," meaning either "the arts" or "skill" Yìshujiā is an "artist."

Wǒ tīngshuō nǐ zài zhèr xué yìshu, nǐ shì xué xiàndài yìshu háishì gǔdài yìshu? I understand you study art here; do you study modern art or ancient art?

Jiāo shū shì yìzhǒng yìshu. Teaching is an art.

jiàotáng: "church," literally, "religion-hall"

8. A: Wǒ yào dào Tiān'ānmén qù kànkan. Zuò jǐlù gōnggòng qìchē hǎo? I want to go see the Gate of Heavenly Peace. What bus should I take?

B: Xīngqītiān qìchē kě jǐ le. Nǐ zuì hǎo zǒuzhe qù. It's Sunday and buses are really crowded. It would be best to walk.

Notes on No. 8

kě: Notice that kě, "indeed, certainly, really," is often accompanied by le at the end of the sentence:

Wǒ xiànzài zài kàn tā zuì xīnde shū, kě yǒu yìsī le. I'm reading his latest book now. It's really interesting.

9. A: Wǒ hěn xīnshǎng nǐmen jiěfàng yǐhòu gàide Shí Dà Jiànzhù. I really admire the Ten Great Structures you've built since liberation.

B: Nín tài kèqǐ le. You're too polite.

Notes on No. 9

gài: "to build," only used for buildings. (Another common use of this word is as the verb "to cover," which was the original meaning.)

Zhèige fángzi gàile duōshǎo nián le? How old is this house/building? (lit., "How many years has it been since this house was built?")

Shí Dà Jiànzhù: The "Ten Great Structures" in Běijīng were designed and built in the 1950s by the Chinese themselves. The authorities wanted to modernize the layout of the capital and at the same time to commemorate the revolutionary victory and its heroes. The architectural styles include Western as well as traditional Chinese. The buildings are as follows: Běijīng Railroad Station, Museum of Art, Museum of History, Great Hall of the People, Revolutionary Military Museum, Telegraph Building, Nationalities Cultural Palace, Agricultural Exhibition Hall, Workers Stadium, and the Monument to the People's Heroes.

10. A: Wǒmen yǐjīng juédìng chīle fàn yǐhòu qù mǎi dōngxi. We've already decided that after we eat we're going shopping.
- B: Hǎo. Cóng zhèr chuānguò guǎngchǎng jiù yǒu shāng-diàn le. Okay, from here cross through the square and there are some stores.

Notes on No. 10

juédìng: "to decide" a course of action, or a "decision"

Tāmen juédìng yào bān dào Niǔ Yuē qù zhù le. They decided to move to New York.

Wǒ juédìng míngtiān zài zuò zhèijiàn shì. I've decided not to do this until tomorrow.

Wǒ juédìng qù le. I've decided to go. (Note that -le is not attached to juédìng here even though "decided" is a completed action. The verb which follows juédìng prevents this.)

Wǒ yào hé Huáshèngdùn fāngmian shāngliang yíxià cái néng zuò juédìng. I have to discuss this with Washington before I can make a decision.

chuānguò: "to cross through"

Cóng zhèr chuānguòqu jiù dào le. We just cross through here and then we're there.

guǎngchǎng: "square" in a city (the literal meaning is "wide-field")

11. A: Gùgōng yìtiān kàndewán kǎnbuán? Can you see all of the Imperial Palace in one day?
- B: Yìtiān nǎr kàndewán! How could you see it all in one day?!

Notes on No. 11

Gùgōng: The full name is Gùgōng Bówùyuan, "the Former Imperial Palace Museum." This was the palace of the ruling families of the Míng and Qīng dynasties. It is located in the center of Běijīng. In conversation it is usually referred to simply as the Gùgōng (literally, "Former-palace").

kàndewán kǎnbuán?: "can (one) finish seeing (it)?" This is the compound verb of result kǎnwán, "finish seeing," with the syllables -de- and -bu- inserted between the action and the result. Notice that in the question form, the affirmative choice is given first and the negative choice second, just as in simple questions like qù bu qù (which means qù háishi bú qù). In some varieties of Standard Chinese, the question form of verbs like kàndewán

follows the pattern Action bu Action-de-Result: Kàn bu kàndewán? This pattern is increasingly common.

Gùgōng yìtiān kàndewán kànbuán?: Note the placement of the time expression yìtiān, "one day," BEFORE the verb. Expressions telling that something is done WITHIN a certain period of time (usually translated as "in" a certain period) come BEFORE the verb.* Other examples:

Nǐ <u>yìtiān</u> néng huílai ma?	Can you get back <u>in one day</u> ?
Méi wèntí, <u>bàntiān</u> jiù huílai le.	No problem. I'll be back <u>in half a day</u> .

Wǒ <u>yìhuìr</u> yào chūqu.	I'll be going out <u>in a while</u> .
-----------------------------	---------------------------------------

Tā <u>yíge zhōngtóu</u> jiù xuéhuì le.	He learned it <u>in just an hour</u> .
--	--

Wǒ <u>liǎngge yuè</u> qù yíci.	I go once <u>in two months</u> .
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

nǎr: The word for "where" is used here to make a rhetorical question (one to which no answer is expected) implying the negative of what it says. Other examples:

Nǎr yǒu nàme róngyì!	Since when is it that easy! (It isn't at all so easy.)
----------------------	--

Wǒ nǎr zhīdào tā yǐjīng jiéhūn le!	How was I to know that she was already married! (i.e., I had no way of knowing)
------------------------------------	---

12. A: Shéi qùguo Zhōngguó, shéi jiù huì xiǎngzhe ta.	Whoever goes to China will always think of it.
---	--

Notes on No. 12

shéi...shéi jiù...: "whoever..." You can use an interrogative pronoun--shéi, shénme, něige, zěnmé, náli, shénme shíhou, duōshǎo, etc.--in a dependent clause and then repeat it in the main clause to get meanings like "whoever," "whatever," "however," "wherever," "whenever," "however much," etc. The adverb jiù, "then," is often used in the main clause.

Nǐ xūyào shénme, wǒ jiù gěi nǐ shénme.	I'll give you whatever you need.
--	----------------------------------

Náli duì nǐ zuì fāngbian wǒmen jiù zài náli jiàn miàn.	We'll meet wherever is most convenient for you.
--	---

Shéi xiǎng qù, shéi jiù qù.	Whoever wants to go, goes.
-----------------------------	----------------------------

*Remember: Time expressions referring to POINTS in time, including ones like "in (by the end of) two days," go BEFORE; those describing the CONTINUATION of time go AFTER. (Review the note on placement of time phrases in the Meeting module, Unit 1, Notes on No. 6.)

Here are some examples in which jiù is not used:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Nǐ ài zěnmeyàng zěnmeyàng. | Do whatever you like. |
| Nǐ shénme shíhou fāngbian, shénme shíhou lái. | Come whenever it's convenient for you. |
| Zài Táiwān, xiāngjiāo zǒngshì yǒu; yào duōshǎo, yǒu duōshǎo. | They always have bananas in Taiwan; there are as many as one could want (i.e., there are plenty). |

xiǎngzhe: "be thinking of, have on one's mind" -Zhe on the end of an action verb like xiǎng shows the prolonging of the action over a period of time. Compare these examples:

- | | |
|---|---|
| Bié zhànzhe, zuòxia ba! | Don't stay standing; sit down! |
| Nǐ tīngzhe! | Listen! |
| Nǐ mànman chī, wǒ děngzhe nǐ. | Take your time eating; I'll wait for you. |
| Wǒ zài zhèr kānzhe ta, nǐ qù jiào liàng jiùhùchē. | I'll stay here and watch him; you go call an ambulance. |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

13. chāodài dynasty

Note on No. 13

chāodài: The bound form -chāo must be preceded by a name (as in Qínchāo, "the Qin Dynasty"). Chāodài can be used alone, as in Zhèige gōngdiàn shì zài nǎige chāodài jiànzhude?, "In which dynasty was this palace constructed?"

Unit 4, Review Dialogue

An American architect, John Bernacki, is attending a joint Sino-American conference on architecture in Běijīng. During the conference, he has made the acquaintance of a certain Liú Yuèwén of the Chinese Institute of Architecture. They had the chance to talk a bit when Liú accompanied a delegation of American architects around the city to visit several ancient buildings.

One evening toward the end of the conference, Bernacki is having coffee in the dining room of the Běijīng Hotel. On his table he has spread out a tourist map of Běijīng and a relief map of China, and is studying them intently. Just then, Liú Yuèwén comes over to his table carrying a cup of coffee.

- L: Jīntiān cānguānle Gùgōng hái bú gòu lèi ma? Hái zài zhèr kàn dìtú ne!
Aren't you tired enough after visiting the Palace Museum today? Still here reading maps!
- B: À! Shì nǐ ya? Lái lái lái, zài zhèr zuò yihuǐr. Nǐ hē shénme? Kāfēi?
Ah, it's you? Come on and sit down here for a while. What are you drinking? Coffee?
- L: Ng, shì kāfēi. Wǒ zài Déguode shíhou hēchéng xíguān le.
Yes, coffee. I got in the habit of drinking it when I was in Germany.
- B: Duǐ le. Wǒ zěnme huì wàngle nǐ shì zài Déguo xuéde jiànzhū. Huí guó zhème duō nián, méiyǒu zài qùguo Ōuzhōu?
Oh yes; how could I forget that you studied architecture in Germany. After so many years back in China, haven't you gone back to Europe at all?
- L: Yǒu qùguo yíci, nèi shì qījiǔnián, zhèicì bǐ shàngcì duō zǒule jǐge dìfang.
I've been back once. That was in '79. That time I went to a few more places than the previous time.
- B: Shéi qùguo Ōuzhōu, shéi jiù huì xiǎngzhe tā. Jiù xiàng Zhōngguó yíyàng, láiguó Zhōngguóde rén, bù guǎn shénme shíhou, zǒng hái huì xiǎngzhe tā.
Whoever goes to Europe will always think of it. It's just like China, no matter when it is that a person comes here, they'll always think of it.
- L: Shì a!...Gāngcái wǒ lái de shíhour, nǐ hǎoxiàng zài yánjiū shénme?
Yes, indeed!...Just now when I came, you seemed to be studying something, is that so?
- B: Méi shénme, wǒ zài xiǎng, Běijīngde dìxíng hé nà Běijīng zuò shǒudū yǒu diǎnr guānxi.
Nothing much. I was thinking that the topography of Běijīng has something to do with using it as the capital.

- L: Nǐ shuōde duì, Běijīng zài Huá-běi Píngyuán de zuì běibiān, xīběi kào shān, dōng, nán shì píngyuán.
- B: Zhèizhǒng dìxíng ràng rén gǎnjué bǐjiǎo róngyì fángbèi běifāng lái de qīnlüè.
- L: Tèbié shì yǒule Chángchéng yǐhòu, gèng róngyì fángbèi.
- B: Tīngshuō Chángchéng xiūguo bù zhīdào duōshǎo cì le.
- L: Cóng Qíncháo dào xiànzài, Chángchéng yìzhí zài xiū, wǒmen děi jǐde bù guǎn shénme shíhòu wǒmen dōu děi xiǎoxīn Běifāng lái de qīnlüè!
- B: Nǐ zhēn yǒu yìsi. Duì le, wǒ xiǎng wǒmen qiántiān qù kànguode nèiduàn Chángchéng hǎoxiàng bú shì Qíncháo jiànzhude?
- L: Èng, shì Míngcháo chóngxīn jiànzhude. Qíncháode Chángchéng zài Bādǎlǐng běibiān liǎngbǎiduō lǐ de dìfāng. Suǒyì lái Zhōngguó cānguānde wàiguó péngyou píngcháng kàndaode Chángchéng bú shì zuì lǎode yíduàn.
- B: "Wàn lǐ Chángchéng" zhēn yǒu yíwàn lǐ cháng ma?
- L: Yǒu, Chángchéng jīngguòle qīge shěng, yígòng yǒu yíwàn èrqiān lǐ cháng.
- B: Chúle Chángchéng yǐwài, wǒmen jǐge jiànzhù gōngzuòzhě duì Shísānlíngde dìxià gōngdiàn yě hěn yǒu xìngqù.
- L: Tāndao Zhōngguó gǔdài jiànzhù yìshu, nǐ qùguo Tiāntán ma? Nǐmen-de yóulǎn jìhuàli yǒu méiyǒu Tiāntán?
- That's right. Běijīng is in the northernmost part of the North China Plain. On the northwest it is bordered by mountains; to the east and south there are flatlands.
- This kind of topography made people feel as if it were easier to guard against invasions from the north.
- Especially after the Great Wall was built, it was even easier to guard against [invasions].
- I understand the Great Wall has been repaired I-don't-know how many times.
- From the Qín dynasty down to the present the Great Wall has been under repair all along. We must remember that no matter when, we must always beware of invasion from the north!
- You're such a card. Oh yes--it seems to me that the section of the Great Wall we went to see the day before yesterday wasn't built during the Qín dynasty, was it?
- Mm, it was rebuilt in the Míng Dynasty. The Qín Dynasty Great Wall is over two hundred li north of Bādǎlǐng. So the Great Wall that foreign friends who come to sightsee in China usually see isn't the oldest section.
- Is the "Great Wall of Ten Thousand Li" really ten thousand li long?
- Yes. The Great Wall passes through seven provinces and altogether is 12,000 li long.
- Besides the Great Wall, we building workers are also very interested in the underground palaces of the Thirteen Tombs.
- Speaking of ancient Chinese architectural art, have you been to the Temple of Heaven? Is that on your touring schedule?

- B: Ò, duì le, Tiāntán! Wǒ xiǎng-qilai le, tīngshuō Tiāntán gài de hěn tèbié. Kěshi, bù zhīdào wèishenme, wǒmende yóulǎn jìhuàlì hǎoxiàng méiyǒu.
- L: Bú yào jǐnde. Wǒmen hé Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè tányitán, rúguǒ tāmen méiyǒu shíjiān ānpaide huà, wǒmen kéyì zài Xīngqítīān zìjǐ qù.
- B: Xīngqítīān zìjǐ qù! Hǎo jìhuà! Nǐde xiānsheng, háizi, dōu kéyì lái ma?
- L: Dàgài kéyì. Wǒ àiren hé wǒde dà érzi dōu shì gāo jiànzhude, tāmen kéyì gěi nǐ hǎohāor jièshào yíxia Tiāntánde jiànzhū tèdiǎn.
- B: Wǒmen zěnmē qù ne?
- L: Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng zǒuyizǒu lù a?
- B: Kéyì a! Zài shuō, wǒ xiǎng Xīngqítīānde gōnggòng qìchē dàgài xiāngdāng jǐ.
- L: Ng. Wǒmen cóng Běijīng Fàndiàn zǒu dào Tiān'ānmén, ránhòu chuānguò guǎngchǎng, bù yuǎn jiù shì Tiāntán le.
- B: Hǎo, jiù zhème juéding le. Búguò, bù zhīdào Tiāntán yǒu duō dà? Bāntiān kàndewán ma?
- L: Tiāntán bǐ Yíhéyuán xiǎode duō, zhǔyàode jiànzhū jiù yǒu liǎngbùfen. Bāntiān dàgài kéyì kànwán. Zěnmē, Xīngqítīān nǐ hái yǒu biéde shì ma?
- B: Xīngqítīān xiàwǔ yǒu rén qǐng wǒmen chī fàn. Bù hǎo yìsi bú qù, kěshi xīnshǎng jiànzhū yìshu, nà kě shì yào jǐnde shìr, bāntiān dàgài bú gòu!
- Oh, yes--the Temple of Heaven. That reminds me. I've heard that the Temple of Heaven is very special. But for some reason I don't know, it doesn't seem to be on our tour schedule.
- That doesn't matter. We'll talk about it with the China Travel Service, and if they don't have time to set it up, we can go by ourselves on Sunday.
- Go ourselves on Sunday! That's a great plan! Can your husband and children all come too?
- Probably. My spouse and my oldest son are both in building. They can do a proper job of showing you the special architectural characteristics of the Temple of Heaven.
- How shall we go there?
- Do you want to walk a little?
- That would be okay. Besides, I suppose the buses are pretty crowded on Sundays.
- Mm. From the Běijīng Hotel we walk to the Gate of Heavenly Peace, then we cross the square, and not far from there is the Temple of Heaven.
- Okay. Then that's the decision. Only, I wonder how large the Temple of Heaven is? Could we see it in half a day?
- The Temple of Heaven is much smaller than the Summer Palace. The main structures include only two parts. You can probably finish seeing it in half a day. Why? Do you have other things to do on Sunday?
- Sunday afternoon we've been invited to dinner. It would be embarrassing if we didn't go, but admiring architectural art is certainly an important thing, and half a day probably won't be enough!

A: Bú yào jǐnde, zhèige Xīngqītiān wǒmen zǎo diǎnr qù. Zǎo qù zǎo huí, jiù kàn bàntiān. Rúguǒ nǐ hái xiǎng qù, wǒmen zài xiǎng bàn-fǎ yuē shíjiān.

That's okay, this Sunday we'll go a little earlier. We'll leave early and come back early, and just spend half a day there. If you still want to go we'll try to arrange a time.

B: Hǎo, jiù zhèiyang le. Wǒ jìde zài Ōuzhōu cānguān yige jiàotáng hái dēi yòng bù shǎo shíjiān ne!

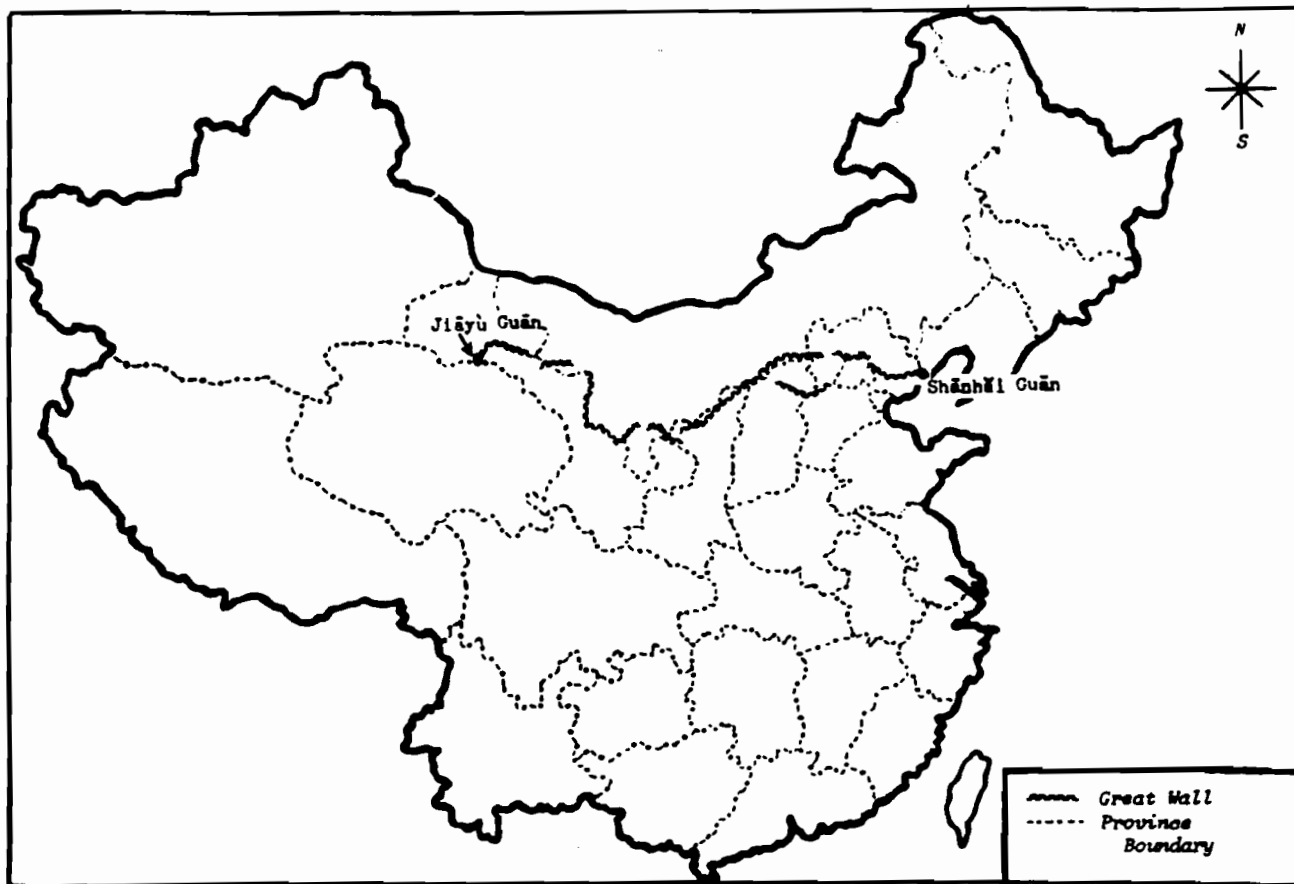
Okay, that sounds good. I remember it takes quite a long time to tour a cathedral in Europe!

L: Hǎo le, jiù zhèiyangr. Xīngqītiān zǎoshang bādiǎn, zài lóuxià dà ménkǒur jiàn, rúguǒ yǒu shénme gǎibiàn, wǒ zài dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ.

All right, that's our plan. We'll meet at the entrance downstairs, Sunday morning at eight. If there's any change I'll give you a call.

B: Hǎode, jiù zhèiyang!

Okay, that's fine!



The Great Wall of China

Unit 4, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American scholar visiting China talks with an old Chinese friend at the Běijīng Hotel.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

pǎolai pǎoqù	to run back and forth
yìshí	for the moment
Gēlúnbiyà Dàxué	Columbia University
háishi	it would be better to
Zhōngshān Gōngyuán	Sun Yatsen Park
shù	tree
-kē	(counter for trees)
-zuò	(counter for massive objects)
mùtóu	wood
Liáodài	the Liáo Period

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why does the American scholar want to stop talking about New York?
2. Why does his Chinese friend think New York is a special place?

3. Does the Chinese friend enjoy old things? How do you know?
4. How do you get from the Běijīng Hotel to Sun Yatsen Park?
5. Describe three attractions in Sun Yatsen Park.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, Professor Michaels talks with Ms. Táng Lán, from the China Travel Service, while he packs his bags in his hotel room.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

dǎrǎo	to disturb
huàcè	book of photographs
xūyàoliàng	need, demand
jiēshòu	to accept
lǐwù	gift
zhàopiàn	photograph
yǒuhǎo	friendship
dàibǎo	to represent; on behalf of

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What does Ms. Táng Lán bring Professor Michaels?
2. Why does she bring this particular gift?
3. Why does she refuse the pen Professor Michaels offers her?

4. How does Professor Michaels explain his gift of the pen so that it will be acceptable?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

In this conversation, a young German student is touring the Great Wall at Bādǎlǐng when she meets a Chinese who was a classmate of hers three years before in Germany.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

Nǐ hái shì lǎo yàngzi	You look as if you haven't changed a bit
bàng	to be great, to be terrific
wěidà	to be great (e.g., a leader)
Mùníhēi	Munich
shìzhèngfǔ	city hall
zhěngqí	to be neat, to be tidy

Questions for Exercise 4

1. Why hadn't the German gotten in touch with her Chinese friend yet?
2. What plans of the Chinese government are bothering the German?
3. What example does the Chinese friend give to show that modernization has made improvements in Běijīng?
4. What is the main reason the Chinese friend sees for building the hotel?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

In this conversation, an American scholar visiting China (A) talks with an old Chinese friend of his (B) at the Běijīng Hotel.

- A: Měicì lái Zhōngguó zǒngshì yào máfan nǐ, péizhe wǒmen pǎolai pǎoqùde. Nǐ shénme shíhòu yě dào Měiguó qù kànkàn ma! Sān-sìshínián le, Měiguó yǐjīng biànde tài duō le!
- B: Shì a! Qù shì hěn xiǎng qùde, zhǐ shì yìshí hái zhǎobudào jīhuì.
- A: Gēlúnbiyà Dàxué cháng qǐng tāmen-de lǎo xuésheng huíqu cānguān, yóulǎn. Wǒ shìshí gěi nǐ ānpai yìxiar.
- B: Hǎode....Shuōqilai yě qíguài, Niǔ Yuē zhēn shì ge tèbiéde dìfang. Wǒ zhū zai nàrde shíhòu bù juéde zěnme tài hǎo, kěshì xiànzài cháng xiǎngqǐ ta! Yǒu hěn duō lǎo liúxuéshēng cháng shuō, shéi zài Niǔ Yuē zhùguó shéi jiù huì chángcháng xiǎngzhe ta!
- A: Ò, wǒmen bù tán zhèige le. Zài tánxiàqu wǒ yě yào xiǎng jiā le. Wǒmen háishì chūqu zǒuzou ba!
- B: Hǎo a! Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr a?
- A: Běijīng shì shǒudū, yíding yǒu xiè yǒu yìside dìfang. Gùgōng, Yíhéyuán shenmede wǒ dōu qùguo le. Fūjīn hái yǒu shénme biéde dìfang bǐjiào yǒu yìsi ma?
- B: Cóng zhèli chūqu wǎng xī zǒu, chuānguo Tiān'ānmén Guāngchǎng, zài Tiān'ānménde xībianr yǒu yíge gōngyuánr, jiào Zhōngshān Gōngyuán, lǐmian yǒu bù shǎo piāoliangde gùdài jiànzhū.
- A: Shì shénme cháo dài de jiànzhū, yǒu duōshao nián de lìshǐ le?
- Every time I come to China I always trouble you to accompany us all around the place. You should really come see America some time! It's changed a lot in thirty or forty years!
- Yes, I'd love to go, it's just that for the moment I can't find the opportunity.
- Columbia University often invites their old students back to visit and tour. I'll try to arrange it for you.
- Okay....It's a funny thing, but New York is really a special place. When I was living there, I didn't think much of the place, but now I often think of it. A lot of old students returned from abroad often say that whoever has lived in New York will think of it often!
- Let's not talk about this any more. If we keep talking about it, I'm going to start missing home, too. It would be better if we went outside for a walk!
- All right! Where would you like to go?
- Běijīng is the capital, so it naturally has some interesting places. I've been to the Palace Museum and the Summer Palace. Are there any other interesting places near here?
- If you go out from here and walk to the west, then cut across Tiān'ānmén Square, then on the west side of Tiān'ānmén there's a park called Sun Yatsen Park, and inside there are a lot of beautiful ancient buildings.
- What dynasty are the buildings from? How old are they?

- B: Zuì zǎode jiànzhù shì Liáodàide, chābuduō yǒu yìqiānniánde lìshǐ le. Nàr hái yǒu qīkē gǔdàide dà shù, yě dōu yǒu yìqiānduō nián le. The earliest buildings are from the Liáo Period. They are about a thousand years old. There are also seven ancient trees there, which are over a thousand years old, too.
- A: Nèr yě yǒu yǒu míngde gōngdiàn ba? There's a famous palace there too, isn't there?
- B: Yǒu, yǒu yízuò dà diàn shì Míngchāode shíhour jiànzhude, yòngde cáiliào quán shì mùtou, yě yǐjīng chābuduō yǒu liùbǎiniánde lìshǐ. Yes. There's a large palace which was constructed in the Míng Dynasty, made entirely of wood. That's about six hundred years old, too.
- A: Hǎo, nà wǒmen xiànzài jiù qù zǒuzou. All right, then let's go for a walk right now.
- B: Hǎode, zǒu! Okay, let's go!

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American tourist, Professor Michaels (M), is packing his bags in his hotel room. Ms. Táng Lán (T), from the China Travel Service, comes to his door.

- T: Mǎikè Jiàoshòu, dǎrǎo nǐ le. Professor Michaels, I'm disturbing you.
- M: Méi shenme, kuài qǐng zuò, wǒ zhèr luànqībāzāode, zài shōushi dōngxi. Not at all. Please sit down. It's a mess here, I'm packing.
- T: Shénme shíhourde fēijī ya? When's your plane?
- M: Wǎnshangde, hái zǎo ne, bù jí bù jí, nǐ zuò ma. In the evening. It's still early. No rush, no rush. Come on and sit down.
- T: Wǒ lái sòng gěi nín yìběn yóulǎn huàcè. I've come to give you a photographic travel book.
- M: Yóulǎn huàcè? Jiù shì wǒmen zài yóulǎn Wǎnlǐ Chángchéngde shíhou, wǒ xiǎng mǎide nèizhǒng? A photographic travel book? Is it the kind I wanted to buy when we were touring the Great Wall of Ten Thousand Li?
- T: Jiù shì. Zhèizhǒng huàcè xūyào-liàng kě dà le. Right. There sure is a great demand for this kind of book of photographs.
- M: Shì ma! Ōuzhōu láiide, Měizhōu láiide, shénme dìfang láiide kèren dōu xiǎng mǎi yìběnr. Xūyàoliàng yídìng hěn dà. Sure! Visitors from Europe, America, everywhere, all want to buy one. Of course there's a great demand.

T: Nèitiān zài Bādǎlǐng, nín méiyǒu mǎizhào, jīntiān wǒ gěi nín sònglái le. That day at Bādǎlǐng, you weren't able to find one, so today I'm bringing you one.

M: Zhēn xièxie nǐ, zhème diǎnr xiǎo shìr nǐ hái xiǎngzhe. Duóshao qián na? Thank you so much. Such a small thing and you still remembered it. How much was it?

T: Shì Lǚxíngshè sòng nín de. Wǒmen huānyíng nín zài lái. It's a gift from the Travel Service. We welcome you to come back again.

(Michael takes a Parker pen out of the pocket of his suitcase.)

M: Nà, zhèizhǐ bǐ sòng gei nǐ. Then, take this pen as a gift.

T: Ò, bù kéyǐ, wǒmen bù kéyǐ jiēshòu kèrènde lǐwù. Oh, I can't. We're not allowed to accept gifts from visitors.

M: Nàme sòng gei nǐmen Lǚxíngshè. Hái jìde nèitiān wǒmen zài Shí sānlíng ma? Then I give it to your Travel Service. Do you still remember that day at the Thirteen Tombs?

T: Duì, nèitiān nín hěn gāoxìng. Yes. That day you were very happy.

M: Xīnshǎng Zhōngguó gǔdài jiànzhū yìshù shì wǒ zuǐ gāoxìngde shì. Nèitiān wǒmen zhào xiàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma? The thing that makes me happiest is admiring the ancient architectural art of China. That day we took pictures, do you remember?

T: Jìde. Nèitiān nín gěi wǒmen Lǚxíngshède jǐge tóngzhǐ zhào le xiàng, nín hái zài zhāopiàn hòumiàn yòng Zhōngwén xiěle "Měi-Zhōng yǒuhǎo" sìge zì. Yes. That day, you took a picture of us comrades from the Travel Service, and you wrote on the back of the picture "American-Chinese friendship."

M: Duì, nàme jīntiān nǐ sòng huàcè lai, wǒ sòng gei nǐmen yìzhǐ bǐ wèishénme bù kéyǐ ne? Right. So then today since you've brought me the photographic travel book, what's wrong with my giving you a pen?

T: Hǎo. Wǒ dài biǎo tóngzhǐmen xièxie nín, huānyíng nín zài lái. All right. On behalf of the other comrades, I thank you and welcome you to come back again.

M: Wǒ yíding zài lái. I'll be sure to.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

A traveler from Germany (B) is touring the Great Wall at Bādǎlǐng when she spots a Chinese friend (A) whom she met three years before when he was studying in Germany.

- B: Ài! Xú Gāng! Hái rènshi wǒ ma? Hey! Xú Gāng! Do you still remember me?
- A: Ò! Shì nǐ ya! Sānnián bú jiàn, nǐ hái shì lǎo yàngzi! Lái Běijīng duō jiǔ le? Well! It's you! It's been three years, but you still look the same! How long has it been since you came to Běijīng?
- B: Ha! Kāndào nǐ zhēn gāoxìng! Wǒ lái zhèr yíge duō xīngqī le. Yìzhí cānguān zhèr, cānguān nàrde, mángjǐle, dōu méi néng gěi nǐ dǎ yíge diànhuà. Nǐ hái zài Běidà ma? Ha! It's so good to see you! It's been a week or more since I got here. I've been sightseeing all over the place all along, and haven't been able to give you a call. Are you still at Běijīng University?
- A: Hái zài Běidà. Nǐde Zhōngwén yuè lái yuè bàng le ma? Yes, I'm still there. Your Chinese is getting more and more fantastic!
- B: Bàng shénme ya? Hái bu shì mǎmahūhūde! Duì le, zài zhèr kāndào nǐ zhèng hǎo! Wǒ yǒu yíge wèntí xiǎng wèn nǐ, nǐ yǒu méiyǒu shíjiān? What's fantastic about it? It's just so-so, really! Oh yes--glad I've run into you here; I have a question I'd like to ask. Do you have time?
- A: Yǒu! Nǐ yǒu shénme wèntí? Yes. What's your question?
- B: Wǒ jìde Chángchéng jīngguòle hǎojǐge shěng, yǒu yíwàn èrqiānduō lǐ cháng. As I remember, the Great Wall passes through many provinces and is over 12,000 li long.
- A: Duì ya! Right!
- B: Chángchéng shì Zhōngguó zuì wěidàde gǔdài jiànzhù. The Great Wall is China's greatest ancient structure.
- A: Duì ya! Chābuduō shì zhèiyàng. Right! That's about the way it is.
- B: Hǎo. Nàme Qíncháo de shíhour wèishénme yào xiū zhème chángde Chángchéng ne? Okay. And why did they want to build such a long Great Wall during the Qín dynasty?
- A: Dāngrán shì wèile fángbèi Běifāng lái de qīnlüè le. As a precaution against invasions from the north, of course.
- B: Nàme, hǐmen xiànzài wèishénme bù hǎohāorde bǎohù Chángchéng, nǐmen gǔdài de chuántǒng ne? Then why aren't you doing a good job of protecting the Great Wall, of protecting your ancient tradition?
- A: Shéi shuōde? Wǒmen bú shì yìzhí zài xiū ma? Says who? We've been repairing it all along, you know!
- B: Kěshì tīngshuō nǐmende zhèngfǔ yǐjīng juéding zài Chángchéngde fǔjìn gài yíge xiàndàihuàde fǎn- But I hear that your government has decided to build a modern hotel in the vicinity of the Great Wall. If that's

- diàn. Rúguǒ zhēn shì nèiyangr, wǒ juéde yǒu yìdiǎnr bú tài shūfu. really the case, then I feel rather bad about it.
- A: À! Wǒ xiǎngqilai le. Zài Mùní-hēide shíhou, wǒmen yǒu yíci qù cānguān yíge lǎo jiàotáng. Ah! I remember. When we were in Munich, once we went to visit an old church.
- B: Duì le. Wǒmen zǒuguò lǎo shì-zhèngfǔ ménkǒurde shíhou, kàndào nār yǒu hěn duō hěn xiàndāihuàde fànguǎnr, yě yǒu zázhi, shūbào, huàr shenmede, zhēn ràng wǒ xīnlǐ bù shūfu. Right. When we walked in front of the old city hall, seeing all those modern restaurants, and the magazines, books, newspapers, paintings, and so on, it really made me feel very bad.
- A: Hài, xiàndāihuàde shèhuì ma, zěnme néng méiyǒu xiàndāihuàde dōngxì ne? Bīfāng shuō Běijīngde Qiánménwài ba, cóngqián yǒu hěn duō xiǎo pùzi. Jiěfàng yǐhòu xiūguo hǎo duō cì, hái shì bú tài hǎo, hòulái chónghēn gǎile hěn duō dà shāngdiàn, jiù zhèngqíde duō le. Yǒu shénme bù hǎo ne? Well, that's modern society, you know! How can it do without modern things? Take Qiánménwài in Běijīng, for example. It used to have a lot of little shops. After liberation, it was fixed up many times, but it still wasn't too good. Later a lot of new big stores were built, and it looked much neater. What's wrong with that?
- B: Hǎo le, hǎo le, wǒ tóngyì le. Okay, okay, I agree.
- A: Shì ma! Nǐ kàn, zhèrde dìxíng duō yǒu yìsi, fēngjǐng duō piàoliang. Lái zhèrde rén wánr yìtiān gòu ma? Sure! Look, the terrain is so interesting here, and the scenery is so beautiful. Is one day enough for the people who come here?
- B: Dàgài bú gòu. Probably not.
- A: Jiù shì ma, yàoshi fǔjìn yǒu yíge dà fàndiàn, nà duō fāngbian! Exactly. If there were a big hotel in the vicinity, how convenient it would be!
- B: Hǎo le, hǎo le, wǒ tóngyì le! Zǒu, zánmen zài wǎng shàng zǒuzou. Okay, okay, I agree! Come on, let's walk on up!
- A: Zǒu! Let's go.

Unit 5, Reference List

1. A: Zhōngguó méitàn zīyuán bù shǎo, chǎnliàng hěn gāo. China's coal resources are large and output is high.
- B: Shì, xiànzài Zhōngguó méitàn chǎnliàng zài shìjièshang zhàn dìsānwèi. Yes, China's coal output ranks third in the world.
2. A: Cóngqián Zhōngguóde shíyóu dàbùfen zài lí biānjìng bù yuǎnde dìfang. In the past, China's oil was mostly in places out near the border.
- B: Xiànzài yánhǎi yídàide shíyóu yě fāzhǎnqilai le. Now oil in the coastal region is starting to be developed.
3. A: Zhèige kuàngqūde jīnshǔ gōngyè shì shénme shíhou kāishǐ yǒude? When did the metal industry in this mining area begin?
- B: Bāshí niándài. Jīxiè gōngyè yě shì bāshí niándài cái yǒude. In the eighties. There wasn't a machine industry until the eighties, either.
4. A: Zài guò shínián, dào jiǔshí niándài chū, zhèige guójiā dàgāi huì biànchéng yíge jīngjì qiángguó. In another ten years, in the early nineties, this country will probably become an economic power.
- B: Bù xíng, qǐmǎ děi zài guò èrshínián. No, it will be at least another twenty years.
5. A: Zhèiwèi zài guówài yǒu míngde gōngchéngshī, huí guó yǐhòu zěnmeyàng la? What happened when this engineer who was famous abroad went back to his country?
- B: Huí guó yǐhòu yìzhí gāo zhòng gōngyè fāngmiàn de jìshù gōngzuò. He has been doing technical work in heavy industry since he returned to his country.
6. A: Bú jiù shì Rìběn, xiànzài gèguó dōu hěn guānxīn Zhōngguó yánhǎide jīngjì jiànshè. Not only Japan, all countries are now interested in the economic construction of China's coast.
- B: Shì. Yǐjīng yǒu xǔduō guójiā xiǎng hé Zhōngguó yìqǐ zài nèi yídài chénglì xīnde gōngsī. Yes, there are already many countries which are thinking of establishing new companies with China in that area.

7. A: Tīngshuō zhèige nóngyèqū yǐjīng yǒu lǐliàng fāzhǎn gōngyè le. I hear that this agricultural area already has the capability to develop its industry.
- B: Jìn shínián lái, zhèige dìqū-de nóngyè shēngchǎn gāode bú cuò, shōurù bù shǎo, gāole yìdiǎnr qīng gōngyè. Over the past ten years, agricultural production in this area has been good and income has been high, so some light industry was set up.
8. A: Tīngshuō èrshínián qián yǒu hěn duō niánqīng rén dào le nèige méiyǒu rénde qióng dìfang. I heard that twenty years ago a lot of young people came to that poor and unpopulated place.
- B: Shì a! Kěshì xiànzài zhèngfǔ kěyǐ fāngxīn le. Nèige dìfang yǐjīng suàn jiànshède bú cuò le. Yes, but now the government need not worry anymore. That place can be considered to have been pretty well built up.
9. A: Zǒngde lái shuō ba, zhèige chéngshìde biànhuà shì hěn dàde. Generally speaking, the changes in this city have been great.
- B: Shì a, zhàn zài shì zhōngxīn-de dàlóushang kànkan, wǒ dōu bú rènshi le! Yes, standing on top of the building in the center of the city, looking out, I don't recognize anything anymore!
10. A: Xǔduō jīngjì lǐliàng bǐjiǎo ruòde guójiā hěn gǎnxiè Zhōngguóde bāngzhù. Many countries with relatively weak economies are grateful for China's help.
- B: Wǒmen yě shì yíge fāzhǎn-zhōngde guójiā, kěshì wǒmen hěn gāoxìng bāng qítā guójiā gāo jīngjì jiànshè. We're still a developing country, too, but we're happy to help other countries in economic construction.
11. hǎiwān gulf, bay
12. Guǎngdōng (a province, formerly Kwangtung)
13. Hēilóngjiāng (a province, formerly Heilongkiang)
14. Shǎnxī (a province, formerly Shensi, now officially spelled Shaanxi)
15. Sìchūān (a province, formerly Szechwan)
16. Tiānjīn (a municipality, formerly Tientsin)

Unit 5, Vocabulary List

ba	(marker of pause or hypothesis)
bāng	to help
biànhuà	change
biānjìng	border, frontier
chénglì	to establish
-chū	the beginning of (a time period)
fàng xīn	to be unworried, to be at ease
gǎnxiè	to be thankful, to be grateful
gè-	each, every, various, different
gōngchéngshī	engineer
Guǎngdōng	(province in south China)
guānxīn	to be concerned about, to care about
hǎiwān	bay; gulf
Hēilóngjiāng	(province in northeast China)
jìn	the past..., the last...
jīnshǔ	metal
kuàngqū	mining region
lìliàng (lìliang)	power, force, strength
méitàn	coal
niándài	decade of a century
qiáng	to be strong
qiángguó	powerful nation, a power
qǐmǎ	at least
qīng	to be light
qīng gōngyè	light industry
qióng	to be poor
qítā	other
-qū	area, region, district
ruò	to be weak
Shǎnxī	(province in north central China)
...(lái) shuō	...speaking
Sìchuān	(province in southwest China)
suàn	to be considered, to count as
Tiānjīn	(municipality southeast of Běijīng)
-wèi	place, position (rank)

xǔduō

many, much

yánhǎi

along the coast, coastal

zhòng

to be heavy

zhōngxīn

center, heart, core, hub

zīyuán

(natural) resources

zǒngde lái shuō

generally speaking, on the whole

Unit 5, Reference Notes

1. A: Zhōngguó méitàn zīyuán bù shǎo, chǎnliàng hěn gāo. China's coal resources are large and output is high.
- B: Shì, xiànzài Zhōngguó méitàn chǎnliàng zài shìjièshàng zhàn dìsānwèi. Yes, China's coal output now ranks third in the world.

Notes on No. 1

méitàn: "coal" In daily life (for coal is still used as a fuel in many homes in China), this is usually called simply méi. Tàn by itself means "charcoal" (charcoal is also called mùtàn, literally, "wood-charcoal"). Another word tàn, written with a different character but pronounced exactly the same, means the element "carbon."

Zhèige dìfāngde méitàn shēngchǎn qíngkuàng bú cuò. Coal production is doing very well in this place.

zīyuán: "resources" This is used in such phrases as zìrán zīyuán, "natural resources," and dìxià zīyuán, "underground resources."

Rìběn yǒu zīyuánde wèntí. Japan has a problem of resources. (refers to lack of resources)

bù shǎo: "not few," i.e., "many," "large" Remember that Chinese often uses bù to express the opposite of adjectives:

Shíjiān bù zǎo le. It's getting late.

Nǐ zhēn bù cōngmíng. You're really dumb.

Nèige guójiāde jīngjì fāzhǎnde bú màn. That country's economy is developing quite fast.

dìsānwèi: "third place" -Wèi is the same word you learned in Něiwèi shì Gāo Tóngzhì?, but here it means "place" or "position" in a statistical ranking. -Wèi also means "place" in mathematics: gèwèi, "the units place"; shíwèi, "the tens place"; bǎiwèi, "the hundreds place"; etc.

Use the pattern zhàn dì-...-wèi for "to rank in ... position":

Zhōngguó rénkǒu zhàn shìjiè dìyíwèi. China's population ranks first in the world.

Yīndù dàozi chǎnliàng zài shìjièshàng zhàn dìjǐwèi? How does India's rice production rank in the world?

2. A: Cóngqián Zhōngguóde shíyóu
dābùfen zài lí biānjìng
bù yuǎnde dìfang.

In the past, China's oil was
mostly in places near the
border.

B: Xiànzài yánhǎi yí dài de
shíyóu yě fāzhǎnqilai le.

Now oil in the coastal region is
starting to be developed, too.

Notes on No. 2

biānjìng: "(national) border"

Zài biānjìng dìqū shēnghuó, gōng- People who live and work in the
zuòde rén, yíding yào tèbié border areas must be especially
xiǎoxīn. careful.

Zhèige chéngshì lí biānjìng hěn This city is very near the border.
jìn.

zài lí biānjìng bù yuǎnde dìfang: "was in places near the border" The
main verb of the sentence is zài, "was in." The phrase lí biānjìng bù yuǎn
goes with -de and describes dìfang. Here is a diagram of the structure:

Zhōngguóde shíyóu zài lí biānjìng bù yuǎn -de dìfang.

China's oil was in not far from the border places.

yánhǎi: "along the coast," "coastal" (Yán, which you will learn in
Unit 7, means "along.")

Zhèizhǒng dōngxī shì yánhǎi This kind of thing is found only
dìqū cái yǒude. in the coastal regions.

Nèijǐge yánhǎi chéngshì jiàn- Those few coastal cities have been
shède hěn kuài. built up very quickly.

Yánhǎi yí dài is a very common way of saying "coastal region." You should
also memorize the expressions yánhǎi gèshěng, "the (various) coastal prov-
inces," and yánhǎi zīyuán, "coastal resources."

3. A: Zhèige kuàngqūde jīnshǔ
gōngyè shì shénme shíhou
kāishǐ yǒude?

When did the metal industry in this
mining area begin?

B: Bāshí niándài. Jīxiè gōngyè
yě shì bāshí niándài cái
yǒude.

In the eighties. There wasn't a
machine industry until the eighties,
either.

Notes on No. 3

kuàngqū: "mining area/region" Kuàng is the word for "mine," as in

*On the word gè-, "various," see the Notes on No. 6.

méikuàng, "coal mine." -Qū means "area," "region," as in dìqū, "region," jiāoqū, "suburbs," and shìqū, "urban area."

Zhèige jīhua shì guānyú kuāng-qū jiànshède. This plan has to do with the development of mining regions.

jīnshǔ: "metal," literally, "metal-category"

Zhèi shì jīnshǔde ma? Is this (made of) metal?

Xiànzài wǒmen zuò zhèizhǒng dōngxī bú yòng jīnshǔ, dōu yòng zhǐ le. Now we no longer make this kind of thing out of metal, we make it out of paper.

niándài: This has two meanings: (1) (as used in 3B) "a decade of a century," e.g., èrshí niándài, "the twenties"; (2) "period," "era"

Zhèige gùshi xiěde shì shénme niándàide shì? What period is this story about?

Zhèipíng jiǔ shì shénme niándàide? What vintage is this wine/liquor?

jīxiè: "machine," "machinery," "mechanical"

Wǒmen zhèlǐde shēngchǎn zhǔyào kào jīxiè. Most of our production here is by machine.

Jīxiè is also pronounced jījiè.

Jīqì, "machine," which you learned in Unit 3, is different from jīxiè. Jīqì refers to individual machines; jīxiè is machines in general--machinery. Jīqì virtually always translates as "machine(s)." Jīxiè is basically "machinery," but may translate as "machine" in certain phrases, like jīxiè gōngrén, "machine worker," jīxiè gōngyè, "machine industry," etc.

4. A: Zài guò shínián, dào jiǔshí niándài chū, zhèige guójiā dàgài huì biànchéng yíge jīngjī qiángguó. In another ten years, in the early nineties, this country will probably become an economic power.

B: Bù xíng, qǐmǎ děi zài guò èrshínián. No, it will be at least another twenty years.

Notes on No. 4

zài guò shínián: "in another ten years," "after another ten years have passed" Here are some more examples of the use of (zài) guò (Amount of Time):

Zài guò jǐnián wǒ jiù xíguàn zhèrde shēnghuó le. I'll get used to life here in another few years.

Guò jǐtiān tā jiù yào qù Yìdàlì . In a few days, he will be going
zuò lǐngshǐ le. to Italy to be consul.

-chū: "at the beginning of" a time period

Míngniánchū wǒ qù Shànghǎi. At the beginning of next year I'm
going to Shànghǎi.

Yuèchū zài shuō ba! We'll see about it at the beginning
of (next) month!

Zhèige yuè chū tiānqì kāishǐ nuǎnhuo le. The weather started to get warmer
at the beginning of this month.

Wénhuà Dà Gémìng chū wǒmen shéi At the beginning of the Cultural
dōu hái bù zhīdào shì zěnme Revolution, none of us knew what
huí shì. it was all about yet.

qiángguó: "strong-country," i.e., "a (world) power"

qǐmǎ: (1) "at least"

Tā xué Zhōngwén qǐmǎ yǒu wǔnián He has been studying Chinese for
le, dànshì hái shuōde bù hǎo. at least five years, but he still
doesn't speak well.

Měitiān wǎnshàng wǒ qǐmǎ yào kàn Every evening I have to read at
liǎngge zhōngtóu shū cái néng least two hours before I can
shuì jiào. go to sleep.

Zhèige rén zhēn néng pǎo, měitiān This guy can really run. Every day
qǐmǎ pǎo shíèr yīnglǐ. he runs at least twelve miles.

(2) "minimum, lowest (required to be acceptable), most basic, rudimentary"

Zhèige rén! Lián qǐmǎde lǐmào This guy! He doesn't even understand
dōu bù dǒng! the most basic manners!

Nǐ lián zhè qǐmǎde dào lǐ dōu You don't even understand this basic
bù dǒng?! principle (of conduct, life, etc.)?!

Similar expressions include qǐmǎde tiáojiàn, "the most basic conditions";
qǐmǎde huánjìng, "the most basic environment(al conditions)"; qǐmǎde zhīshì,
"the most rudimentary knowledge"; qǐmǎde shuǐpíng, "the minimum level."

5. A: Zhèiwèi zài guówài yǒu míngde gōngchéngshī, huí guó yǐhòu zěnmeyàng la? What happened when this engineer who was famous abroad went back to his country?
- B: Huí guó yǐhòu yìzhí gāo zhòng gōngyè fāngmiànde jìshù gōngzuò. He has been doing technical work in heavy industry since he returned to his country.

Notes on No. 5

zěnmeyàng la?: "what happened (to him)" La is just a contraction of le and a. Here are more examples of the extremely useful word zěnmeyàng, "how is...", "what happened (to)...," or "do what":

- Ránhòu ne? Ránhòu zěnmeyàng? And then? Then what happened?
- Éi, hǎo jǐnián méi kànjian Xiǎo Wú le, tā zěnmeyàng le? Say, I haven't seen Xiǎo Wú for many years. What ever became of her?
- Yíge rén bù néng xiǎng zěnmeyàng jiu zěnmeyàng. A person cannot just do anything they feel like doing.
- Nǐ yàoshi bú gào su ta, tā huì duì nǐ zěnmeyàng ma? If you don't tell him, will he try to do anything to you?
Tā bú huì zěnmeyàng. He won't do anything.
- A: Nǐ dǎsuan zěnmeyàng? What are you going to do?
B: Nǐ xiǎng wǒ yīnggāi zěnmeyàng? What do you think I should do?
A: Wǒ bù zhīdào, nǐ yào zěnmeyàng jiu zěnmeyàng. I don't know. Do whatever you want to do.

zhòng: "to be heavy," in several senses:

- Zhèige jīqì yǒu duō zhòng? How heavy is this machine?
- Gōngkè tài zhòng, zhēn lèi. I have too much homework; I'm really tired.
- Bú yào bǎ huà shuōde tài zhòng le. Don't put it too strongly.
- Tā shòule zhòng shāng, xiànzài zài yīyuànli. He was badly injured and is now in the hospital.

Zhòngliàng means "weight" (compare chǎnliàng, zhìliàng, shùliàng).

The opposite of zhòng is qīng, "to be light," which is introduced in No. 7, below.

6. A: Bú jiù shì Rìběn, xiànzài
gèguó dōu hěn guānxīn
Zhōngguó yánhǎide jīngjī
jiànshè.

Not only Japan, all countries are
now interested in the economic
construction of China's coast.

B: Shì. Yǐjīng yǒu xǔduō guójiā
xiǎng hé Zhōngguó yìqǐ zài
nèi yídài chénglì xīnde
gōngsī.

Yes, there are already many countries
which are thinking of establishing
new companies with China in that
area.

Notes on No. 6

gèguó: "various countries" Gè-, "each and every," "various," is a specifier like zhèi-, "this," or nèi-, "that." You can prefix it to counters and to some nouns. Here are some examples:

Wǒmen zài quánguó gèdì cānguān
yóulǎnle yíge yuè.

We visited and toured all over the
country for one month. (Gèdì is
"each place," "various places.")

Xiànzài gèrén zuò gèrénde, sì-
diǎn zài kāi huì.

For now, everyone can do what they
want. We will have the meeting
at four. (Gèrén is "everybody.")

Gèwèi rúguǒ yǒu shénme wèntí,
qǐng xiànzài tíchulai.

If you all have any questions, please
bring them up now. (Gèwèi is a
polite form of address for a group
of people, e.g., an audience. -Wèi
is the polite counter for people.)

Tāmen yòng gèzhǒng xiàndàihuàde
jīqì.

They use all kinds of modern machines.
(Gèzhǒng is "various kinds.")

When a gè- phrase is followed in the sentence by dōu, "all," it takes on the meaning "every," "all." Thus gèguó in sentence 6A is translated as "all countries."

guānxīn: "to be concerned about," "to care about," "to be interested in" the welfare of something.

Zhèrde lǎoshī hěn guānxīn xué-
sheng.

The teachers here are very concerned
about (care about) the students.

Tā hěn guānxīn kuàngqūde jiànshè,
sāngè yuèlì lái kànguó hǎo jǐ-
cì.

He cares a great deal about the building
up of the mining region; he came to
see it many times in three months.

xǔduō: "many," "a great deal (of)," "lots (of)" This is a synonym of hěn duō, and used in the same ways.

chénglì: "to establish," "to found," "to set up"

Měiguó Diànhuà Diànbào Gōngsī
shì nǎinián chénglìde?

In what year was AT&T established?

7. A: Tǐngshuō zhèige nóngyèqū
yǐjīng yǒu lìliàng fāzhǎn
gōngyè le. I hear that this agricultural area
already has the capability to
develop its industry.
- B: Jīn shínián lái, zhèige dìqū-
de nóngyè shēngchǎn gāode bú
cuò, shōurù bù shǎo, gāole
yìdiǎnr qīng gōngyè. Over the past ten years, agricultural
production in this area has been
good and income has been high, so
some light industry was set up.

Notes on No. 7

-qū: "area," "region," "district" This word, which you have already seen in dìqū, "area," "region," and in kuàngqū, "mining region," can combine with many other words, for example gōngyèqū, "industrial region," nóngyèqū, "agricultural region" or "farming region," shāngyèqū, "business district (of a city)," fēngjǐngqū, "scenic spot," shānqū, "mountainous district."

lìliàng: "power," "force," "strength" In 7A, this is translated idiomatically as "capability." Another example would be jīngjì lìliàng, "economic capability." Here are more examples (for the third one, you need to know tuánjié, "unity"):

Wǒmende lìliàng bú gòu, méiyǒu
bànfǎ bāngzhu nǐ. Our power is insufficient; there is
no way we can help you.

Dǎ zìde shíhou, bù néng yòng tài
dà lìliàng. When typing, one should not hit
too hard.

Tuánjié jiù shì lìliàng. Unity is strength.

Shénme lìliàng yě bù néng bǎ
wǒmen fēnkāi. No force can separate us.

jīn...lái: "during the last..."

Jīn sāntiān lái, Xiǎo Huá hǎo-
xiàng xīnlì hěn bù gāoxìng. For the last three days, Xiǎo Huá
has seemed very unhappy.

Jīn jīnián lái, tā biànhuà hěn
dà. In recent years, she has changed
a great deal.

Jīn bǎinián lái de Zhōngguó lìshǐ
hěn yǒu yìsì. Chinese history of the past hundred
years is very interesting.

qīng: "to be light" in weight

Xiāngzi bú zhòng, hěn qīng. The suitcase isn't heavy; it's light.

Qīng gōngyè gōngren méiyǒu zhòng
gōngyè gōngrende shōurù duō. Light industrial workers do not
have as high wages as heavy
industrial workers.

8. A: Tīngshuō èrshinián qián yǒu hěn duō niánqīng rén dào le nèige méiyǒu rén de qióng dìfang. I heard that twenty years ago a lot of young people came to that poor and unpopulated place.
- B: Shì a! Kěshì xiànzài zhèngfǔ kényi fāngxīn le. Nèige dìfang yǐjīng suàn jiànshède bú cuò le. Yes, but now the government need not worry anymore. That place can be considered to have been pretty well built up.

Notes on No. 8

èrshinián qián: Qián is a short form of yǐqián. You can often substitute qián for yǐqián when it comes at the end of a time phrase. Both words are commonly used in conversation and writing. More examples:

Wǒ lái Měiguó qián, shénme yě méi zhǔnbèi. Before I came to America, I didn't prepare anything.

Yíge yuè qián, zhèige dàlóu hái méi gǎiwán, xiànzài yǐjīng zhù rén le. A month ago, this building wasn't even finished yet, and now there are already people living in it.

qióng: "to be poor"

Qióng bú shì wèntí, lǎn cái shì wèntí. Being poor isn't a problem; it's being lazy that's a problem.

fāngxīn: "to be unworried," "to be at ease," "to put one's mind at ease" (literally, "put down the heart")

Nǐ bàn shì, wǒ fāngxīn. With you in charge (literally, "[If] you handle affairs"), I am at ease. (reportedly said by Máo Zédōng to Huà Guófēng before Máo died in 1976)

Nǐ fāngxīn hǎo le, wǒ huì xiǎng bànfade. Don't you worry. I'll think of a way.

Nǐ yíge rén qù, wǒ bú fāngxīn. I'll worry if you go alone.

suàn: "to be counted as," "to be considered as," "can be regarded as" This verb is used much more often than these English translations would seem to indicate. To really get the feel of what suàn means, you have to look at it in context. Here are some examples (the translations attempt to be idiomatic):

A: Hángzhōu suàn bu suan gōngyè chéngshì? Would you say that Hángzhōu is an industrial city?

B: Bú suàn, suàn yóulǎn chéngshì. No, it's a tourist city.

Zènme duō cài, sānshikuài qián bú suàn guǐ. Thirty dollars isn't expensive for so much food.

Nǐ děi zìjǐ huì shuō nǐ xiǎngde
dōngxi cái suàn huì shuō
Zhōngwén.

You have to be able to say what you
want to say before you can be con-
sidered to speak Chinese.

A: Tàì xièxiè le!

Thank you so much!

B: Nā suàn shénme! Péngyǒu ma!

It's nothing (literally, "What can that
be considered")! We're friends,
after all!

Fāzhǎn bǐjiào kuàide yào suàn
méitàn gōngyè hé jīxiè gōngyè.

One would have to say the coal indus-
try and the machine industry are
the most rapidly developing
industries.

Tiānjīn suīrán bú suàn zuì yǒu
míngde chéngshì, dànshì měi-
nián yě yǒu bù shǎo rén qù
cānguān.

Although one would not call Tiānjīn
a very famous city, quite a few
people go there to visit every year.

Shuō zhèizhǒng huà hái suàn shì
wàijiāoguān!

What kind of diplomat talks like that!
(literally, "(In view of the fact
that he) says such things, can he
still be considered a diplomat?!")

Zhèi yě suàn Běijīng kǎoyā ma?
bú duì ma!

They call this Peking duck? The
flavor is all wrong!

Zài zhèi jǐge xuéshēnglǐ, tā hái
suàn shì hǎode ne, kěshì dōu
bú tài hǎo.

Of these students, I suppose he's
the best, but none of them is
very good.

9. A: Zǒngde lái shuō ba, zhèige
chéngshìde biànhuà shì
hěn dàde.

Generally speaking, the changes in
this city have been great.

B: Shì a, zhàn zài shì zhōngxīn-
de dǎlóushang kànkan, wǒ
dōu bú rènshi le!

Yes, standing on top of the build-
ing in the center of the city,
looking out, I don't recognize
anything anymore!

Notes on No. 9

zǒngde lái shuō: "generally speaking," "on the whole"

Zǒngde lái shuō, wǒmen xuéxiào
xuéshēngde shuǐpíng dōu shì
hěn gāode.

Generally speaking, our school's
students are of a very high
caliber.

Zǒngde lái shuō, nǐmende gōngzuò
gāode bú cuò.

On the whole, you did a good
job.

A similar phrase using the pattern ...lái shuō is yìbān lái shuō, which means

"generally speaking," "ordinarily":

Yìbān lái shuō, wǒ měige yuè qù
kàn ta yíci. Generally speaking I go see him
once a month.

Yìbān lái shuō, Huáshèngdùnde
chūntiān hěn shūfu. Generally speaking, spring in Wash-
ington is very comfortable.

Yìbān lái shuō, Zhōngguó rén
zǒngshì hěn kèqi. Generally speaking, Chinese people
are always polite.

ba: This is a new use of ba for you. It is used in colloquial speech to mark a pause in the sentence, setting off the topic which precedes it (in this case, zǒngde lái shuō).

Zhèige rén ba, bú shì zuò wài-
jiāoguānde cáiliào. This guy--he isn't foreign service
officer material.

biànhuà: "change(s)" This is only used as a noun.

Shínián bú jiàn, tā biànhuà hǎo
dà. He hadn't seen her in ten years, and
she had changed a great deal.

shì: "city," "municipality" Used mostly in reference to the official city level of government, e.g., Dàqǐng shì, "the city of Dàqǐng," Běijīng shì, "Běijīng municipality," shì bānde, "city-run," yánhǎi gèshěng, shì, "the coastal provinces and cities." Shì is also used in a few set phrases like shì zhōngxīn, "center of the city," "downtown."

zhōngxīn: "center," "heart," "core," "hub"

Běijīng shì Zhōngguóde zhèngzhì,
wénhuà zhōngxīn. Běijīng is the political and
cultural center of China.

Guǎngzhōu shì yíge shāngyè
zhōngxīn. Guǎngzhōu is a commercial center.

Wǒmen hái méiyǒu tándao wèntíde
zhōngxīn. We haven't yet touched on the
core of the question.

Zhōngxīn can also be used before a noun to modify it. It then translates as "central":

Zhèixiē niánde zhōngxīn gōngzuò
shì gāo jīngjì jiànshè. The central task now and in the
coming years is to engage in
economic construction.

10. A: Xūduō jīngjì lìliàng bǐjiǎo
ruòde guójiā hěn gǎnxiè
 Zhōngguóde bāngzhǔ. Many countries with relatively weak economies are grateful for China's help.
- B: Wǒmen yě shì yíge fāzhǎn
 zhōngde guójiā, kěshì wǒ-
 men hěn gāoxìng bāng qítā
 guójiā gāo jīngjì jiànshè. We're still a developing country, too, but we're happy to help other countries in economic construction.

Notes on No. 10

ruò: "to be weak" (people or countries)

gǎnxiè: "to be grateful (for)"

Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ hěn gǎnxiè
 wàiguó zhuānjiā duì Zhōngguó-
 de bāngzhū. The Chinese government is very grateful for the help foreign experts give to China.

Tā fēicháng gǎnxiè péngyoumen
 duì tāde guānxīn. He is very grateful for his friends' concern.

Fēicháng gǎnxiè. Thank you so much. (formal)

bāng: (1) "to help, to assist" This is a less formal synonym of bāngzhū.

Bié jí, wǒ lái bāng nǐ. Take it easy, I'll help you.

(2) "for (someone)," "as a help to (someone)"

Nǐ qù bāng wǒ ná xìn, hǎo ma? Would you go get the mail for me, please?

Bāng wǒ ná yíxià hǎo ma? Would you please hold this for me a second?

In most cases, the context will clarify whether bāng is meant as "to help someone do something" or as "to do something for someone," but ambiguity may arise:

Tā bāng wǒ zuò fàn. She helps me cook.
 OR She cooks for me.

Using yìqǐ, "together," can remove the ambiguity: Tā bāng wǒ yìqǐ zuò fàn can only mean "She helps me cook," meaning that the two people make dinner together; it could not possibly mean "She cooks for me."

qítā: "other," "else," "the rest"

Zhèixiē shū wǒ jiù kànle liǎng-
 běn, qítā hái méi kàn. I've only read two of these books. I haven't read the others yet.

Nǐ qù Shànghǎi, qítā rén ne? You're going to Shànghǎi; what about the others?

Nǐ hái xiǎng qù shénme qítāde
dìfang, wǒmen zài zuò ānpái.

If you want to go to any other places,
we'll make more arrangements.

Chúle zhèige shì zhǔyào wèntí,
qítā dōu méi guānxi.

Besides this, which is the main
issue, the rest doesn't matter.

Wǒ zhǐ juéde bù hǎo yìsi, qítā
méiyǒu shénme.

I just feel embarrassed, nothing
else.

Unit 5, Review Dialogue

In the waiting room of Běijīng Railroad Station, an American engineer, Mr. Simms (A), is standing in front of the railroad map of China, trying to locate a city. Zhū Wényà (B) of the China Travel Service enters the room with a train schedule in her hand.

- B: Sàmǔsī Xiānsheng, nín yàode shí-
jiānbǎo. Mr. Simms, the schedule you asked for.
- A: Ò, xièxie, xièxie. Yǒu Zhōngguó
zì, yǒu pīnyīn, hǎojiē, nǐmende
gōngzuò sùdu bǐ yǐqián kuàiduō le. Thank you, thank you. It has Chinese characters and Pinyin, that's great. You people are much faster on the job than you used to be.
- B: Lǚxíngshède gōngzuò yě děi xiān-
dāihuà ma! Duì le, wǒ gāngcái jīn-
laide shíhou, nín hǎoxiàng zài
zhǎo shénme. Wǒ yěxǔ kéyǐ bāng
nín zhǎoyizhǎo? The Travel Service has to modernize its work too, after all! Oh yes— just now when I came in, you seemed to be looking for something. Perhaps I could help you?
- A: Nǐ kàn, Dàqǐng bú shì zài Hēi-
lóngjiāng ma? Wǒ zěnme zhǎole bàn-
tiān méi zhǎodào ne? Look. Isn't Dàqǐng in Hēilóngjiāng? How come I've been looking for it for so long and haven't found it?
- B: Ò, nín zài biānjīngshang zhǎo
dāngrán zhǎobudào le, Dàqǐng zài
Hēilóngjiāngde zhōngxīn, zài zhèr
ne! Oh, of course you won't find it if you look near the border. Dàqǐng is in the center of Hēilóngjiāng. Here it is!
- A: Òu! Zài zhèr. Zài liùshí nián-
dài, qīshí niándài, zhèr shì yíge
bǐjiào tèbiéde jīngjī dìqū. Oh, here it is. In the sixties and seventies this was a rather special economic region.
- B: Nín shuōde duì. Zhèige dìfang
jīngguòle chābuduō èrshínián
jiànshè, fāzhǎchéngle yíge yǒu
qīshíwàn rénkǒude gōngyè chéngshì.
Bāshí niándài chū yǒu chénglǐle
Dàqǐng Shì Rénmín Zhèngfǔ. That's right. It went through about twenty years of construction to develop into an industrial city of 700,000. Then in the early eighties they established the People's Government of the City of Dàqǐng.
- A: Zài shì zhèngfǔde língdǎoxià,
Dàqǐngde jiànshè sùdu dàgài gèng
kuài le. Zuìjīn qítāde gōngyè yǒu
méiyǒu shénme xīnde fāzhǎn? Under the leadership of the city government, Dàqǐng is probably being built even faster. Has there also been growth in other industries recently?
- B: Fāzhǎn bǐjiào kuàide yào suàn
méitàn gōngyè hé jīxiè gōngyè le. The coal industry and the machine industry would have to be counted among the more rapidly developing.
- A: Méitàn shēngchǎn zài Zhōngguóde
zhòng gōngyèlǐ zhàn hěn zhòngyàode
dìwei, Dōngběi yìzhí shì méitàn Coal production has a very important place in China's heavy industry. Manchuria has always had a very high

chǎnliàng hěn gāode dìqū.

coal output.

B: Duì, Dōngběi méitàn zīyuán bù shǎo, shì zhōngyàode kuàngū. Sà-mǔsī Xiānsheng, nín yìzhí hěn guānxīn wǒmende jīngjì jiànshè a!

Yes, Manchuria has very large coal reserves. It's an important mining region. You've always been concerned about our economic construction, Mr. Simms!

A: Shì a, wǒ shì gōngchéngshī, wǒ yìzhí fēicháng zhùyì Zhōngguó jīngjì jiànshède biànhuà, wǒ xīwàng Zhōngguó kuài yìdiǎnr jiànshèchéng yíge gōngyèhuàde guójiā.

Yes. I'm an engineer, and I've always paid attention to the changes in China's economic construction. I hope China will be built into an industrialized country very soon.

B: Xièxie nín. Xiànzài yǒu hěn duō wàiguo péngyou guānxīn wǒmende jiànshè, wǒmen shì fēicháng gǎnxiè-de. Zhōngguó hái shì yíge hěn qióngde guójiā, xūyào shìjiè gèguó zhuānjiāmende bāngzhù.

Thank you. A lot of foreign friends are concerned about our construction now, and we're very grateful for it. China is still a poor country. We need help from experts of every country in the world.

A: Nín tài kèqǐ le, nǐmen gèfāngmiànde fāzhǎn sùdu hái shì xiāngdāng kuàide. Èrqiè, zhōngdiǎn fāzhǎnde dìqū yě bù shǎo, wǒ xiǎng, nǐmen yào zhōngdiǎn fāzhǎnde gōngyèqū qǐmǎ yǒu shíge.

You're too polite. You're still developing quite rapidly in all areas. And furthermore, you have quite a few key development regions. I believe there are at least ten industrial regions on which you are focusing development.

B: Shì, yǒu shíge.

Yes, there are ten.

A: Chūle Běijīng, Tiānjīn, Shànghǎi, Dàqǐng yīwài, Nèiměng, Shǎnxī, Sìchuān, zhèixiē dìfāng zài zuìjìn shíniánli dōu huì yǒu hěn dàde biànhuà, duì bu duì?

Besides Běijīng, Tiānjīn, Shànghǎi, and Dàqǐng, Inner Mongolia, Shǎnxī and Sìchuān will all experience great changes in the next ten years, don't you think?

B: Nín bié wàngle, wǒmende yánhǎi yídài, zuìjìn jīnián jìnbu hěn kuài o! Tèbié shì Guǎngdōng.

Don't forget that our coastal regions have made rapid progress in the last ten years, especially Guǎngdōng.

A: Guǎngdōngde qīng gōngyè yìzhí shì bú huàide.

Guǎngdōng's light industry has always been pretty good.

B: Zuìjìn, nàrde shíyóu gōngyè yě gāode xiāngdāng bú cuò, nín méiyǒu tīngshuō ma?

Recently, their petroleum industry has been doing rather well, haven't you heard?

A: Tīngshuō le. Wǒ zěnme huì wàngle Zhōngguó hǎiwānde shíyóu ne? Hái yǒu, Yúnnándè tèdiǎn shì shénme ne?

Oh, of course. How could I forget China's gulf oil? And what is the distinguishing feature of Yúnnán?

- B: Shi jīnshǔ gōngyè. The metal industry.
- A: Nǐ kànkan, Zhōngguóde qīngkuàng bú cuò ma! Nánfāngde jīnshǔ gōngyè fāzhǎnde gèng kuài le. Look, China's situation is pretty. The metal industry of the south is developing even more quickly.
- A: Zhèi shì zhēnde. Suǐrán wǒmen xiānzāide jìshù lìliang hái hěn ruò, kěshì wǒmen yídìng děi nǚlǐ jiākuài fāzhǎnde sùdu. That's true. Although our technical capability is still weak, we must work hard to speed our development.
- A: Méi wèntí, jǐshínián yǐhòude Zhōngguó yídìng kényi biàncheng yíge jīngjī qiángguó. That's no problem. In a few decades I'm sure China will become an economic power.
- B: Xièxie nín, búguò yěxǔ xūyào gèng cháng yidiǎnrde shíjiān. Thank you, but perhaps it will take more time than that.
- A: Zhèi bù yídìng, yěxǔ bú yào tài chángde shíjiān. Bǐfāng shuō shíyóu ba! Yī jiǔ wǔ líng nián, nǐmende shíyóu chǎnliàng zài shìjièshàng zhān dìèrshíjiǔwèi, xiānzài nē, xiānzài shì dìbāwèi la! Not necessarily, maybe it won't be too long. Oil, for example. In 1950 you were twenty-ninth in the world in oil production, and now--now you're in eighth place!
- B: Shíyóu gōngyè tèbié yidiǎnr, pǔbiānde lái shuō, wǒmen hái yǒu bù shǎo wèntí, zài xǔduō fāngmiàn wǒmen hái děi xué. The oil industry is a little special. Generally speaking, we still have a lot of problems. We still have to learn in a lot of areas.
- A: Bú yào kèqì, bù guǎn shì shénme jìshù wèntí, rúguǒ shì wǒ kényi bāng mángde jiù qǐng gào su wo. Don't be polite. No matter what the technical problem, if it's something I can help with, please let me know.
- B: Tài xièxie nín le. Shàngcì nín bú shì shuō xiǎng duō cānguān jǐge gōngyèqū ma? Thank you so much. Remember you said last time that you would like to visit more industrial regions?
- A: Shì a, yǒu méiyǒu kěnéng? Right. Does it look possible?
- B: Yǒu, língdǎo zhèng zài ānpái. Nín fàngxīn ba! Yes, my superiors are arranging it right now. Don't worry!
- A: Tài xièxie nǐmen le. Thank you so much.
- B: Shíjiān bù zǎo le, wǒmen zhǔnbèi shàng chē ba! It's almost time. Let's get ready to board the train.
- A: Hǎo, zǒu! All right, let's go!

Unit 5, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, a Chinese engineer meets an American guest in the First Heavy-Duty Machine Factory in Fùlǎěrjī, Hēilóngjiāng.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

ràng nín jiǔ děng le	I've kept you waiting
zǒnggōngchéngshī	chief engineer
jiànli	to establish
Sūlián	Soviet Union
huā	to spend, to expend
chǎng	factory

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What does Mr. Sūn write about?
2. When was the factory founded?
3. How much money did the government spend on the factory?
4. When did Mr. Sūn work there?
5. What prediction does Mr. Sūn make about the factory?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American visitor talks to a young Chinese technician in his Běijīng Hotel room.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó	the People's Republic of China
guómín jīngjì	national economy
gēnzhe	along with, in the wake of
jiù ná Sìchuan lái shuō	take Sìchuan, for example

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why did the American visitor want to talk to the Chinese technician?
2. How have light and heavy industry changed since 1949?
3. What is the policy with regard to agricultural modernization?
4. What economic problem did Sìchuan face in the seventies? Why?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

This dialogue takes place in Shànghǎi's Industrial Exhibition Hall. An American talks to an exhibit guide about light and textile industry.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

fǎngzhī gōngyè	textile industry
nílóng	nylon
huàxiān	synthetic fiber
nèidì	interior region (of a country)
Jiāngsū	(coastal province, formerly spelled Kiangsu)

Questions for Exercise 4

1. What does the the exhibit guide say about the development of the textile industry?
2. Where did China's light industry begin?
3. What industry has developed in Jiāngsū province?
4. What does the exhibit guide say will occur in the next few years?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

In the foreign visitors' reception room of the First Heavy-Duty Machine Factory in Fùlǎěrjī, Hēilóngjiāng, an American guest (A) is sitting on the sofa, leafing through a copy of the magazine China Reconstructs. A Chinese engineer (B) walks in, carrying a briefcase under his arm.

- B: Duìbuqǐ, duìbuqǐ, ràng nín jiù dēng le. I'm sorry, I'm sorry, I've kept you waiting.
- A: Méi shenme, wǒ lái le bú dào shí-fēn zhōng. Nǐ jiù shì Sūn Zǒng-gōngchéngshī ba? That's all right, I've been here less than ten minutes. You must be Chief Engineer Sūn?
- B: Wǒ jiù shì. That's right.
- A: Sūn Xiānsheng, hěn zǎo yǐqián wǒ jiù kànguo nín de wénzhāng, nín duì jīxiè gōngyè de yánjiū zài guówài shì hěn yǒu míngde. Jīntiān néng kàndào nín, kàndào nǐmende chǎng, wǒ hěn gāoxìng. Mr. Sūn, I read your writings a long time ago. Your research in the machine industry is very famous abroad. I'm very happy to be able to meet you today and see the factory.
- B: Xièxie nín. Zhèige chǎng shì wǔshí niándài chū jiànliè. Thank you. This factory of ours was founded in the early fifties.
- A: Nà shì Xīn Zhōngguó chénglì yǐ-hòu bù jiǔde shì. Then it wasn't too long after New China was established.
- B: Shìde, shì zài dìyíge wǔnián jīhuàzhōng jiànliède. Yes. It was set up during the first five-year plan.
- A: Shì Sūlián bāng nǐmen jiànshède ma? Did the Soviet Union help you construct it?
- B: Bú shì, wánquán shì Zhōngguó rén-mín zìjǐ jiànshède. Nèige shíhou zhèngfǔ yòngle liùge yì lái jiànshè zhèige chǎng. No, it was constructed completely by the Chinese people themselves. At that time the government spent six hundred million to construct this factory.
- A: Liùge yì? Six hundred million?
- B: Liù yì Rénmínbì. Nèige shíhou, wǒmen hěn qióng, Hēilóngjiāng yòu shì yíge biānjiāng dìqū, wǒmen zhēn shì lián qǐmǎde jìshù tiáojiàn dōu méiyǒu. Kěshì zhèige chǎng jiù zài Dǎngde lǐngdǎo hé dàjiāde nǔlì xià, fāzhǎnqilai le. Six hundred million People's Currency. At that time we were very poor, and Hēilóngjiāng being a border region on top of that, we didn't even have the minimum technical conditions. But under the leadership of the Party and with the efforts of everyone, we are developing.

- A: Tīngshuō zài wǔshí niándài hé liùshí niándài zhèige chǎng zài Zhōngguóde zhòng gōngyèlì zhàn hěn zhōngyào de dìwei. Nèige shíhou, nín zài zhèige chǎng ma?
- B: Zài. Cóng zhèige chǎng chénglì de nèi yìtiān yìzhí dào Yī jiǔ liù liù nián, wǒ dōu zài zhèige chǎng.
- A: Yǐhòu nín líkāi le?
- B: Shìde. Yìzhí dào Yī jiǔ qī qī nián wǒ cái huí lái.
- A: Tīngshuō nèige shíhou zhèige chǎng de máfan bù shǎo.
- B: Hēilóngjiāng suǐrán bú suàn máfan zuì duō de dìqū, dànshì Yī jiǔ qī qī nián de shíhou zhèige chǎng de shēngchǎn chābuduō shì cóng líng kāishǐ.
- A: Nà yào huā hěn dà de lìliang.
- B: Yìdiǎnr yě bú cuò. Wǒmen huā le hěn dà de lìliang jiànshè kuāngqū, hé zhèige chǎng. Zài qítā de wèntíshàng wǒmen yě yòng le bù shǎo de lìliang.
- A: Shénmeyàng de wèntí ne?
- B: Dàjiā de shēnghuó wèntí, bǐfāng shuō chí fān wèntí, zhù fāngzide wèntí shenmede.
- A: Xiànzài zěnmeyàng le?
- B: Zǒngde lái shuō xiànzài dōu gāo de bú cuò le. Wǒ xiǎng zài guò shínián, dào jiǔshí niándài, wǒmen zhèige chǎng huì zài quánguó gōngyè shēngchǎnzhòng zhàn gèng zhòngyào de dìwei.
- A: Hǎojíle.
- B: Xiànzài wǒ jiù péi nín qù cānguān ba, wǒmen yìbiān zǒu yìbiān tán, hǎo bu hǎo?
- A: Hǎo!
- I understand that in the fifties and sixties this factory held an important place in China's heavy industry. Were you here at that time?
- Yes. I was at this factory from the day it was established up until 1966.
- And then you left?
- Right. I didn't come back until 1977.
- I hear that at that time this factory had a lot of trouble.
- Hēilóngjiāng wasn't one of the regions with the most trouble, but in 1977 this factory had to start production just about from scratch.
- That must have taken a great effort.
- Absolutely. We put a lot of effort into building up mining areas and this factory. We also expended a lot of effort on other problems.
- What kinds of problems?
- Problems of everyday living, for example eating, housing, and so on.
- And how are things now?
- Generally speaking, things are pretty good now. I think in another ten years, by the nineties, our factory will occupy an even more important position in the nation's industrial production.
- That's great.
- Why don't I show you around now. We can talk as we go, all right?
- All right.

B: Qǐng.

After you.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American visitor (A) is reading in his room at the Běijīng Hotel when a young Chinese technician (B) who has been accompanying the American's tour group knocks at the door.

B: Kéyǐ jìnlai ma?

May I come in?

A: Qǐng jìn, kuài qǐng jìnlai zuò.

Come in, please come in and sit down.

B: Nín zhǎo wo yǒu shì?

Was there something in particular you wanted to see me about?

A: Yìdiǎnr xiǎo shì, wǒ xiǎng hé ni tántan. Wǒ kànle nǐmen zhèipiān wénzhāng, tímu shì "Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguóde Sānshínián." Wǒ xiǎng jīngguòle zhèi sānshínián-de jiànshè, Zhōngguó jīngjì shuǐpíng yǒule hěn dàde tígāo, biànhuà zhēnshì bù xiǎo.

Just a small matter I wanted to talk with you about. I've read that article of yours called "Thirty Years of the People's Republic of China." I think that after the last thirty years of construction, China's economic level has risen a great deal. The changes have been pretty big.

B: Biànhuà shì bù xiǎo, kěshì mùqián wǒmen de jīngjì lìliang hái shì bǐ xūduō xiānjìn guójiā ruòde duō, hái yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò yào zuò.

The changes are big, but at present our economic power is still much weaker than many advanced countries. We still have a lot of work to do.

A: Wénzhānglǐ shuō, cóng shēngchǎnshang kàn, Yī jiǔ sī jiǔ niánde qīng zhōng gōngyè zài guómín jīngjìlǐ zhǐ zhàn bǎifēnzhī sānshí, xiānzài yǐjīng zhàn bǎifēnzhī qīshíwǔ. Zhèiyang fāzhǎnxiàqù, nóngyè, qīng gōngyè, zhōng gōngyède guānxi zěnmeyàng ne?

In the article it says that from the point of view of production, in 1949 light and heavy industry only occupied thirty percent in the national economy, but now they occupy seventy-five percent. If things keep developing this way, what will happen to the relationship between agriculture, light industry, and heavy industry?

B: Zhèiyidiǎn, wǒmen hěn fāngxīn. Xiānzài, gāohǎo Sìge Xiàndàihuà shì quánguó rénmin de zhōngxīn gōngzuò. Zài Sìge Xiàndàihuàlǐ, nóngyè xiàndàihuà shì dìyījiàn dà shì.

We're not at all worried about that. Right now, doing a good job of the Four Modernizations is the central task of the people of the whole country. In the Four Modernizations, agricultural modernization is the first big job.

A: Zhèige zhèngcè shì duìde. Jìn jīnián lái nóngyè yǒule fāzhǎn, qīng gōngyè, zhōng gōngyè cái néng gēnzhe fāzhǎn. Nóngyè xiàndàihuà

That policy is right. It has only been because there has been development in agriculture in the last few years that light and heavy industry

shì yíge jīngjì qiángguó zuì qǐmǎ-
de tiáojiàn.

have been able to develop along with
it. Agricultural modernization is
the minimum requirement for an econ-
omic power.

B: Shì a! Jiù nà Sìchuān lái shuō,
zīyuán nàme duō, kěshì zài qīshí
niándài, gōngyè shēngchǎn jiù shì
shàngbuqù, hái bù shì yīnwèi nóng-
yè shēngchǎn yǒu wèntí.

That's right. Take Sìchuān, for
example. It's so full of resources,
yet in the seventies, industrial
production just couldn't go up: again,
it was on account of problems with
agricultural production.

A: Shì ma. Sìchuān rénkǒu zài quán-
guó zhàn dìyīwèi, chǐ fàn wèntí
shì ge dà wèntí.

Sure. The population of Sìchuān is
in first place in the whole country.
The food problem is a big one.

B: Jìn jīnián, Sìchuān qíngkuàng
biànhuà hěn dà. Nín zhèicì yǒu
jīhuì qù Sìchuān ma?

In recent years there have been big
changes in the situation in Sìchuān.
Will you have the chance to go to
Sìchuān this trip?

A: Yǒu, nín ne, nín yǒu méiyǒu shí-
jiān qù?

Yes, and you? Do you have the
time to go?

B: Língdǎo hái méi shuō, búguò wǒ
xiǎng dàgài yǒu jīhuì, cóngqián wǒ
zài Sìchuān gōngzuòguò liǎngnián,
yěxǔ wǒ kěyǐ gěi nǐmen jièshào
jièshào.

The leadership hasn't said yet, but
I think I'll probably have the chance.
I once worked in Sìchuān for two
years. Maybe I could fill you in on
it.

B: Nà tài gǎnxiè le. Guānyú wǒ
gāngcái kànde nèipiān wénzhāng,
wǒ juéde hěn yǒu yìsi, búguò
chángcháng yǒu xiǎode wèntí, děi
máfan nǐmen.

We'd be so grateful if you could.
About that article I just read: I
find it very interesting, but I often
have little questions I have to
bother you with.

B: Méi wèntí, wǒ hěn gāoxìng hé nín
duō tántan.

That's no problem. It's my pleasure
to talk with you.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

This conversation takes place in the Shànghǎi Industrial Exhibition
Hall. An American (A) visiting the Hall of Light Industry and Textile Industry
talks with one of the exhibit guides (B).

B: Nín hái yǒu shénme wèntí ma?

Do you have any more questions?

A: Yǒu yíge xiǎo wèntí. Shànghǎide
jīqì fǎngzhī gōngyè shì shénme
shíhòu kāishǐde?

I have one small question. When did
Shànghǎi's machine textile industry
first come into being?

B: Hěn zǎo yǐqián jiù yǒule.

It started a long time ago.

A: Nàme, zhème duō nián lái, zài jìshù fāngmiàn de fāzhǎn shì bu shì hěn kuài ne?

Well, over all these years, has the technological development been very rapid?

B: Wǒ xiǎng chuántǒng fāngzhǐ gōngyè fāzhǎn de bú màn, kěshì nílóng, huàxiān yílei de, fāzhǎn de bú gòu kuài.

I'd say the traditional textile industry has developed rather rapidly, but such things as nylon and synthetic fibers haven't developed fast enough.

A: Wǒ tīngshuō, Zhōngguó de qīng gōngyè guòqù dōu zài yánhǎi, xiàng Tiānjīn, Shànghǎi, Guǎngdōng yí dài. Xiānzài nèidì de qīngxíng shì bu shì biànhuà yě hěn dà le ne?

I understand that China's light industry used to be all on the coast, for example in the region of Tiānjīn, Shànghǎi, and Guǎngdōng. Has the situation in the interior also changed a great deal now?

A: Shì de, gèdì qīngkuàng bù tóng, búguò yǒu yí ge qīngkuàng shì gèdì dōu yǒu de.

Yes. The situation differs from place to place, but there's one thing that's the same everywhere.

A: Shénme qīngkuàng?

What's that?

B: Cóngqián shì nóngyè qū de dìfang, xiānzài yǒu hěn duō dōu fāzhǎn qilai le, yǒule qīng gōngyè, yǒule hái yǒule zhòng gōngyè.

A lot of places that used to be agricultural regions have now started to develop, and have light industry, or even heavy industry.

A: Shì a! Jiāngsū yě shì yíyàng ma, dàde jīnshǔ gōngyè yě fāzhǎn qilai le.

Yes! Jiāngsū is the same. A large metal industry has developed there.

B: Zài guò jǐnián hǎiwān shíyóu gōngyè dà fāzhǎn, Shànghǎi, Tiānjīn, Guǎngdōng, Guǎngxī yí dài jiù gèng rènao le.

In another few years the gulf oil industry will develop greatly. Then Shànghǎi, Tiānjīn, Guǎngdōng, and Guǎngxī will be even busier.

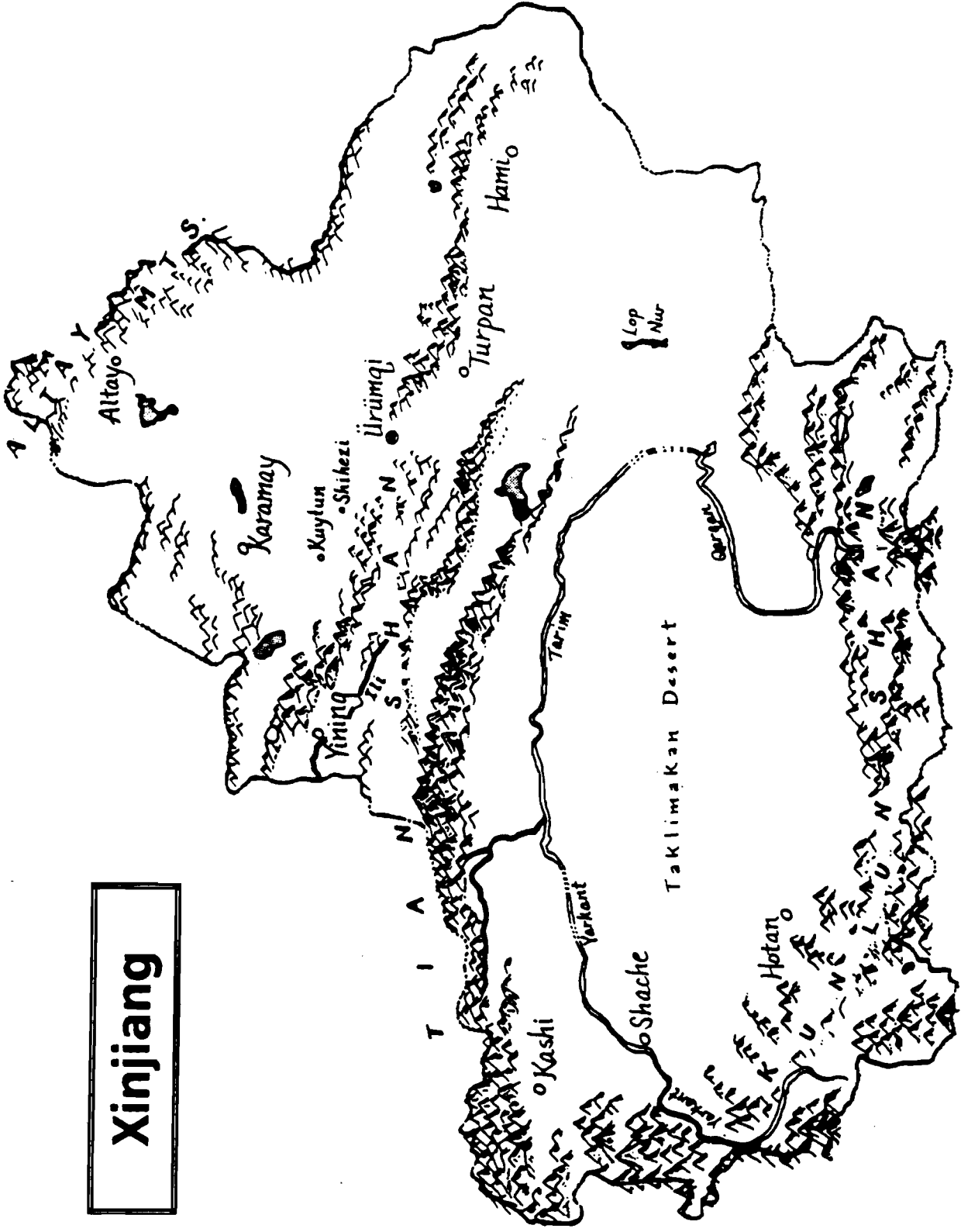
A: Zhēnde, dào nèige shíhou, Shànghǎi jiù gèng piàoliang le. Wǒ yíding yào zài lái cānguān.

Really, when that time comes, Shànghǎi will be even prettier. I have to come back to visit it again.

B: Hǎo a! Huānyíng nín zài lái!

Fine! You'll be most welcome!

Xinjiang



Unit 6, Reference List

1. A: Hànyǔ hěn fùzá, xuéqilai dàgài hěn nán?!
- B: Fàngxīn ba! Wǒ xiāngxìn nǐ kéyì xuéde hěn hǎo.
2. A: Zhōngdōngde Yīsīlánjiào hé Xīnjiāngde Yīsīlánjiào shì bu shì hěn bù yíyàng?
- B: Zhèi shì yíge xiāngdāng fùzáde wèntí, wǒmen kéyì tǎolùn tǎolùn.
3. A: Xīnjiāng hé nèidì shì shénme shíhou tǒngyīde?
- B: Ng...diyíci tǒngyī chābuduō shì gōngyuán qián liùshí-niánde shíhou.
4. A: Jiěfàng Zhànzhēngde shíhou, Jiěfàngjūn jiěfàngle Xīnjiāng, shì bu shì?
- B: Xīnjiāng shì héping jiěfàngde, Jiěfàngjūn shì sìjiǔ-nián dào Xīnjiāng qùde.
5. A: Wǔge zìzhìqūde shēnghuó qíngkuàng hé nèidì chà hěn duō ma?
- B: Ng, zhǔyào shì jiāotōng bù fāngbiàn. Biéde shēnghuó fāngmian me, yě chà yídiǎnr.
6. A: Tāmen shì dào Shànghǎi qù chū chāi ma?
- B: Bù, bú shì fàng jià le ma? Yǒude gānbude jiā zài Shànghǎi, tāmen huí jiā qù kànkàn.
- Chinese is very complicated. It must be very difficult to study?!
- Don't worry! I'm convinced you can learn it very well.
- Is the Islam of the Middle East very different from the Islam of Xīnjiāng?
- This is a very difficult question. We can discuss it.
- When was Xīnjiāng united with the interior?
- Uh...the first time they were unified was in about 60 B.C.
- During the War of Liberation, the PLA liberated Xīnjiāng, right?
- Xīnjiāng was peacefully liberated. The PLA went to Xīnjiāng in 1949.*
- Are living conditions in the five autonomous regions very different from those in the interior?
- Well, it's mainly that transportation is difficult. As for other aspects of daily life, they're somewhat below standard too.
- Did they go to Shànghǎi on business?
- No. We're on vacation now, remember? Some of the cadres' families are in Shànghǎi, so they went home to visit.

*The tapes for this unit incorrectly give the date as 1950. The PLA entered Xīnjiāng in October 1949, and the whole province was "liberated" by April 1950.

7. A: Tz! Zhèitiáo dītǎn zhēn měi! Shì Wéiwú'ěr dītǎn ma? Ah! This carpet is just beautiful! Is it a Uygur carpet?
- B: Shì. Jiù shì zài nǐ zuótiān cānguānde nèige gōngchǎng zuòde. Yes. It was made in the factory you visited yesterday.
8. A: Nǐ kàn, tiān gāng liàng, Wéiwú'ěr nóngmín jiù kāishǐ gōngzuò le. Look, it just got light and the Uygur peasants have already started to work.
- B: Gèzú rénmin dōu zài dà gāo shèhuìzhūyì ma! Sure, the people of all nationalities are going all out with socialism!
9. A: Tīngshuō jǐwèi gōngren jiāo gěi zhèngfǔ jǐběn hěn lǎode shū, nǐmen kànguo le ma? I hear that some workers handed a few very old books over to the government. Have you seen them?
- B: Kànguo le. Dōu shì guānyú zhōngzú wèntí, lìshǐ wèntíde, hěn yǒu yìsi. Yes. They're about racial and historical problems. They're very interesting.
10. A: Zhèige dìqūde xùmù yè nàme fādá! This region's livestock farming is so well developed!
- B: Suóyì wǒmen zài zhèr bànle hǎojǐge dītǎnchǎng. That's why we've set up a lot of carpet factories here.
11. A: Nǐmende wénzì nàme nán! Gāo wénhuà jiāoliú duō bù róngyì. Your system of writing is so hard! It makes cultural exchange so difficult!
- B: Shéi shuōde, wǒmende wénzì bú shì zài gǎi ma? Yuè gǎi yuè jiǎndān ma! Says who! Aren't we changing our writing? The more we change it the simpler it is.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on tape)

12. biānjiāng border area; borderland; frontier; frontier region

Unit 6, Vocabulary List

biānjiāng	border area; borderland; drontier; frontier region
chà	to differ; to be inferior, to be poor, to be not up to standard
chǎng	factory, plant
chū chāi	to go away on business
fàng jià	to have vacation
fùzá (fǔzá)	to be complicated
gānbu	cadre
gōngchǎng	factory, mill, plant, works
gōngren	worker
gōngyuán	the common era; A.D.
gōngyuánhòu	A.D.
gōngyuánqián	B.C.
Hànyǔ	the Chinese language
héping	peace; to be peaceful
jiāo	to hand over, to give
-jiào	religion, church (bound form)
jiāoliú	to exchange; exchange
jiāotōng	traffic; transportation; travel
Jiěfàngjūn	(People's) Liberation Army, P.L.A.
liàng	to be light, to be bright
me (ma)	(pause marker)
měi	to be beautiful
nèidī	interior (of a country)
nóngmín	peasant
shāmò	desert
tǎolùn	to discuss
tiān liàng	daybreak, dawn; to become light
tōngyī	to unite, to unify
Tz!	Tsk (clicking sound with several different uses: disappointment, admiration, hesitation, etc.)
Wéiwú'ěr	the Uygur (Uighur) nationality
wénzì	writing, script
xiāngxìn	to believe (in); to trust, to be convinced (that)
xùnmù yè	livestock farming, animal husbandry
Yīslánjiào	the Islamic religion, Islam

zhànzhēng
Zhèjiāng (Zhéjiāng)

Zhōngdōng
zhǒngzú
-zhǔyì
zìzhìqū
-zú

war
(province in eastern China,
formerly spelled Chekiang)
the Middle East
race
-ism, principle (bound form)
autonomous region
nationality (bound form)

Unit 6, Reference Notes

1. A: Hànyǔ hěn fùzá, xuéqilai dāgài hěn nán?!
- Chinese is very complicated. It must be very difficult to study?!
- B: Fàngxīn ba! Wǒ xiāngxìn nǐ kéyǐ xuéde hěn hǎo.
- Don't worry! I'm convinced you can learn it very well.

Notes on No. 1

Hànyǔ: "Chinese language" This is more formal than Zhōngwén.

Shuō Zhōngguó huà bú tài nán, kěshì yào xuéhǎo Hànyǔ jiu bǐjiǎo nán le.

It isn't too hard to speak Chinese, but if you want to master the Chinese language, it is more difficult.

Wǒ liǎngdiǎn zhōng yǒu Hànyǔ kè. I have Chinese class at two.

fùzá: "to be complicated, to be complex" Also pronounced fùzá.

Nà shì yíge fùzáde wèntí. That's a complicated question.

xiāngxìn: (1) "to believe in, to have faith in"

Tā xiāngxìn yíge hěn qíguài de zōngjiào.

He believes in a very strange religion.

Wǒ bù xiāngxìn! I don't believe it!

Yǐqián rénmen bù xiāngxìn zhèi zhǒng shuōfǎ, xiànzài xiāngxìn le.

People didn't used to believe in this explanation, but now they do.

(2) (as used in 1B) "to be convinced, to be certain, to trust that..."

Wǒ xiāngxìn tā yídìng zuòde hǎo.

I'm certain that he will do a good job.

2. A: Zhōngdōngde Yísīlánjiào hé Xīnjiāngde Yísīlánjiào shǐ bu shì hěn bù yíyàng?
- Is the Islam of the Middle East very different from the Islam of Xīnjiāng?

B: Zhèi shì yíge xiāngdāng fùzáde wèntí, wǒmen kéyǐ tǎolùn tǎolùn.

This is a very difficult question. We can discuss it.

Notes on No. 2

Zhōngdōng: "the Middle East"

Zhōngdōng dìqū yǒu hěn duō
guójiā dōu dúlì le.

The Middle East region has many
countries which have become
independent.

Yísilánjiào: "Islam" -Jiào, "religion," goes on the end of words for different religions. The following examples are for comparison, not for memorization:

Tiānzhǔjiào ("heaven-lord-religion")	Catholicism
Xīnjiào ("New-religion")	Protestantism
Yóutāijiào	Judaism
Fójiào	Buddhism
Dàojiào	Taoism (the popular religion, not the philosophy)

Xīnjiāng: The Xīnjiāng Uygur Autonomous Region, formerly known as Sinkiang or Chinese Turkestan, is China's westernmost area. The largest of the country's autonomous regions and provinces, Xīnjiāng makes up one sixth of China's total area. In this vast land of great natural beauty and sharp geographical contrasts, plentiful resources make conditions ideal for the development of industry, agriculture, and livestock farming.

Xīnjiāng has held an important place in China's politics and economy since ancient times. In the days before the large-scale navigation of the seas, Xīnjiāng was crossed by the famous "Silk Road," by which economic and cultural ties were maintained between China and other Asian and European countries. During the Western Hān period over two thousand years ago, incursions by the Xiōngnú (Hsiungnu) led the Chinese central government to a policy of occupying the oasis cities of southern Xīnjiāng as garrison posts. Xīnjiāng has been intimately connected with China ever since that time, although their relations have often been turbulent. The Qīng dynasty made a province of Xīnjiāng (the name means "the New Dominion") in 1884. From the Chinese revolution in 1911 until 1949, Xīnjiāng remained under authoritarian Chinese control at the same time that local nationalist forces were also at work. Communist Chinese forces "liberated" Xīnjiāng from late 1949 until the spring of 1950. Xīnjiāng became an autonomous region on October 1, 1955.

Xīnjiāng is surrounded by mountains: the Altay in the north; the Kunlun in the south and west; and the Tianshan Range, over 200 kilometers wide, which cuts across the center from east to west. Between these mountain ranges are basins of varying sizes. Southern Xīnjiāng has the Tarim Basin and northern Xīnjiāng the Dzungarian Basin. In addition there are smaller basins such as the Hami and Turfan Basins. All are well-suited to agriculture and livestock farming. Xīnjiāng fine-wool sheep and Yílí horses are famous throughout China. Despite a harsh seven-month winter, the north has its herdsmen who put their horses and sheep to graze on the wide grasslands for the brief summer. In the arid south, too, livestock herding is a major occupation. In agricultural areas, the dry climate makes irrigation indispensable; a full ninety percent of Xīnjiāng's farmland is irrigated. The areas around Turpan and Hami are famous for their "karez" (kǎnrjǐng) irrigation, a system for conveying water from sources under mountain slopes to farmland by means of man-made underground channels. Crops include winter and spring wheat, cotton,

corn, rice and silkworms. But Xīnjiāng is most celebrated for its fruits--cantaloupe melons (hāmiguā) from Shànshàn and seedless grapes from Turpan are available in season in Běijīng's markets. The Tiānshān and Altay Mountains, covered with evergreen forests, are rich in wildlife and in precious herbs which go into the making of Chinese medicines. Xīnjiāng has important deposits of petroleum (especially at Karamay [Kèlāmǎyī]), coal, iron, gold, jade, and uranium (in the Altay Mountains). The main industries are petroleum, metallurgy, coal, electric power, chemicals, construction materials, textiles, and sugar refining.

About half the population of Xīnjiāng is of the Uygur (Uighur) nationality (see the note on Wéiwú'ěr, "Uygur," under number 7), and over forty percent are Hān Chinese. The rest of the population belongs to one of these ethnic groups: Kazak (Kazakh), Hui (Chinese Moslem), Mongol, Kergez (Kirghiz), Xibo (Sibo), Tajik (Tadzhik), Uzbek, Manchu, Daur (Tahur), and Tartar (Tatar). There are also several hundred Russians. In the north of Xīnjiāng there is a Hān majority, and in the south, a Uygur majority. The capital Ūrūmqi (Wūlūmùqí), with a population of 800,000 (1980, est.), is the region's center for industry, commerce, and transportation. Xīnjiāng University in Ūrūmqi has departments of Chinese, government, history, foreign languages, math, physics, chemistry, biology, and geography. Kashgar (Chinese Kāshǐ), ancient gateway of the silk trade, is still a commercial and craft center. Kuldja (Chinese Yīníng) is a commercial center which produces leather and tobacco, and also has metallurgical and textile industry. Other cities of note are Kuytun (Chinese Kuítún), Hotan (Hétián), Shíhézi, and Yarkand (Shāchē).

tǎolùn: A verb, "to discuss," or a noun, "discussion."

Rénmen chángcháng tǎolùn shì-
jièshàng yìxiē yǒu yìside
wèntí, kěshì shéi yě bù zhī-
dào zhèizhǒng tǎolùn yǒu
shénme yòng.

People often discuss some very inter-
esting questions about the world,
but no one knows of what use this
kind of discussion is.

Nèige rén bú ài shuō huà,
cónglái bù cānjiā tǎolùn.

That person doesn't like to talk.
He never takes part in discussion.

Tǎolùnhuì ("discussion-meeting") is a "symposium."

3. A: Xīnjiāng hé nèidì shì
shénme shíhou tǒngyīde?

When was Xīnjiāng united with the
interior?

B: Ng...dìyīcì tǒngyī chàbuduō
shì gōngyuán qián liùshí-
niǎnde shíhou.

Uh...the first time they were
unified was in about 60 B.C.

Notes on No. 3

nèidì: "the interior" of a country; modifying a noun, nèidì can be translated as "inland." e.g., nèidì chéngshì, "inland city."

From the point of view of Xīnjiāng, a border region, nèidì refers to China proper; but from the point of view of Běijīng, Shànghǎi, or Guǎngzhōu,

nèidì refers to inland regions such as Sìchuān.

Zhōngguó dàbùfēn nèidì chéngshìde gōngyè méiyóu yánhǎi chéngshìde nàme fādá.

In most inland cities of China, industry is not as developed as in the coastal cities.

tōngyī: As a process verb, "to become united":

Yuènnán xiànzài tōngyī le.

Vietnam has now been united.

As an action verb, "to unite, to unify, to integrate":

Qín Shǐhuáng tōngyīle Zhōngguó.

Qín Shǐhuáng united China.*

gōngyuán and gōngyuán qián: "A.D." and "B.C." Literally, gōngyuán is "common era" and gōngyuán qián "before the common era."

gōngyuán qián èrbǎièrshìèrnián

222 B.C.

gōngyuán sìbǎisānshìlìunián

A.D. 436

gōngyuán chū

the beginning of the Christian era

4. A: Jiěfàng Zhànzhēngde shíhou, Jiěfàngjūn jiěfàngle Xīnjiāng, shì bu shì?

During the War of Liberation, the PLA liberated Xīnjiāng, right?

B: Xīnjiāng shì héping jiěfàngde, Jiěfàngjūn shì sījiǔnián dào Xīnjiāng qūde.

Xīnjiāng was peacefully liberated. The PLA went to Xīnjiāng in 1949.

Notes on No. 4

Jiěfàngjūn: "the Liberation Army," short for Zhōngguó Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn, the Chinese People's Liberation Army, which in English is usually called the PLA.

héping: "peace" (For the first example, you need to know yǔ, a formal word for "and.")

Zhànzhēng yǔ Héping shì yīběn hěn hǎode xiǎoshuō.

War and Peace is a very good novel.

Shìjiè hépingde wèntí shì gèguó rénmin guānxīnde wèntí.

World peace is a question of concern to the people of all nations.

In some idioms, héping can be used to modify a noun or a verb. Héping jiěfàng, "peacefully liberate," is an example.

*In 221 B.C.

5. A: Wūge zìzhìqūde shēnghuó qíngkuàng hé nèidì chà hěn duō ma?
 B: Ng, zhǔyào shì jiāotōng bù fāngbiàn. Biéde shēnghuó fāngmian me, yě chà yidiǎnr.
- Are living conditions in the five autonomous regions very different from those in the interior?
 Well, it's mainly that transportation is difficult. As for other aspects of daily life, they're somewhat below standard too.

Notes on No. 5

zìzhìqū: "autonomous region"

Zhōngguó dàlù yǒu wūge zìzhìqū.

The Chinese mainland has five autonomous regions.

Zìzhìqūde rénmin dàbùfen shì shǎoshù mínzú.

The people of the autonomous regions are mostly minority nationalities.

chà: (1) (as used in 5A) "to differ," as in

Běijīng shíjiān gēn Niǔ Yuē shíjiān chà shí sāngè zhōngtóu.

Běijīng time and New York time differ by thirteen hours.

(2) (as used in 5B) "to be inferior, to be poor, to be not up to standard":

Wǒde Hànyǔ fāyīn bǐ tāde fāyīn chà yidiǎn.

My Chinese pronunciation is a little worse than his.

Zhìliàng chà yidiǎn, bú shì wǒmende zérèn.

It's not our responsibility that the quality is inferior.

Nèige dìfāngde qíngkuàng bǐ zhèr chàde duō.

Conditions in that place are much worse than here.

Wǒmende gōngzuò hái chàde yuǎn ne.

Our work is a long way from what it should be.

(3) "to lack"

Bú gòu, hái chà sāngè.

There aren't enough. There are still three too few.

*The five autonomous regions (AR) are

Nèiměnggǔ Zìzhìqū

the Inner Mongolia (or Nei Monggol) AR

Níngxià Huízú Zìzhìqū

the Níngxià Huí AR

Xīnjiāng Wéiwú'ěr Zìzhìqū

the Xīnjiāng Uygur AR

Guǎngxī Zhuàngzú Zìzhìqū

the Guǎngxī Zhuàng AR

Xīzàng Zìzhìqū

the Tibet AR

jiāotōng: "traffic," "transportation"

Zhèlǐde jiāotōng bù ānquán,
qìchē tài duō, kāide tài
kuài.

The traffic here isn't safe. There
are too many cars, and they go
too fast.

Qǐng nǐ zhǎo yíge jiāotōng
jǐngchá lái.

Please go get a traffic officer.

zhǔyào shì...: "it's mainly that...," or "it's mainly because..."

Zhǔyào shì Zhōngguóde língdǎo
rén bù dǒng jīngjì, gōngyè
fāzhǎn cái nǎme màn.

It's mainly because China's leaders
do not understand economics that
industrial development has been
so slow.

me (also pronounced ma): "as for," "...well,..." This colloquial word marks a pause and sets off the topic of a sentence. It is often used when the speaker is hesitating about exactly what to comment on the topic.

Tā zài wénxué fāngmiàn me...
kéyǐ shuō hěn bú cuò, kěshì
shùxué fāngmiàn kě zhēn chà.

In the area of literature...he can
be said to be quite good, but he's
really poor in mathematics.

Zhōngguóde zhòng gōngyè jiànshè
me...zhèi jǐnián hái suàn
kéyǐ le.

As for China's heavy industrial
construction...it has not been
too bad the past few years.

Rúguǒ tā bú yuànyì me, nà jiù
suàn le.

If he's unwilling, well, then let the
matter drop.

6. A: Tāmen shì dào Shànghǎi qù
chū chāi ma?

Did they go to Shànghǎi on
business?

B: Bù, bú shì fàng jià le ma?
Yǒude gānbude jiā zài
Shànghǎi, tāmen huí jiā
qù kànkan.

No. We're on vacation now,
remember? Some of the cadres'
families are in Shànghǎi, so
they went home to visit.

Notes on No. 6

chū chāi: "to go/be away on official business" (For this example, you need to know Sū-Háng, an abbreviation for Sūzhōu and Hángzhōu.)

Dàjiā dōu xǐhuan chū chāi qù
Sū-Háng yídài, kéyǐ duō yíxiē
jīhuì yóulǎn.

Everyone likes to go on business to
the Sūzhōu-Hángzhōu region, (because)
one can have more opportunities to
do sightseeing.

fàng jià: "to let out for vacation" or "to have vacation, to be on vacation" Here are examples of the first meaning:

Nǐmen xuéxiào nǎitiān fàng jià? What day does your school let out
for vacation?

Fàng jià le, nǐ zěnmē hái qù
shàng bān? Vacation has started; why are you
still going to work?

Here are examples referring to the state of being on vacation:

Zhèige líbài wǒmen zài fàng jià
ne. This week we are on vacation.

Fàng jiàde shíhou wǒmen cái néng
zài yìqǐ. We can only be together when we are
on vacation.

The length of time the vacation lasts is expressed by a time phrase modifying the object jià:

Qùnián wǒmen fàngle sānge lí-
bàide jià, jīnnián zhǐ fàng
liǎngge líbài. Last year we had three weeks of
vacation, but this year we only
have two weeks.

Shíyuè yīhào, xuéxiào fàng
yītiān jià. Schools have one day of vacation
on October 1.

bú shi...ma?: This has both a literal and a rhetorical use. In 6B you see the rhetorical use.

(1) Literal use: "isn't...?, don't...?", etc.

(2) Rhetorical use: "you know, you will recall, remember" Use this to remind the listener of a fact you know he is aware of (although he may have forgotten it).

Contrast the literal and rhetorical use of this pattern:

LITERAL: Nǐ bú shi yǒu yíge mèimei Don't you have a younger sister
zài Shànghǎi ma? in Shànghǎi? (CHECKING INFORMATION)
RHETORICAL: Wǒ bú shi yǒu yíge mèimei You'll recall that I have a younger
zài Shànghǎi ma? sister in Shànghǎi. (REMINDING)

Further examples:

(LITERAL)

Nǐ bú shi shuō yào qù ma? Zěnmē Didn't you say you were going to go?
yǒu bú qù le ne? How come you aren't going now?

(RHETORICAL)

Wǒ bú shi yǐjīng xiěwánle ma? I've finished writing it, you know.
Wèishénme hái ràng wǒ xiě? Why do you still want me to write?

Wǒ bú shì gēn nǐ shuōguo ma?
Wǒ xiǎowǔ yào kāi huì, méi
shíjiān.

Haven't I told you? I have a meeting
this afternoon and don't have time.

Xiàle diàntī, wǎng yòu zǒu, bú
shì yǒu ge cāntīng ma? Wǒmen
jiù zài nàr jiàn miàn, hǎo
bu hǎo?

When you get off the elevator and go
to the right, there's a restaurant,
you know? We'll meet there, okay?

Bú shì ma? may also be put onto the end of a sentence:

Wǒmen fàng jià le, bú shì ma?

We're on vacation, remember?

7. A: Tz! Zhèitiáo dītǎn zhēn
měi! Shì Wéiwúěr dītǎn ma?

Ah! This carpet is just beauti-
ful! Is it a Uygur carpet?

B: Shì. Jiù shì zài nǐ zuótiān
cānguānde nèige gōngchǎng
zuòde.

Yes. It was made in the factory
you visited yesterday.

Notes on No. 7

Tz!: This sound is just like the clicking of the tongue sometimes written in English as "Tsk." As in English, it can be used to express disappointment or chiding, but in Chinese it can also be used to express admiration, as when describing a beautiful house, a dish of food, or a smartly dressed person.

měi: "to be beautiful"

Xià dà xuě le, nǐ kàn wàibian
duó měi.

It has snowed a lot. Look at how
beautiful it is outside.

Zhàopiànshang tā zhēn měi.

She looks beautiful in the photograph.

Wéiwúěr: The Uygur, or Uighur, a Turkic people who, with a population of six million, constitute one of China's largest national minorities. Their early history, like that of other peoples of central Asia, is unrecorded. Some scholars have hypothesized that their origins were Indo-European rather than Turkic. At any rate, they emerge into the light of history in the Táng dynasty. At that time, they were a nomadic people well known to the Chinese; in fact, they helped the Táng overthrow a hostile Turkic empire in Mongolia in 744. The Uygurs, in turn, established an empire in the area, but this lasted only until 840, when the wild Kerkez sacked their capital and killed their khan. A portion of their population then migrated westward to the oases of the Tarim Basin. There, they mixed with the local Turkic population, and although the Uygur racial strain dominated, they adopted the Turkic language and no longer called themselves Uygurs. Gradually, their occupation shifted from nomadic herding to farming. The resulting stability allowed a great development in their literature and arts, especially song and dance. In the tenth century, closer contact with merchants, travelers, and settlers from the Middle East stimulated their conversion to Islam, a process which took several centuries to complete.

Modern times have witnessed the emergence of Uygur nationalism, reflected in their official readoption of the historical name "Uygur" earlier in this century. Uygur leaders have often resisted control by outside powers, and even attempted to establish an independent republic in the region. Under Chinese authority today, the Uygurs, who remain for the most part a farming people living and marrying within the village unit, have a limited degree of regional autonomy and are guaranteed cultural freedom and linguistic rights by the PRC Constitution.

8. A: Nǐ kàn, tiān gāng liàng,
Wéiwúěr nóngmín jiù kāishǐ
gōngzuò le. Look, it just got light and the
Uygur peasants have already
started to work.
- B: Gèzú rénmin dōu zài dà gǎo
shèhuìzhǔyì ma! Sure, the people of all national-
ities are going all out with
socialism!

Notes on No. 8

liàng: "to be bright, to be light" or "to be shiny"

Zhèige dēng bú liàng le. This light won't go on.

Nǐde xīn chēzi zhēn liàng a! Your new car is really shiny!

Tiān liàng means "to get light out" or "daybreak, dawn":

Tiān liàng yǐhòu, jiēshang jiù
rè'naoqilai le. After it got light out, the streets
started to liven up.

Tiān liàng yǐqián néng dào ma? Can we get there before dawn?

gāng...jiù...: "just (hardly)...and already..."

Tā gāng dàxué bìyè jiù dào
Xībēi qù le. He went to the Northwest when he
had just graduated from college.

Zhèige háizi gāng lái Měiguó
sānge yuè, jiù huì shuō bù
shǎo Yīngwén le. It has been barely three months
since this child came to the U.S.,
and already she can speak a lot
of English.

Zhèige xuéqī gāng kāishǐ, wǒmen
jiù juéde hǎoxiàng guòle hěn
cháng shíjiān le. The semester had barely started when
we felt as if a long time had
already passed.

nóngmín: "peasant," as contrasted with non-ideological terms like nóngfū,
"farmer," or nóngyè gōngren, "agricultural worker."

Zhōngguóde nóngmín zhàn quánguó
rénkǒude bǎifēnzhī bāshí. China's peasants make up 80 percent
of the population of the whole
country.

-zú: "nationality," as in Wéiwú'ěrzú, "the Uygur nationality," Hànzú, "the Han nationality," Měnggǔzú, "the Monggol (Mongolian) nationality."

-zhǔyì: "doctrine" or "-ism," as in Gòngchǎnzhǔyì, "Communism"; hépingzhǔyì, "pacifism"; mínzúzhǔyì, "nationalism"; Dǎ'ěr wénzhǔyì, "Darwinism."

dà gǎo shèhuìzhǔyì: "go all out with socialism; engage in socialism in a big way" The adjectival verb dà, "to be large," is used here as an adverb. [Adverbs modify verbs or other adverbs.] When so used, it means "in a big way" or "go all out with (doing something)":

Jiēhūnde shíhou yě bú yào dà
chǐ dà hē.

Even when one gets married, one
shouldn't put on a great feast.

"Dà Bàn Nóngyè."

"Make Great Efforts to Develop
Agriculture." (slogan)

9. A: Tīngshuō jǐwèi gōngren jiāo
gěi zhèngfǔ jǐběn hěn lǎode
shū, nǐmen kānguo le ma?

I hear that some workers handed a
few very old books over to the
government. Have you seen them?

B: Kānguo le. Dōu shì guānyú
zhōngzú wèntí, lǐshǐ
wèntíde, hěn yǒu yìsi.

Yes. They're about racial and
historical problems. They're
very interesting.

Notes on No. 9

gōngren: This is the general term for "worker" in the sense of a wage-earning laborer. (Gōngzuòzhě, which you learned in Unit 4, does not imply manual labor; it simply means someone who works in a particular field, such as education or archeology.) Examples: shíyóu gōngren, "oil worker"; nóngyè gōngren, "agricultural worker," for example, a wage-earning worker on a state farm; tiělù gōngren, "railroad worker."

jiāo: "to hand over, to give" Jiāo qiǎn is "to pay" (a fee or bill, especially one which is due regularly).

Wǒ hái méi jiāo zhèige yuède
fángzū.

I haven't paid this month's rent
yet.

Jiāo gěi wǒmen ba! Nǐ fàngxīn
hǎo le!

Leave it to us! Don't worry about
it! (Here jiāo refers to turning
over a task to someone.)

zhōngzú: "race" or "racial" Examples are Huángzhōngrén, "people of the yellow (Oriental) race," Hēizhōngrén, "people of the black race," and Báizhōngrén, "people of the white race."

10. A: Zhèige dìqūde xùnmùyè nàme fādá!
 B: Suǒyǐ wǒmen zài zhèr bànle hǎojǐge dītǎnchǎng.
- This region's livestock farming is so well developed!
 That's why we've set up a lot of carpet factories here.

Notes on No. 10

Suǒyǐ . . .: Notice that when stressed at the beginning of a sentence, suǒyǐ is translated as "That's why"

chǎng and gōngchǎng: Gōngchǎng (introduced in No. 7 above) is the generic term for a factory or plant. If you were talking about the installations in an area and wanted to say that there were schools, factories, and hospitals, you would use gōngchǎng. Chǎng, on the other hand, is only used in specific contexts. If you are talking about a specific factory, you can say chǎnglǐ for "in the factory." A worker can say wǒmen chǎng for "our factory." You can also use chǎng in certain compound nouns which specify what the factory makes, as in dītǎnchǎng.

11. A: Nǐmende wénzì nàme nán!
 Gǎo wénhuà jiāoliú duō bù róngyì.
 B: Shéi shuōde, wǒmende wénzì bú shì zài gǎi ma? Yuè gǎi yuè jiǎndān ma!
- Your system of writing is so hard!
 It makes cultural exchange so difficult!
 Says who! Aren't we changing our writing? The more we change it the simpler it is.

Notes on No. 11

wénzì: "writing," "written language," "script," "system of writing" For example, a member of China's Committee for Reform of the Written Language would be a wénzì gōngzuòzhě, "written language worker."

jiāoliú: "to exchange" or "an exchange," "interchange" This is only used to refer to a back-and-forth flow of culture, technology, experience, thought, and so forth. "To exchange" one thing for another is huàn [or jiāochuàn in formal contexts such as the exchange of views or of prisoners].

shéi shuōde: "Says who!" This is strictly informal and could be taken as impolite if used in an inappropriate context.

zài gǎi: "in the process of changing"

bú shì . . . ma?: This is another example of the rhetorical use of this pattern (see the Notes on No. 6): "We're changing our writing, aren't we?!"

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

12. biānjiāng

border area; borderland; frontier;
frontier region

biānjiāng: "frontier region, border region" This refers to the area inside the border. Biānjiè refers more specifically to the border or boundary itself.

Unit 6, Review Dialogue

In a soft berth car on the express train from Běijīng to Ūrūmqi (Wūlǔ-mùqí) in the Xīnjiāng Uygur Autonomous Region, an American ethnologist, Gail Griffith (G), is standing in the corridor looking out the window at the passing scenery. Lí Míng (L), a cadre in the Ministry of Foreign Trade, steps out of the neighboring compartment, a glass of tea in his hand.

- L: Zǎoshang hǎo! Good morning!
- G: Zǎoshang hǎo! Nín guàixìng? Good morning! May I ask your name?
- L: Wǒ xìng Lí, zài Běijīng wǒ jiànguo nín. My name is Lí. I met you in Běijīng.
- G: Zài Běijīng? Shénme dìfang? In Běijīng? Where?
- L: Qīyuè sìhào wǎnshang, zài Měiguó Dàshìguǎn. On the evening of July fourth, at the American Embassy.
- G: À! Qīyuè sìhào, nèitiān yǒu nàme duō rén, wǒ bú jìde le. Nín zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Ah! July fourth. There were so many people that day, I don't remember. Where do you work?
- L: Wàimàobù. Nèitiān, Wàimàobùde gānbu qǐle bù shǎo, nín bú huì jìde le. Wǒ hǎoxiàng jìde nín shì gāo yǔyánxuéde. The Ministry of Foreign Trade. That day, a lot of cadres from the Ministry of Foreign Trade went; you wouldn't remember. I seem to remember that you are in linguistics.
- G: Bù zhǐ shì yǔyánxué, wǒ hái yánjiū mínzú wèntí, zhōngzú wèntí. Not only linguistics. I also study national and racial issues.
- L: Ò! Dào Xīnjiāng qù yánjiū mínzú wèntí ma? Oh! Are you going to Xīnjiāng to do research on nationalities?
- G: Bù, wǒ shì xiǎng duō liǎojiě yidiǎnr Wéiwú'ěr wénhuà hé Zhōngdōng wénhuàde guānxi. No. I want to get a better understanding of the relationship between Uygur culture and Chinese culture.
- L: Ò! Zhèi kě shì yíge fùzáde wèntí, wǒ bú shì lìshǐ xuéjiā, guānyú zhèige wèn, wǒ zhīdaode bú tài duō. Oh! That's certainly a complex question. I'm not a historian. On that topic...I don't know very much.
- G: Nǐmen zǒng bǐ wǒmen zhīdaode duō, jiù qǐng nín jiǎngjiang ba. But you know more than we do, in any case, so please tell me about it.
- L: Wǒ zhīdao cóngqián Wéiwú'ěr rén yòngde wénzì shì Zhōngdōngde, yìzhǐ dào xiànzài, zài Xīnjiāng Wéiwú'ěr Zìzhìqūde xuéxiàoli háishì jiāo Wéiwú'ěrwén. I know that the writing which the Uygurs used to use was Middle Eastern. Even now, they still teach the Uygur language in the schools in the Xīnjiāng Uygur Autonomous Region.

- G: Nàme yǒu duōshǎo Wéiwú'ěr rén dǒng Hànyǔ ne? Then how many Uygurs understand Chinese?
- L: Dàgài bú dào bǎifēnzhi èrshí. Probably fewer than twenty percent.
- G: Ng, hěn yǒu yìsi, nàme zhèngfǔ zài zìzhìqūde zhèngcè hé nèidì hěn bù tóng ma? Hm, very interesting. Then is the government's policy in the autonomous region very different from in the interior?
- L: Wéiwú'ěr rén dàbùfen xiāngxìn Yī-sīlǎn jiào. Zhōngguó yě shì zōngjiào zìyóude guójiā, suǒyǐ zài zhèngcèshàng huì yǒu yìxiē hé nèidì bù tóngde bànfǎ. Most Uygurs believe in Islam. China is a country with freedom of religion, too. So in the area of policy, some ways of doing things are different from in the interior.
- G: Ng, wǒmen zài huí dào wénzì wèntíshàng hǎo bu hǎo? Mm. Could we go back to the question of the writing?
- L: Hǎo a! Sure!
- G: Tīngshuō xiànzài Wéiwú'ěrwén yǒule xīn wénzì le. I understand that the Uygur language now has a new orthography.
- L: Yǒu, xīn wénzì shì Yī jiǔ qī wǔ nián kāishǐ yòngde. Zhèizhǒng xīn wénzì xiěqilai bǐjiào róngyi, cóng nèidì lái Xīnjiāngde rén xuéqilai yě róngyide duō. Yes, the new orthography began to be used in 1975. It's easier to write, and for people who come to Xīnjiāng from the interior, it's much easier to learn.
- G: Yǒule xīn wénzì yǐhòu Wéiwú'ěrzú rén juéde zěnmeyàng? Tāmen hěn gāoxìng ma? What do the Uygur people think now that they have the new orthography? Are they very happy?
- L: Zhōngguó shì yíge duō mínzúde shèhuìzhūyì dà jiāting, Wéiwú'ěr rénmin yě shì yào tóngyide ma! Yǒule xīn wénzì, Hànzú hé shǎoshù mínzúde wénhuà jiāoliú yě róngyìduō le ma! China is a socialist family of many nations. The Uygurs want to be unified, too! With the new orthography, cultural exchange between the Hans and the minority nationalities has also become much easier!
- G: Nǐ shuōde yǒu dào lǐ. Duì le, nǐ kě bu kěyǐ gàosu wǒ Xīnjiāng rénkǒude qíngkuàng? You are right. Oh yes--can you tell me about the population of Xīnjiāng?
- L: Xiànzài Xīnjiāng yǒu jiǔbǎiwàn rén zuǒyòu, yǐhòu huì gèng duō. Xīnjiāng now has approximately nine million people, and there will be even more in the future.
- G: Shǎoshù mínzú yǒu duōshǎo ne? How many of that number are minority nationalities?
- L: Chàbuduō qībǎiduō wàn, érciě zhèi Somewhere over seven million. And

qībǎiduō wàn rénlǐ yǒu shí sāngè
mínzú.

among these seven million people there
are thirteen nationalities.

G: Ōu. Xīnjiāng shǎoshù mínzú gēn
Hànzúde jiāoliú yǒu duō jiǔ le?

Oh. How long has there been inter-
change between the minority nationali-
ties of Xīnjiāng and the Han people?

L: Xīnjiāng dìqū hé nèidìde jīngjī
jiāoliú yǐjīng yǒu jǐqiānniánde
lìshǐ le, yòng wénzì xiěxiàláide
jīngjī wénhuà jiāoliú shì cóng
gōngyuán qián liùbǎi nián zuǒ-
yòu kāishǐde. Gōngyuán qián liù-
shí nián jīngguò jǐcì zhànzhēng yǐ-
hòu Xīnjiāng hé nèidì tōngyī le,
wénhuà, yìshude jiāoliú yě jiù yuè
lái yuè duō le.

Economic interchange between the
Xīnjiāng region and the interior has
been going on for several thousand
years. Economic and cultural inter-
change which was put down in writing
began around 600 B.C. In 60 B.C.,
after several wars, Xīnjiāng was united
with the interior, and there began to
be more and more cultural and artistic
interchange.

G: Wǒ tīngshuō jiěfàng yǐhòu yǒu
hěn duō rén bān dao Xīnjiāng lái
zhù le.

I understand that many people have
moved to Xīnjiāng since liberation.

L: Yī jiǔ wǔ líng nián, Xīnjiāng hé-
píng jiěfàng. Jiěfàngjūn dào le
zhèli yǐhòu jiù hé zhèige dìfāngde
nóngmín yìqǐ gāo jīngjī jiànshè.
Yī jiǔ liù èr nián yǐhòu měinián
dōu yǒu hěn duō niánqīng rén dào
zhèli lái, nèi shíhou biānjiāngde
shēnghuó bǐ nèidì chàde duō, xiān-
zài jiànshède bú cuò le.

In 1950, Xīnjiāng was peacefully
liberated. After the PLA arrived here,
they carried on economic construction
with the peasants. Since 1962, every
year, a lot of young people have come
here. Back then, life in the border
region was much worse than in the
interior; but now, construction has
been pretty well carried out.

G: Nàme zhèixiē jiànshè biānjiāngde
niánqīng rén dōu shì cóng nǎr lái-
de ne?

And where have all these young
people who are carrying on the con-
struction of the borderlands come
from?

L: Duōbàn shì Tiānjīn, Běijīng,
Shànghǎi, Zhéjiāngde qīngnián.

Most of them are youth from Tiānjīn,
Běijīng, Shànghǎi, and Zhéjiāng.

G: Tāmen hái keyi huí dà chéngshì
ma?

Can they still go back to the big
cities?

L: Xiānsài jiāotōng fāngbiàn, fāng-
jiàde shíhou tāmen keyi huí lǎojiā
kànkan. Duōbàn de niánqīng rén
zài zhèli jiēle hūn, yǒule hái-
zi tāmen yǐjīng shì Xīnjiāng rén le!

Now, transportation is convenient,
so when they have vacation, they can
go back to visit their original home.
Most of the young people have married
here and have children; they have
already become Xīnjiāng natives!

G: Tāmen zài zhèli zuò shénme? Jiù
gāo nóngyè ma?

What do they do here? Just farming?

- L: Ô! Bù dōu shì gǎo nóngyè. Yě yǒude shì gōngren, yě yǒude gǎo wénhuà jiàoyu gōngzuò, hái yǒude gǎo xùmùyè..
- G: Duì le, suīrán Xīnjiāng yǒu hěn dàde shāmò, kěshì xùmùyè hái shì hěn fādàde.
- L: Nǐ jiànguo Xīnjiāngde dītǎn meiyǒu?
- G: Zài zhǎnlǎnhuìshang jiànguo. Tz! Zhēn měi! Duō měide dītǎn!
- L: Měinián Xīnjiāng dìqū jiāo gěi guójiā bù shǎo dītǎn. Tāmende shēngchǎn qíngkuàng bú cuò, shùliang bù shǎo, zhǐliàng yě hěn gāo, wàiguo péngyou hěn xǐhuan mǎi.
- G: À! Wǒ zhīdao le, nǐ shì dào Xīnjiāng qu chūchāide ba!
- L: Duì le. Qù hé jǐge dītǎnchǎng tāolùn míngniánde shēngchǎn jìhua.
- G: Zhèixiē dītǎnchǎng kě bu kéyi cānguān na?
- L: Zěnde bù kéyi? Huānyíng huānyíng! Nín hé Lǚxíngshè tányitán, tāmen huì ānpaide.
- G: Duìbuqǐ, nǐde biǎo xiànzài jǐdiǎn le? Wǒde biǎo hǎoxiàng kuài le ma.
- L: Zhōngwǔ shíèrdiǎn.
- G: Wǒ zěnde juéde tiān liàngle bù jǐǔ a.
- L: Nín bié wàng le, zhèrde shíjiān hé Běijīng chà sìge zhōngtóu ne!
- G: Zěnde chà sìge zhōngtóu?
- Oh, not all of them. Some are workers, some do cultural and educational work, and some do livestock farming.
- Oh, yes; although Xīnjiāng has a big desert, livestock farming is still very well developed.
- Have you ever seen Xīnjiāng carpets?
- At an exhibition. Gee! They're really beautiful! Such beautiful carpets!
- Every year the Xīnjiāng region hands over quite a few carpets to the state. They are doing well in production; they produce quite a number of carpets, and the quality is also very high. Foreign friends love to buy them.
- Ah! Now I know: I bet you're going to Xīnjiāng on business!
- Right. I'm going to discuss next year's production plan with a few carpet factories.
- Can one visit these carpet factories?
- Of course! You are very welcome to visit! Talk to the Travel Service about it, and they'll make the arrangements.
- Excuse me--what time do you have? My watch seems to be fast.
- Twelve noon.
- How come I feel as if it's only been light out for a little while?
- Don't forget, there's a four-hour time difference between here and Běijīng!
- How is that?

L: Zài Běijīng qīdiǎn zhōng tiān jiù liàng le, zài zhè Běijīng shíjiān shíyīdiǎn tiān cái liàng ne!

In Běijīng it gets light at seven o'clock. Here, it doesn't get light until eleven o'clock Běijīng time!

G: Duīle, duīle...ōu, quánguó dōu tōngyīde yòng Běijīng shíjiān ma? Zhèi hé Měiguó bù yíyàng, Měiguó yǒu sìge shíjiān ne....

I see, I see...hm, Běijīng time is used throughout the country? That's different from America. America has four times....

Xiānzài wǒmen yǐjīng zài huǒchēshàng guòle qīshíge zhōngtóu le! Shénme shíhour kényi dào Wūlǔmùqí ya?

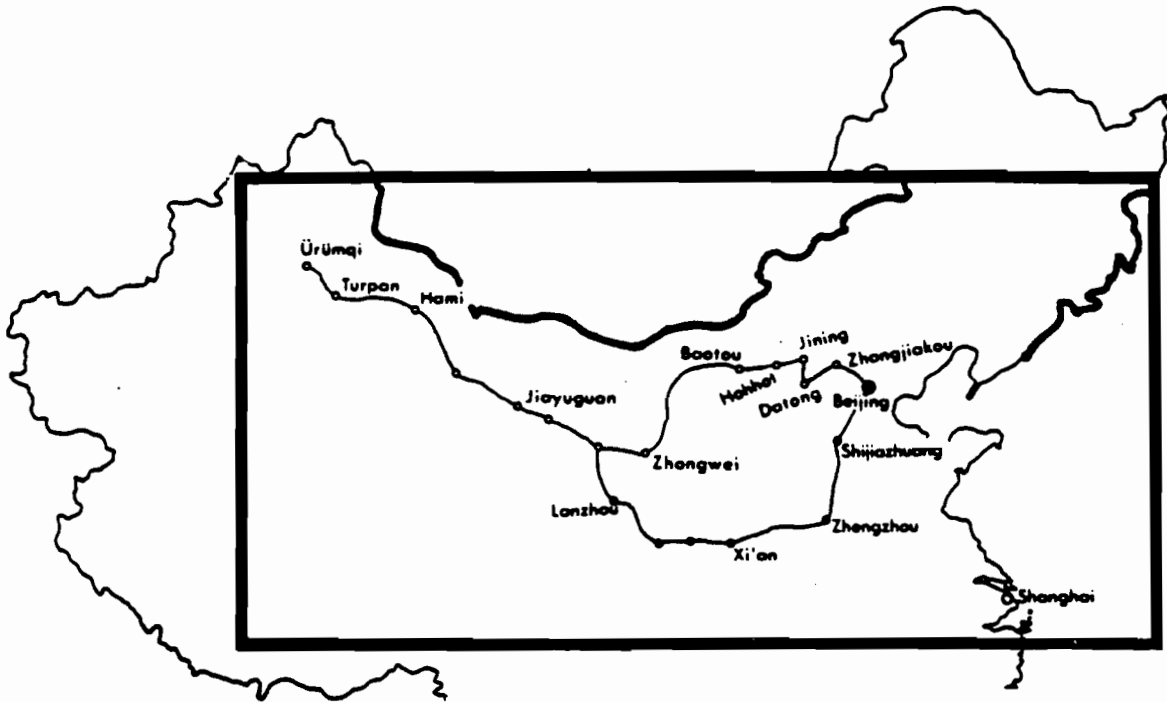
Now we've already spent seventy hours on the train! What time will we get to Ūrǔmqí?

L: Hái yǒu bāge zhōngtóu ne. Hǎo le, zhānlèi le ba, wǒ gāi huíqu xiūxi yīhuǐr le. Huí tóur jiàn!

We still have another eight hours. Well, you must be tired of standing up. I should go back and rest a bit. See you later!

G: Huí tóur jiàn, Lǐ Xiānsheng.

See you later, Mr. Lǐ.



Railroad routes from Beijing to Ūrǔmqí

Unit 6, Tape 2 WorkbookExercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American visits the Central Nationalities Institute in Běijīng and talks with a Uygur student.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

xuéyuàn	academy, institute
Tǔěrqí	Turkey, Turkish
Ālābó	Arab, Arabic
Lādīng zìmǔ	Latin (Roman) alphabet
sīxiǎng	thought, ideas
xìn jiào	to believe in a religion
zuò lǐbài	to worship; to attend a religious service
qīngzhēnsī	mosque

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Are the minority nationality languages used in schools in Xīnjiāng?
2. What does the Uygur student say his native language is like?
3. Do more Uygurs understand Chinese or Russian?

4. What is the Uygur student's religious background?
5. Now that she is in Běijīng, is the Uygur student able to attend religious services?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American tourist talks with a China Travel Service worker on the train from Běijīng to Hohhot, Inner Mongolia.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

Jīnínɡ (Jìnnínɡ)	(city in Inner Mongolia)
sàn bù	to go for a walk
huánɡtǔ gāoyuán	loess plateau (see map at the end of this unit)
mínzú zhìjiān	between nationalities
Xīfāng	the West
yāoqiú	to require
ɡǎishàn	to improve
Dàtónɡ	(city in Shānxī province)
chēxiāng	car (of a train)

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. In history, was the Jīnínɡ region a peaceful one?
2. What is the China Travel Service worker's attitude toward the national minorities of China?

3. How might you respond to questions about racial difficulties in the U.S.? (Use several sentences from the dialogue, or prepare answers in your own words.)

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you practice saying the answers you have prepared.

Exercise 4

This is a conversation between an American tourist and a young Chinese woman who meet at the Museum of Chinese History in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

náikāi	to take away, to move (something) out of the way
gǔdàishǐ	ancient history
huángdì	emperor
Qīnghǎi	(name of a province)
dāng	to act as, to be
hánshōubān	correspondence course
kǎoshàng	to pass (an examination)
zìxué	to study by oneself
ànshí	on time
zuǒyè	homework
chénggōng	to succeed

Questions for Exercise 4

1. Why is the young woman taking down notes?
2. How are living conditions in Qīnghǎi?
3. What does the young woman do for a living in Qīnghǎi?
4. What other kinds of work has she done before?
5. Why does she want to go to college?

TVL, Unit 6

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

An American (A) visits the Central Nationalities Institute in Běijīng and talks with a Uygur student (U).

- U: Nín hǎo! Huānyíng nín lái wǒmen xuéyuàn cānguān. Hello! Welcome to the Institute.
- A: Nǐde Hànyǔ hěn hǎo ma, shì zài Běijīng xuéde ma? Your Chinese is very good! Did you learn it in Běijīng?
- U: Zhǔyào shì zài Běijīng xuéde, kěshì bú shì zài Běijīng kāishǐ xuéde. Mainly, but I wasn't in Běijīng when I started learning it.
- A: Ò, zài Xīnjiāng Wéiwú'ěr Zìzhìqūde xuéxiàoli yě jiāo Hànyǔ, shì bu shì? Oh. They teach Chinese in schools in the Xīnjiāng Uygur Autonomous Region, do they?
- U: Zài zìzhìqūde zhōng-xiǎoxuéli chúle Hànzú xuéxiào yǐwài dōu jiāo shǎoshù mínzú wénzì, tèbié shì Wéiwú'ěr wénzì. Except for the Hān nationality schools, secondary and primary schools in the autonomous region teach the minority nationality languages, especially the Uygur language.
- A: Wéiwú'ěr wénzì hé Zhōngdōngde wénzì yǒu shénme guānxi ma? Is the Uygur language related to the languages of the Middle East?
- U: Yǒu, Wéiwú'ěryǔ hé Tǔ'ěrqǐyǔ bǐjiāo jìn, lǎo Wéiwú'ěrwén jībēnshàng shì Ālābōwén, xīn wénzì yòngde shì Lādīng zìmǔ. Yes. Uygur is rather close to Turkish. The old Uygur writing system was basically an Arabic writing system. The new writing system uses the Roman alphabet.
- A: Nàme xiàng "Gòngchǎndǎng," "Shèhuìzhǔyì" zhèixiē zì zěnmē bàn ne? Well, how do they handle words like "the Communist Party" and "socialism"?
- U: Zhèixiē zìde fāyīn duōbàn xiàng Hànyǔ, huòzhě xiàng Èyǔ. The pronunciation of words like that is mostly like Chinese, or like Russian.
- A: Duìbuqǐ, Wéiwú'ěr rén dǒng Hànyǔde duō ne, hái shì dǒng Èyǔde duō ne? I'm sorry: Do more Uygurs understand Chinese or Russian?
- U: Yībānde lái shuō, hái shì dǒng Èwénde rén duō. Generally speaking, there are still more who understand Russian.
- A: Duì le--nǐ gāngcái bú shì shuō nǐde Hànyǔ bú shì zài Běijīng kāishǐ xuéde ma? Oh--you just said that you didn't begin studying Chinese in Běijīng, right?
- U: Wǒmen lái Běijīng niàn dàxuéde shǎoshù mínzú xuéshēng dōu kényī zài zìzhìqūde Hànzú xuéxiàoli xiān xué yīnián Hànyǔ. Zài xué Hànyǔ All of us minority students who come to Běijīng to attend college can take a year of Chinese language beforehand in a Hān nationality school in

- yǐqián, wǒ lián yíge Hànzì dōu bù zhīdào.
the autonomous region. Before I started studying Chinese, I didn't even know one Chinese character.
- A: Hànyǔ shì hěn fùzáde, xuéqilai dàgài hěn nán.
Chinese is very complicated. It must be very hard to study.
- U: Bù juéde zěnmé tài nán, xuéle yīnián yǐhòu wǒmen hé nārde Hànzú gōngren, gānbu, yòng Hànyǔ tāolùn wèntí, jiāoliú sīxiǎng dōu méiyǒu shénme wèntí le.
I don't find it terribly difficult. After one year, we didn't have any problem having discussions and communicating ideas in Chinese with the Chinese workers and cadres there.
- A: Tz! Nà zhēn bú cuò. Duì le-- wǒ hái yǒu zuǐhòu yíge xiǎo wèntí. Nǐmen xìn jiào ma?
Gee, that's really great. Oh yes-- I have one last small question. Do you profess a religion?
- U: Wǒmende fùmǔ, zǔfùmǔ dōu xiāngxìn Yísīlǎnjiào.
Our parents and grandparents believe in Islam.
- A: Nǐmen zìjǐ ne?
What about you yourselves?
- U: Wǒmen zìjǐ me, yǒude xìn, yǒude bú tài xìn, wǒ hái shì xiāngxīnde.
We ourselves...well, some of us believe, and some of us don't really believe. I still believe.
- A: Zài Běijīng yě kéyǐ zuò lǐbài ma?
Can you worship in Běijīng?
- U: Kéyǐ. Zhèr yǒu hěn dàde qīng-zhēnsī, wǒ měige xīngqī dōu qù.
Yes. There's a big mosque here. I go every week.
- A: Tài xièxie nǐ le, gěi wo jièshào-le zhème duō yǒu yìside qíngkuāng.
Thank you so much for telling me about so many interesting things.
- U: Hěn gāoxìng nín lái cānguān. Zàijiàn.
It was nice to have you here. Good-bye.
- A: Zàijiàn.
Good-bye.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

On the train from Běijīng to Hohhot, Inner Mongolia, an American tourist (A) talks with a China Travel Service worker (B).

- B: Tiān gāng liàng nín jiù qǐlai le? Bù duō shuǐ yīhuǐr?
You're up so soon after dawn? Don't you want to get some more sleep?
- A: Bù xiǎng shuǐ le. Xiàmian yízhàn shì nǎr le?
I don't feel like sleeping. What's the next stop?
- B: Jíning, zhèi shì yíge dà zhàn, huǒchē zài zhèr tíng èrshífēn
Jíning. It's a big stop. The train will stop there for twenty minutes.

- zhōng. Wǒmen kěyǐ dào zhàntái-shang qu sànsan bù.
- A: Jīnǐng* yídài shì yíge zhōngyàode dìqū.
- B: Cóng dìxíngshang kàn, Jīnǐng běibiān shì dà shāmò, nánbiān shì huángtǔ gāoyuán. Gōngyuán qiánhòu zài zhèige dìqū bù zhīdào yǒuguo duōshǎo cì zhànzhēng.
- A: Xiànzài héping le, biānjiāng hé nèidì bú huì yǒu zhànzhēng le.
- B: Nín shuōde duì, Zhōngguó shì yíge duō mínzúde, tǒngyíde shèhuìzhūyì dà jiāting, mínzú zhījiānde zhànzhēng dōu yǐjīng shì lìshǐ le. Tīngshuō, zài Xīfāng, zhōngzú wèntí, mínzú wèntí hái shì hěn máfānde wèntí a? Shǎoshù mínzúde shēnghuó hé dìwei hái hěn chà?
- A: Wǒ xiǎng zài yībǎinián yǐqián de shíhou, zhōngzú wèntí shì yíge bǐjiǎo dàde wèntí, xiànzài qíngkuāng yǐjīng yǒule hěn dàde gǎibiàn.
- B: Shì ma?
- A: Wǒmende zhèngrǔ yāoqiú zhèngrǔ gōngzuò rényuán dǎi yǒu yíding shùliangde shǎoshù mínzú. Zài wǒmende xuéxiàoli duì shǎoshù mínzú yě yǒu tèbiéde bāngzhu.
- B: Nàme nǐ xiǎng zài jiàoyu shuǐpíng, gōngzuò jīhuì, shēnghuó shuǐpíng fāngmian shǎoshù mínzúde qíngkuāng dōu gǎishàn le?
- A: Wǒ xiǎng mínzú wèntí, zhōngzú wèntí yǒu lìshǐde yuányīn, yě yǒu zhèngzhì, jīngjì, wénhuà gèfāng-
- We can go out for a walk on the platform.
- The Jīnǐng area is an important region.
- As far as terrain is concerned, to the north of Jīnǐng is a big desert, and to the south is the loess plateau. Before and during the Christian era there have been I-don't-know how many wars in this region.
- But now it's at peace. The border regions and the interior won't have any more wars.
- That's right. China is a unified socialist family made up of many nationalities. War between these groups is already a thing of the past. I hear that in the West, racial and ethnic problems are still very troublesome, and that the living conditions and status of minorities are still very inferior.
- I think that the race problem was bigger a hundred years ago. The situation has already changed quite a lot.
- Is that so?
- Our government requires that their employees include a certain number of minority individuals. In our schools minorities are also given special help.
- Then as far as levels of education, job opportunities, and standard of living are concerned, do you think that the minority situation has improved in all these areas?
- I think that ethnic and racial problems have historical causes, as well as political, economic, and cultural

*Speaker A on the tape says Jīnǐng, which is another pronunciation. The dictionary pronunciation is Jīnǐng.

miànde yuányīn, xǔduō guójiā dōu
hǎi yǒu zhèizhǒng wèntí. Zài Měi-
guó, wǒmende zhèngfǔ hé rénmin dōu
zài nǚlǐ tígāo shǎoshù mínzúde dì-
wei. Shǎoshù mínzúde qíngkuàng
yídìng huì yuè lái yuè hǎo.

ones. Many countries still have this
kind of problem. In America, our
government and people are making an
effort to raise the status of our mi-
norities. The situation is sure to
get better and better for them.

B: Hǎojíle. Wǒmen dōu xīwàng gè
mínzúde shēnghuó yuè guò yuè hǎo.
Jíning zhàn dào le, wǒmen xiàqu
kànkàn ba!

Great. We all hope that life will
improve for all peoples. We've
arrived at Jíning station. Let's get
off and have a look around.

A: Hǎode. Zhèr yǐjīng shì Nèi Měng-
gǔ le, bǐ Dàtóng lěngde duō, wǒ qù
chuān jiàn máoyī jiù lái.

All right. This is already Inner
Mongolia, and it's much colder than
Dàtóng. I'm going to go put on a
sweater and I'll be right back.

B: Hǎode, wǒ zài chēxiāng ménkǒu
děng nǐ.

Okay. I'll wait for you at the
door of this car.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

At an exhibition on general Chinese history in Běijīng's Museum of Chinese History, a young woman (B) is sitting on a bench taking some notes. When an American tourist (A) walks by, the young woman gets up to let him have her seat.

A: Nǐ zài xiě dōngxì, kuài qǐng zuò-
xia, bú yào kèqì.

You're writing, please sit down.
Don't be polite.

B: Wǒ lái bǎ zhèi jǐběn shū nàkāi,
nǐn zuòxia xiūxiūxi.

I'll move these books away and you
can sit down and rest.

A: Zhèiběnr Zhōngguó Gǔdàishǐ shì
nǐde ma?

Is this History of Ancient China
yours?

B: Shì wǒde. Zhèiběnr shūlǐ guānyú
yíwèi Tángcháo huángdìde gùshi hé
zhèige zhǎnlǎnhuìshàng shuōde bú
tài yíyàng, suǒyǐ wǒ bǎ ta xiěxia-
lai dàihuìqu kànkàn.

Yes, it is. There are some differ-
ences between the version of a story
about a Táng dynasty emperor in this
book and the version given in the
exhibit, so I'm writing it down to
take home and read.

A: Nǐ shì Běifāng rén ma?

Are you from the north?

B: Wǒ lǎojiā zài Zhéjiāng, xiānzài
zài Qīnghǎi gōngzuò, zhèicì shì lái
Běijīng chūchāide.

Originally I'm from Zhéjiāng, but
now I work in Qīnghǎi. This time I'm
in Běijīng on business.

A: Qīnghǎide xùmù yè hěn fādá ba?

Qīnghǎi's livestock farming is very
developed, isn't it?

B: Xùmuyède qíngkuàng bú cuò, búguò méiyǒu Nèiměng, Xīnjiāng nàme hǎo.

Livestock farming is doing well, but the situation isn't as good as in Inner Mongolia and Xīnjiāng.

A: Rénmínde shēnghuó shuǐpíng zěnmeyàng?

How is the people's standard of living?

B: Chīde chà yidiǎnr, zhǔyào shì jiāotōng bù fāngbiān, biéde shēnghuó fāngmiàn me, yě méiyǒu nèidì hǎo.

The food is rather poor, but the main thing is that transportation is difficult. As for other aspects of life, well, they aren't as good as in the interior either.

A: Nǐ zài Qīnghǎi gōngzuò, zuò shénme ne?

What is your work in Qīnghǎi?

B: Dāngguo nóngmín, yě dāngguo Jiěfàngjūn, xiànzài zài yíge jiànzhù cáiliàochǎng dāng gōngren.

I've been a peasant and I've been in the P.L.A. Now I'm a worker in a construction materials factory.

A: Ng, nǐ zuòguo bù shǎode shìqing.

Mm, you've done a lot of things.

B: Xiànzài bù shǎo niánqīng rén dōu shì zhèiyàngde. Kěshì wǒ zuì yǒu xìngqude hái shì lìshǐ.

These days a lot of young people are like that. But I'm still most interested in history.

A: Nǐ yào shàng dàxué niàn lìshǐ ma?

Do you want to go to college to study history?

B: Yào. Duì le, nǐn kàn Zhōngwén bào ma?

Yes, I do. Oh, do you read the Chinese newspapers?

A: Kàn.

Yes.

B: Zhèi liǎngtiānde Rénmín Rìbào nǐn kānguo ma?

Have you been reading the People's Daily the last couple of days?

A: Kānguo le. Bàoshang shuō hěn duō dàxué yào bàn hánshòubān le.

Yes. It said in the paper that a lot of colleges are going to start correspondence courses.

B: Duì le, suǒyǐ wǒ zài zhèr zhǔnbèi kǎoshì.

Right, so I'm preparing to take the exams here.

A: Zhèizhǒng dàxué zěnmeyàng niàn ne?

How do you go about attending these colleges?

B: Kǎoshàngle yǐhòu, xuéxiào jǐ gei wǒmen shū hé biéde xuéxí cáiliào, wǒmen zìjǐ zìxué, ànshí bǎ zuòyè hé kǎoshì jiāo gei xuéxiào. Gōngchǎng fàng jiàde shíhou wǒ kéyì huí lǎojiā qu kàn fùmǔ, hái kéyì qù dà-

After we pass the exam, the school sends us the books and other study materials, and we study on our own, turning in our homework and tests when required. When I have vacation from the factory, I can go back to my home-

xué xiàng lǎoshī qǐngjiào.

town to visit my parents, and I can also go to the college to ask for help from the teachers.

A: Nà bú cuò ma, zhèiyang niàn shū yě kéyǐ yǒu dàxué bìyède shuǐpíng ma?

That's pretty good. By going to school like that can you reach the level of a college graduate?

B: Kéyǐ. Zhōngguó gǔdàishǐ shí hěn yǒu yìside, wǒ yíding yào hǎohāor niàn.

Yes, you can. Ancient Chinese history is very interesting. I'm determined to study hard.

A: Hǎo, zhù nǐ chénggōng!

Good, I wish you success.

B: Xièxie nǐ!

Thank you!



The location of China's loess plateau

Loess is a fine-grained, chalky soil between silt and clay, actually a deposit of wind-blown sand. China's loess deposits are the most extensive in the world; they cover most of Shānxī and Shānxī provinces, and the better part of Gānsù, and extend into Hébēi and Hénán as well. Because it holds moisture well, loess makes good farming ground when irrigated. Loess is buff to gray in color (the Chinese word for loess, huángtǔ, means literally, "yellow soil") and it is loess that gives the Yellow River its distinctive yellowish appearance.

Unit 7, Reference List

1. A: Cǒng gōngshè dào chénglǐ hái zhēn yuǎn, shèyuánmen jìn chéng mǎi dōngxī yǒu diǎnr bú tài fāngbian ba? It's such a long way from the commune into town, isn't it kind of inconvenient for the commune members to go into town to shop?
- B: Nín méi kànjian, yánzhe gōnglù bànle hǎojǐge xiǎo shāngdiàn, mǎi dōngxī hái suàn fāngbian. Didn't you see, a lot of little stores have been set up along the highway. It's fairly convenient to shop there.
2. A: Tiělùshang fāshēng shénme wèntí le ma? Wèishénme zhèibān tèkuài bǐ mǎnchē hái mǎn? Has some problem come up on the railroad? Why is this express even slower than a slow train?
- B: Nín bié jǐnzhāng, wǒ yě méi xiǎngdào yǒu zhèige qíngkuàng, wǒ xiānzài jiù qù wènwēngīngchū. Don't get nervous. I didn't expect this either. I'll go try to find out about it right now.
3. A: Zài máng wǒ yě děi huíqu yītàng, gāng mǎihǎode liǎngyàng dōngxī, quán wàng zài shāngdiànli le! No matter how busy I am I have to go back there. I left both the things I just bought in the store!
- B: Háishì máfan dǎoyóu huíqu zhǎo yītàng ba! Nín bié qù le. It would be better to trouble the guide to go back and look for them. Don't you go.
4. A: Shíjiān tài jǐn, yǒude dìfang wǒ jiù bú qù le, bǐfang shuō yòuéryuán ba! Yǐhòu zài qù cānguān ba! I'm too pressed for time, so there are some places I'm not going. The kindergarten, for example--I'll visit there another time.
- B: Hǎo. Wǒmen xuǎn jǐge yào-jǐnde dìfang cānguān hǎo le. All right. Let's choose a few important places to visit.
5. A: Cóng chǎnliàngshang kàn, Chángjiāng yǐnán de nóngyè shēngchǎn qíngkuàng zhēn bú cuò. From the point of view of yield, the agricultural production situation south of the Yangtze River is really good.
- B: Chángjiāng yǐnán bú yòng shuō le, jiù shì Chángjiāng yǐběi shēngchǎn qíngkuàng yě gǎnshànglái la! For the area south of the Yangtze that goes without saying, but even north of the Yangtze the level of production is catching up!

6. A: Shōudū Gāngtiě Gōngsīde gōngren dōu zài zhèige shítáng chī fàn ma?
 B: Òu, wǒmen gōngsī yǒu hǎojǐwàn zhígōng, jiāshǔ, yǒu bù shǎo de dà shítáng ne!
 Do all the workers in the Capital Iron and Steel Company eat in this dining hall?
 Oh, our company has tens of thousands of staff and workers and their families. There are lots of large dining halls!
7. A: Shàngcì wǒ cānguān qìchē zhì-zāochǎngde shíhou hǎoxiāng zài nǎr jiànguo ta, tā shì nǎrde zhígōng ba?
 B: Nín gǎocuò le, tā shì wǒmen Lǚxíngshède gōngzuò rényuán.
 It seems to me I saw him someplace the time I visited the automobile plant. Isn't he a staff member or worker there?
 You're mistaken. He's one of our Travel Service personnel.
8. A: Nǐmen chǎng yíbànr yǐshàngde gōngren sùshè dōu shì xīnde ma!
 B: Nèi jǐnián, sùshè bèi gǎode luànqībāzāo, zhǐ hǎo gài xīnde le.
 At your factory, over half of your workers' living quarters are new!
 During those few years, the living quarters were wrecked up, we had no choice but to build new ones.
9. A: Lái! Bǎ zhèi jǐge jiǎozi dòu xiāomiè le!
 B: "Xiāomiè" jiǎozi? Wǒ dào méi tīngguo zhèige shuōfǎr!
 Come on. Polish off [literally, "exterminate"] these dumplings!
 "Polish off" dumplings? I've never heard that expression before!
10. A: Wǒ fāxiàn nǐmende gōngzuò jìnxíngde bú cuò ma! Bù xūyào shíjiān le ba?
 B: Nǐ shuōde dào róngyi! Nǐ zhīdao wǒmen yǒngle duōshǎo yèyú shíjiān!
 I find that your work is proceeding very well. I don't suppose you need any more time.
 That's easy for you to say. You don't know how much of our time after hours we used!
11. A: Chǎng lǐngdǎo hàozhāo quánchǎng gōngren zhèige yuè duō shēngchǎn sībǎibù qìchē.
 B: Bú cuò a! Nà zhèige yuède chǎnliàng chàbuduō děngyú shàngge yuède yíbèi bàn la!
 The leadership of our factory made an appeal to the workers of the whole factory to produce four hundred more cars this month.
 That's great! Then this month's output is about equal to one and a half times last month's!

Unit 7, Vocabulary List

àn	according to
-bèi	time, -fold
bèi	(passive marker)
-bù	(counter for automobiles, machines, etc.)
Chángjiāng	Yangtze River
dào	yet, on the contrary, nevertheless
dǎoyóu	(tour) guide
děngyú	to equal, to be equal to
fāshēng	to happen, to occur
fāxiàn	to discover
gāngtiě	iron and steel
gǎnshàng(lái)	to catch up
gǎocuò	to do wrong; to be wrong (mistaken)
gōnglù	highway
hǎishí	it would be better to
hàozhào (hàozhào)	to call, to appeal
jiāshǔ	family members, (family) dependents
jǐn	to be tight
jìnxíng	to carry on, to conduct; to be
jǐnzhāng	to be nervous, to be tense
jiùshi...yě...	even (if)...
kuài yào	will soon
qīngchǔ (-chu)	to be clear, to be distinct
rényuán	personnel, staff
shèyuán	commune member
shítáng	mess hall, dining room
sùshè	living quarters; dormitory
tiělù	railroad
xiāomiè	to eliminate, to abolish, to exterminate, to wipe out
xuǎn	to choose
-yàng	kind (bound form)
yánzhe	along(side)

yèyú
yǐ-

spare time, after hours, amateur
(used before direction words to
mark direction with reference to
a point)

yǐshàng
yǐxià
yòuéryuán

above, over (an amount)
under (an amount)
kindergarten

zhígōng

staff and workers; worker or
staff member

zhìzào
zhìzàochǎng

to manufacture
manufacturing plant, factory

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Cǒng gōngshè dào chénglǐ hái
zhēn yuǎn, shèyuánmen jìn
chéng mǎi dōngxī yǒu diǎnr
bú tài fāngbian ba? It's such a long way from the commune
into town, isn't it kind of incon-
venient for the commune members to
go into town to shop?
- B: Nín méi kànjian, yánzhe gōnglù
bànle hǎojǐge xiǎo shāngdiàn,
mǎi dōngxī hái suàn fāngbian. Didn't you see, a lot of little stores
have been set up along the highway.
It's fairly convenient to shop there.

Notes on No. 1

hái zhēn yuǎn: Hái, "still," in this sentence may go untranslated; it expresses surprise at how far it is into town. In this meaning, hái is often used before zhēn, "really."

Nǐ hái zhēn bú pà lěng, zhème
lěngde tiān chuān zhème shǎo! You really don't mind ("aren't afraid
of") the cold; you wear so little
in such cold weather!

Shèyuán, "commune member," includes working members and their non-working family members. The ending -yuán is used in various compound words to mean "member":

Dǎngyuán	Party member
Tuányuán	(Communist Youth) League member
huìyuán OR chéngyuán	member

yǒu diǎnr bú tài fāngbian: "a little inconvenient, kind of inconvenient"
You are familiar with the phrasing yǒu diǎnr bù fāngbian. Here you see that
use bú tài instead of just bù.

Yánzhe, "along, alongside," is used for longer distances than pángbiān,
"side."

Qìchē yánzhe zhèitiáo lù kāile
hěn jiǔ cái kànjian yíge rén. The car drove along this road a
long time before they saw a person.

Yánzhe fāngzi sībiānr zhòngle
hǎoduō huā. A lot of flowers were planted along
the four sides of the house (i.e.,
all around the house).

BUT:
Fāngzi pángbiān zhòngle hǎoduō
huā. A lot of flowers were planted along-
side the house (on the side or sides).

gōnglù: "public-road," i.e., "highway" "Expressway" is gāosù gōnglù,
"high-speed public-road." (As of this writing, mainland China has no express-
ways; Taiwan has one, which goes from the north to the south of the island.)

hái suàn: "can still be considered to be..." This is an idiom for "fairly." Compare the use of hái for "fairly" which you learned in the Society module, for example, Hái hǎo, "Fairly good."

Tā hái suàn wèntí shǎode xuéshēng, biéde rén wèntí gèng duō. He can be considered a student with relatively few problems; the others have even more problems.

Nà hái suàn xiǎo shì. That's no big thing ("a small matter").

2. A: Tiělùshang fāshēng shénme wèntí le ma? Wèishénme zhèibān tèkuài bǐ mànchē hái màn? Has some problem come up on the railroad? Why is this express even slower than a slow train?
- B: Nín bié jǐnzhāng, wǒ yě méi xiǎngdào yǒu zhèige qíngkuàng, wǒ xiànzài jiù qù wènwèngqīngchǔ. Don't get nervous. I didn't expect this either. I'll go try to find out about it right now.

Notes on No. 2

tiělù: "railroad," literally, "iron-road"

Xīběide tiělù bù duō, érqǐě yǒu bù shǎo shì gāng xiūde. There aren't many railroads in the Northwest, and many of them were just built.

Wǒ yǒu yíge gēge zài tiělùshang gōngzuò. I have an older brother who works on the railroad.

fāshēng: "to happen," "to occur" The event which happens often follows fāshēng in the sentence (just as in sentences with yǒu, "there is," the thing that exists often follows yǒu):

Bù zhīdào fāshēngle shénme shìqing, láiile zhème duō rén. I wonder what has happened that so many people have come here.

Zhèi jǐtiān fāshēngle hǎojǐjiàn qíguài de shì. The last few days, a lot of strange things have been happening.

Nèi shíhou fāshēngde shì, wǒ dōu bù zěnme qīngchǔ le. The things that happened then aren't very clear in my mind anymore.

Shéi dōu bù jìde zhèijiàn shì shì shénme shíhou fāshēngde le. No one remembers when that event took place anymore.

bǐ mànchē hái màn: "even slower than a slow train" Here, hái is used as "even."

Zuótiān lěng, jīntiān bǐ zuótiān hái lěng. It was cold yesterday, (but) today is even colder than yesterday.

jǐnzhāng: "to be nervous," "to be tense"

Zài zhèlǐ kāi chē zhēn jǐnzhāng, It's really nerve-racking to drive
bù zhīdào shénme shíhòu huì here. You don't know when you might
zhuàngdao rén. run into someone.

wènwengqingchǔ: "to inquire until clear," i.e., "to try to find out the true situation." Notice that you can reduplicate a verb (here, wèn) even when the verb is followed by a resultative ending (here, qingchǔ). Other examples: Qǐng nǐ bǎ shìqing shuōshuoqingchǔ, "Please explain this more clearly"; Bǎ zhuōzi cācāgānjìng, "Wipe the table clean."

3. A: Zài máng wǒ yě děi huíqu yí-tàng, gāng mǎihǎode liǎng-yàng dōngxì, quán wàng zài shāngdiànli le! No matter how busy I am I have to go back there. I left both the things I just bought in the store!

B: Háishì máfan dǎoyóu huíqu zhǎo yítàng ba! Nǐn bié qù le. It would be better to trouble the guide to go back and look for them. Don't you go.

Notes on No. 3

zài máng...yě...: "no matter how busy..." The zài in this pattern (meaning literally, "more, additionally") must be given extra-heavy stress: ZÀI máng wǒ yě děi huíqu. Yě here means "still, even so."

Zhōngwén ZÀI nán wǒ yě yào xué. No matter how hard Chinese is, I'm still going to study it.

-tàng: This counter for trips need not be translated here. Used with verbs like lái, qù, huílai, huíqu, etc., -tàng simply counts the number of times someone goes someplace. Other examples:

Tā shàngge xīngqī dào Shànghǎi qùle yítàng. Last week he made a trip to Shànghǎi.

Wǒ jīntiān yǐjīng wǎng tā nàr pǎole liǎngtàng le. I've already made two trips to his place today.

-yàng: "kind, sort" You have learned the word -zhǒng, "kind, sort, type." These words are slightly different in usage; sometimes -yàng should not be translated literally as "kind," but just left out of the translation (see the third, fourth, and fifth examples).

Zhèi jǐyàng dōngxì wǒ dōu méi kànjianguo, hěn qíguài. I've never seen these kinds of things. They're very strange.

Nǐ kàndechūlái zhèi liǎngyàng dōngxì yǒu shénme bù yíyàng ma? Can you tell what's different about these two kinds of things?

Wǒmen jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu
jīyàng cài?

How many dishes are we having tonight
[for dinner]?

Tā dào shāngdiàn qùle jǐcì yě
méi mǎihui yīyàng dōngxi lai.

He went to the store several times,
but didn't come back with a single
thing.

Wǒ zhèr hái yǒu liǎngyàng shuǐ-
guǒ...yīge píngguǒ yīge júzi.

I still have two fruits here...one
apple and one tangerine/orange.

háishi: "it would be better to..." This is another meaning for the
word which you first learned as meaning "still."

Wǒ bù shūfu, háishi shǎo chí
diǎnr ba.

I'm not feeling well. I'd better
not eat too much.

Háishi Ōuyáng Lǎoshī yīge rén
qù, nǐmen dōu liú zài zhèr ba.

It would be better if Teacher Ouyang
went alone; the rest of you just
stay here.

Also used in the pattern háishi . . . hǎo:

Háishi nǐ qù hǎo.

It would be better if you went.

4. A: Shíjiān tài jǐn, yǒude dìfang
wǒ jiu bú qù le, bǐfang shuō
yòuéryuán ba! Yǐhòu zài qù
cānguān ba!

I'm too pressed for time, so there are
some places I'm not going. The kin-
dergarten, for example--I'll visit
there another time.

B: Hǎo. Wǒmen xuǎn jǐge yào-
jǐnde dìfang cānguān hǎo le.

All right. Let's choose a few
important places to visit.

Notes on No. 4

jǐn: "to be tight," in both literal and figurative senses.

Zhèishuāng xié tài jǐn.

These shoes are too tight.

Bǎ mén guānjǐn.

Shut the door tight.

Wǒde shíjiān ānpaide hěn jǐn.

I have a very tight schedule.

bǐfang shuō...ba: Ba can be used at the end of a bǐfang shuō phrase.
Compare the use of ba shown in unit 5.

yòuéryuán: "kindergarten," literally, "young-child-garden" In Taiwan,
the word yòuzhīyuán is used instead.

xuǎn: "to choose," "to select"; "to elect"

Tāmen xuǎn wǒ zuò dàibiǎode[°] shí- When they elected me as representative,
hou, wǒ hěn bù hǎo yìsī. I was very embarrassed.

Tā zài shāngdiànli zǒule bàntiān She walked around the store for a
yě méi xuǎndào tā xǐhuande long time but didn't find anything
dōngxī. she liked.. (Xuǎn is often used
for "selecting"--buying--items at
a store.)

5. A: Cóng chǎnliàngshang kàn, From the point of view of yield, the
Chángjiāng yǐnánde nóngyè agricultural production situation
shēngchǎn qíngkuàng zhēn bú south of the Yangtze River is really
cuō. good.
- B: Chángjiāng yǐnán bú yòng shuō For the area south of the Yangtze that
le, jiù shì Chángjiāng yǐběi goes without saying, but even north
shēngchǎn qíngkuàng yě gǎn- of the Yangtze the level of produc-
shànglái la! tion is catching up!

Notes on No. 5

cóng chǎnliàngshang kàn: "from the point of view of yield" Other examples of this pattern: cóng shùliàngshang kàn, "from the point of view of numbers/quantity"; cóng fāzhǎn jīngjìshang kàn, "from the point of view of developing the economy."

Chángjiāng: "Long-River," the Yangtze, now called the Changjiang in PRC publications. China's longest river (6,300 kilometers), the Changjiang is an important artery of water transportation, passing through the cities of Chóngqīng, Wūhàn, Nánjīng, and Shànghǎi.

...yǐnán: "to the south of..." Yǐběi is "to the north of."

Júzi zhòng zài Chángjiāng yǐnán Tangerines grown south of the Chang-
shì tiánde, dào le Chángjiāng jiang are sweet, but north of the
yǐběi jiù chéng le kǔde le. Changjiang, they become bitter.

jiù shì...yě...: (1) "even..."; (2) "even if . . ."

(1) Jiù shì wǒ yě zhīdao. Even I know that.

Jiù shì xuézhě yě bù dǒng zhèige Even scholars do not understand
wèntí. this problem.

Zhèige dà píngguǒ shì wǒ tèbié I picked this big apple out especially
xuǎnchulai gěi nǐde. for you.

[°]dàibiǎo, "representative, delegate" (TVL, Unit 8)

(2) Tā shuō jiùshì nǐ qù zuò yě zuòbuhǎo. He said that even if you did it, you wouldn't do it right.

Nǐ jiùshì mǎile wǒ yě bù chī. Even if you bought it I wouldn't eat it.

bú yòng shuō X, jiù shì Y yě...: This three-part pattern means "For X, that goes without saying, but even Y is...." Sometimes in English we mention the parts X and Y in the reverse order: "Even Y is . . . , not to mention X."

Nèige dìfang zhēn hǎowánr, bú yòng shuō xiǎoháir, jiù shì dàren yě zài nàr wánrde hěn gāoxìng. That place is really fun. Even grown-ups have a great time there, not to mention children.

For bú yòng shuō, you can often substitute bú yào shuō. For jiù shì, you can substitute lián. For yě, you can substitute dōu.

When the clause after yě has bù or méi, you can translate bú yòng shuō as "much less":

Bú yòng shuō zhōngxuéshēng, jiù shì yánjiūshēng yě kànbudǒng zhèipiān wénzhāng. Even graduate students cannot understand this article, much less high school students.

Wǒ bú yòng shuō xiě, lián tīng yě láibují. I couldn't even keep up listening to it, much less write it down.

Bú yào shuō qù kàn diànyǐng, wǒ lián chī fànde shíjiān dōu méiyóu. I don't even have time to eat, much less go to the movies.

gǎnshànglái: "to catch up" by hurrying (gǎn means "to hurry")

Tā suīrán bìngle hǎojítiān, kěshì xuéxí háishì gǎnshànglái le. Although he has been sick for quite a few days, he has caught up with his schoolwork.

Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì, nǐmen xiān zǒu ba! Dēng yíhuǐr wǒ jiù gǎnshànglái. I have something I have to do. You go on ahead. I'll catch up with you in a minute.

6. A: Shǒudū Gāngtiě gōngsīde gōngren dōu zài zhèige shítáng chī fàn ma? Do all the workers in the Capital Iron and Steel Company eat in this dining hall?

B: Òu, wǒmen gōngsī yǒu hǎojíwàn zhígōng, jiāshù, yǒu bù shǎode dà shítáng ne! Oh, our company has tens of thousands of staff and workers and their families. There are lots of large dining halls!

Notes on No. 6

gāngtiě: Literally, "steel-iron," but usually translated as "iron and steel" (The usual order of paired words in Chinese and English is often the same, but sometimes differs. Other examples are bàba māma, "mom and dad"; yéye nǎinai, "grandma and grandpa.")

shítáng: "dining hall," "cafeteria," "mess hall"

zhígōng: "staff and workers"; "staff member or worker"

Zhèige chǎngde zhígōng dàbùfen shì nǚde. The staff and workers of this factory are mostly women.

Zhèige zhígōng xuéxiào yǒu bù shǎo hěn hǎode lǎoshī, tāmen dōu duì zhígōng jiàoyu hěn rèxīn. This staff and worker school has a lot of good teachers who are very interested and enthusiastic toward staff and worker education.

Zhígōng shítáng chángcháng mài lěng fàn. Staff and worker dining halls often sell cold food.

jiāshǔ: "family members," "(family) dependents"

Gànbude jiāshǔ chángcháng shòudào tèbiéde zhàogu. The families of cadres often receive special care.

Dàqingde gōngren jiāshǔ hěn duō dōu shì nóngmín. Many families of workers at Dàqing are peasants.

NOTE: Although in context jiāshǔ may be translated as "family," as in the sentence above, it is different from jiāting. Jiāting refers to the family unit, the household. Jiāshǔ refers collectively to the family members other than the head of household.

yǒu bù shǎode dàshítáng ne!: On this use of ne, see Unit 3 Reference Notes, Notes on No. 5.

7. A: Shàngcì wǒ cānguān qìchē zhì-zào chǎngde shíhou hǎoxiāng zài nǎr jiānguo ta, tā shì nàrde zhígōng ba? It seems to me I saw him someplace the time I visited the automobile plant. Isn't he a staff member or worker there?

B: Nín gāocuò le, tā shì wǒmen Lǚxíngshède gōngzuò rényuán. You're mistaken. He's one of our Travel Service personnel.

Notes on No. 7

zhìzào: "to manufacture," as in Zhōngguó zhìzào, "Made in China."

zhìzào chǎng, "plant," "factory"

zài nǎr jiànguo ta: "have seen him somewhere" Nǎr, like other question words used in statements, becomes an indefinite pronoun here: "somewhere."

Wǒ jìde wǒ zài nǎr chīguo zhèige cǎi. I remember having this dish 'somewhere before.

gǎocuò: "to get (something) wrong" or "to do (something) wrong"

Bié gǎocuò le, zhèige zì hěn fùzá ne! Don't get it wrong; this character is very complicated!

Ò, wǒ gǎocuò le, tā bú shì wǒ yào zhǎode nèige nǚháizi. Oh, I'm mistaken. She isn't the young woman I'm looking for.

Tā bǎ zhèige wèntí gǎocuò le, méiyǒu nǎme fùzá. He has misunderstood this problem. It's not that complicated.

Compare other verbs that have the resultative ending ending -cuò:

Nǐ niàncuò le ba, zhèige zì hǎoxiàng bú niàn lǚè, niàn liè. You've read it wrong, haven't you? I don't think this character is read lǚè; it's read liè.

Xiǎoxīn, bú yào zǒucuò. Careful, don't go the wrong way.

rényuán: "personnel," "staff" Often used in gōngzuò rényuán, "working personnel," "staff member."

Zhèli suǒyǒude gōngzuò rényuán dōu shàngguo dàxué. All the personnel here have attended college.

Wǒmen xiànzài xūyào hěn duō dǒng Yīngyǔde kējì rényuán. We now need a lot of scientific and technical personnel who understand English.

8. A: Nǐmen chǎng yíbàn yíshàngde gōngren sùshè dōu shì xīnde ma! At your factory, over half of your workers' living quarters are new!

B: Nèi jǐnián, sùshè bèi gǎode luànqǐbāzǎo, zhǐ hǎo gài xīnde le. During those few years, the living quarters were wrecked up, we had no choice but to build new ones.

Notes on No. 8

yíbàn yíshàng: "over half" Yíshàng and yíxià are used after quantities to mean, respectively, "over" and "under" an amount.

Zhède yánjiūshēng, sānshisuì yíxiàde bú tài duō. Not many of the graduate students here are under thirty.

Zài Běijīng, wǔcéng lóu yǐshàng-
de dànlóu cái yǒu diàntī.

In Běijīng, only buildings over five
stories high have elevators.

Bǎifēn zhī bāshíwǔ yǐshàngde
Zhōngguó rénkǒu shì nóngmín.

Over eighty-five percent of the popula-
tion of China is made up of peasants.

sùshè: "living quarters"; "dormitory" This can either refer to the kind of quarters we think of as dormitories, with many people living and sleeping in each large room, or it can mean housing provided by an institution for its workers, with each family living in separate quarters.

Zhèi dìfāng shì gāngtiěchǎngde
gōngren sùshè.

This place is the workers' quarters
of the iron and steel plant.

Wàijiāobùde sùshè bǐ biéde bùde
sùshè dōu piàoliang.

The Foreign Ministry living quarters
are better-looking than those of
any other ministry.

nèi jǐnián: "those few years" This is currently a way of referring to the period of the Cultural Revolution.

bèi: This is a prepositional verb which indicates the DOER of the action, similar to the English "by" in passive sentences (like "John was hit by Bill"). In sentences with bèi, the subject of the sentence is the receiver of the action and the object of bèi is the doer of the action:

Wǒde zìdiǎn bèi rén jièzǒu le.

My dictionary was borrowed by
someone.

Nèi jǐnián, zhěnggè shèhuì bèi
jǐge rén gǎode luànqībāzāo,
zhēn méi bànǎ shuō.

Those few years, the whole society
was messed up by a few people;
it is really sad.

Unlike most prepositional verbs, bèi can be used without an object, as in sentence 8B. Here is another example:

Wǒde xīn qìchē bèi zhuàng le.

My new car was hit.

9. A: Lái! Bǎ zhèi jǐge jiǎozi dōu
xiāomiè le!

Come on. Polish off [literally,
"exterminate"] these dumplings!

B: "Xiāomiè" jiǎozi? Wǒ dào méi
tīngguo zhèige shuōfǎr!

"Polish off" dumplings? I've never
heard that expression before!

Notes on No. 9

Lái!: Notice that lái does not necessarily mean "come here," but can also mean "come on" and do some action.

Lái, zánmen gān yībēi!

Come on, let's empty a glass
together!

Lái ba, wǒmen shàng kè ba, bù
shuō biéde le.

Come on, let's get on with class and
stop talking about other things.

Lái lái lái, wǒ lái gěi nǐmen
jièshào wǒ gēn nǐmen shuōguode
Liáng Jiàoshòu.

Now everyone, let me introduce
Professor Liáng, whom I've told
you about before.

xiāomiè: "to exterminate/eliminate/wipe out/stamp out" bad things such
as landlords, the enemy, illness, poverty, illiteracy, rats, flies, etc. In
sentence 9, it is used humorously.

bǎ...xiāomiè le!: You long ago learned le, the marker of completion.
Here, le indicates that the action of the verb gets rid of something in one
fell swoop. Here are other examples for comparison:

Bǎ zhèige zhuōzi mài le ba,
méi yòng le.

Sell this table. It's of no use
anymore.

Bǎ diànshì guān le, wǒ bú
kàn le.

Turn off the T.V. I don't want to
watch any more.

Bǎ yīfu tuō le ba, zhèr tài rè.

Take off your coat; it's too hot
here.

This use of le is especially frequent with the adverb dōu, "all":

Dōu mǎi le ba!

Why not buy all of them!

Dōu hē le ba!

Drink the whole thing!

dào: "yet, nevertheless, on the contrary" This is a very common adverb
with one basic idea to it--the idea of contrasting one element with another.
Depending on the context, the translation into English will differ. Here are
examples of the main contexts in which you will encounter dào:

(1) One particular element in the sentence is contrasted with something
previously mentioned, about to be mentioned, or understood. (The
contrasted elements are underlined in the following examples.)

A: Nǐ xiǎng hē diǎn shénme?

What would you like to drink?

B: Wǒ bù xiǎng hē shénme, wǒ
dào xiǎng chī diǎn shénme.

I don't feel like having anything to
drink. I would like something to
eat, though.

Xià yǔde shíhou nǐ bú dài sǎn,
jīntiān bú xià yǔ nǐ dào dài
sǎn!

On rainy days you don't take an
umbrella with you, but today, when
it isn't raining, you do take one
with you!

(2) The whole situation expressed by the sentence contrasts with another
particular set of circumstances previously mentioned, about to be
mentioned, or understood.

Bǎnshàng zuì hǎode xuéshēng zhèi-
cǐ dào kǎode zuì bù hǎo.

The best student in the class did the
worst on the exam this time.

- A: Jīnnián dōngtiān zhēn lěng! It's really cold this winter!
 B: Shēng bīngde rén dào shǎo le. Fewer people have been getting sick, though.
- A: Zhè fángzi nàme xiǎo, yòu This house/apartment is so small, and so expensive.
 nàme guǐ.
 B: Kěshì nǐ shàng bān duó fāng- But it's so convenient for you to go to work.
 bian!
 A: Nà dào shì. Well, that's true.
- Wǒ dào shì xiǎng bāng máng, jiù I did want to help, it's just that I didn't have the time.
 shì méi shíjiān.
- Shìqing dào shì guòqu le, hěn It was over with, but we couldn't forget about it for a long time.
 cháng shíjiān yě wàngbuliǎo.
- Nà dào méi guānxi, zhǐ yào tā bú That doesn't matter. As long as he doesn't mind, then let it go at that.
 jièyì jiù suàn le.
- (3) The whole sentence contrasts with expectations. In these cases, dào sometimes implies satisfaction with the state of affairs, sometimes dissatisfaction, and sometimes is neutral. In addition, it sometimes has an ironic meaning, as in the last three examples below.
- Yǒu zhèiyangde shì! Wǒ dào Is that so! Why, I didn't know!
 bù zhīdào!
- Āiyà! Wǒ dào bǎ zhèijiàn shì Oh no! I forgot about that!
 wàng le!
- Sānshíkuài? Nà dào bú guǐ. Thirty dollars? That's not so expensive. (Dào implies "I would have expected it to be more.")
- Rúguǒ zhēn shì zhèiyang, dào hái If that's really true, then there's still hope after all.
 yǒu xīwàng.
- Hǎng, nǐ dào zhēn jiǎng chí a! Well! Quite the gourmet aren't you! (jiǎng=to be meticulous about)
- Hng! Nǐ dào shuōde hǎotīng! Hmph! You make it sound easy! Let's see you do it!
 Nǐ zuòzuo kan.
- Tā shuō wǒ bù gāi zhème zuò, He says I shouldn't have done this, wǒ dào xiǎng zhīdao tā shì wǒ but I'd like to know what he would have done if he were me!
 zěme zuò!

10. A: Wǒ fāxiàn nǐmende gōngzuò jìnxíngde bú cuò ma! Bù xūyào shíjiān le ba? I find that your work is proceeding very well. I don't suppose you need any more time.
- B: Nǐ shuōde dào róngyi! Nǐ zhīdao wǒmen yòngle duōshǎo yèyú shíjiān! That's easy for you to say. You don't know how much of our time after hours we used!

Notes on No. 10

fāxiàn: "to discover," "to find out"; "discovery"

Wǒ dào le yóujú cái fāxiàn wǎng dài xīn le. I didn't discover I had forgotten to bring the letters with me until I was at the post office.

Hěn duō yīxué dà fāxiàn dōu fāshēng zài gōngyè géming yǐhòu. Many great medical discoveries were made after the industrial revolution.

The phrase Wǒ fāxiàn . . . is often used to preface an observation made about a person, or a fact that has just come to one's attention:

Wǒ fāxiàn nǐ hěn néng chī! I see you have quite a big appetite!

jìnxíng: "to carry on," "to conduct," "to proceed"

Zhèlide tāolùn jìnxíngde bú cuò, wèntí kuài shānglianghǎo le. The discussion here is proceeding well; the problem has almost been resolved.

yèyú: "spare-time," "after hours," "amateur" NOTE: "Spare time" as a noun must be translated as yèyú shíjiān.

Yèyú shíjiān wǒ xǐhuān kàn xiǎoshuō. I like to read fiction in my spare time.

Tā shì yèyú yǔyánxuéjiā. He is an amateur linguist.

11. A: Chǎng lǐngdǎo hàozhào quánchǎng gōngren zhèige yuè duō shēngchǎn sībǎibù qìchē. The leadership of our factory made an appeal to the workers of the whole factory to produce four hundred more cars this month.
- B: Bú cuò a! Nà zhèige yuède chǎnliàng chàbuduō děngyú shàngge yuède yíbei bàn la! That's great! Then this month's output is about equal to one and a half times last month's!

Notes on No. 11

Hàozhào or hàozhào means to issue an official appeal to engage in some activity:

Zhèngfǔ hàozhāo niánqīng rén
nǚlì xuéxí kēxué zhīshì. The government calls on young people
to work hard to acquire scientific
knowledge.

Yīnggāi hàozhāo dàjiā xiàng tā
xuéxí. We should call on everyone to learn
from her.

Chūntiān lái le, yòu hàozhāo
zhòng shù le. Spring is here; they're issuing calls
to plant trees again.

Lǐngdǎode hàozhāo zǒng shí yì
kāishǐ hěn duō rén tīng,
hòulái jiù méi rén zhùyì le. Appeals from the leaders are always
followed by many people in the
beginning, then later people stop
paying attention to them.

-bù: This is an extremely common and useful counter. It is used for cars, buses, machines, movies, and long books.

Zhèi shí yǐbù jiǎng huàxué
zhànzhēngde diànyǐng. This is a movie about chemical
warfare.

děngyú: "to be equal to"

Èr jiā èr děngyú sì. Two plus two equals four.

Děngyú is more often used in a non-mathematical sense:

Tā zhèiyang zuò, děngyú bǎ nǐ
zuòde quán dōu gǎi le. By doing this, he is in effect
changing everything you have done.
(Literally, "For him to do this
is equal to changing all you have
done.")

-bèi: "times," "-fold," as in

sānbèi	three times/threefold
shíbèi	ten times/tenfold
yībǎibèi	one hundred times/hundredfold

Amounts with -bèi can be used in two different patterns, and the type of pattern used influences the meaning, as follows:

EQUIVALENCE PATTERN (A = x times y)

--expresses equivalence between two amounts
--uses the verb shì, yǒu, or děngyú

Examples:	Liù shì èrde sānbèi.	Six is three times two.
	Tāde shū yǒu wǒde sìbèi.	He has four times as many books as I.
	Jīnniánde shōurù děngyú qùniánde liǎngbèi.	This year's income is twice last year's.

COMPARISON PATTERN (A is x times more than y)

- expresses comparison between two amounts
- uses bǐ, "compared to," "than"
- the number before -bèi must be translated into English as one more than the Chinese number

EXAMPLES:	Liù bǐ èr duō liǎngbèi.	Six is three times as much as two.
	Tāde shū bǐ wǒde duō sānbèi.	He has four times as many books as I.
	Jīnniándè shōurù bǐ qùnián duō yíbèi.	This year's income is twice last year's.

As you see, if you use liǎngbèi, "two times," in a comparison sentence, the meaning comes out to "the base amount plus two times the base amount," i.e., three times the base amount. Likewise, if you use yíbèi, "one time," the meaning is "the base amount plus one time the base amount," or in other words, twice the base amount.

Unit 7, Review Dialogue

This conversation takes place on one of the China Travel Service tour buses. The bus is on its way to the Capital Iron and Steel Company in Liáoníng province. Jane Colihan (A), an American economist, talks with Líng Lì (B) of the China Travel Service.

- B: Kǎlāhàn Nǚshì, nín háishi gǎnhuī-lai le!
Ms. Colihan, you made it back after all!
- A: Shíjiān zài jǐn, wǒ yě děi gǎnhuī-lai cānguān Shǒudū Gāngtiě gōng-sī a!
No matter how pressed I was for time, I had to get back in time to visit the Capital Iron and Steel Company!
- B: Wǒ xiǎng, nǐmen zhèicì dào Dōng-běi cānguān, yào qùde dìfang nàme duō, shíjiān yíding hěn jǐnzhāng, dàgǎi zhèi liǎngtiān hái huíbulái. Méi xiǎngdào, ānpaide hái bú cuō.
I thought there were so many places you wanted to go on this trip to Manchuria that you would be very rushed and wouldn't be able to get back by today or tomorrow. I'm surprised it was so well arranged.
- A: Ng, Dōngběi fāngmian gǎode hěn hǎo, wǒmen cānguānde dìfang jiāo-tōng dōu hěn fāngbian. Yánzhe tiělù, gōnglù, yízhàn yízhàn cānguānguòqu, zhème duō rénde cānguān-tuán, shénme wèntí dōu méiyǒu fāshēng, dàjiā dōu hěn mǎnyì, zhēn shí gǎode bú cuō.
Yeah. The people in Manchuria did quite a good job. Every place we visited, transportation was convenient. Visiting each stop along the railroad and highway, with a tour group of that size, no problems came up, and everyone was very pleased. It was really well handled.
- B: Nín tài kèqì le.
It's so nice of you to say that.
- A: Bú shì kèqì, zhèi shì zhēnde. Duì le, zhèicì lǚxíng, wǒ hái fāxiǎnle yíjiàn hěn yǒu yìside shìr.
I'm not just saying it, it's the truth! Oh yes, I found out something very interesting during the trip.
- B: Shénme shìr a?
What?
- A: Péi wǒmen cānguānde yíwèi nǚ gōngzuò rényuán, cóngqián zài yíge rén-mín gōngshè zuò shèyuán, hòulái hái zài yíge gōngchǎng zuò gōngren, liǎngnián yíqián kāishǐ zài Lǚxíngshè gōngzuò, tā zhēn shì yíwèi hǎo dǎoyóu.
A woman on the staff that accompanied us on the trip used to be a commune member, then became a worker in a factory, and then started to work in the (China) Travel Service two years ago. She's really a great guide.
- B: Tā shì bu shì Hēilóngjiāng rén?
Is she a native of Hēilóngjiāng?

A: Bú shì, tā bú shì Hēilóngjiāng rén, kěshì tā duì nàrde qíngkuàng hái zhēn shúxī. Lìshǐ, wénhuà, gōngyè, nóngyè, shénme tā dōu zhīdao. Tīng tā tánqilai zhēn yǒu yìsì.

No, she's not a native of Hēilóngjiāng, but she really knows the place well. History, culture, industry, agriculture, you name it. She's very interesting to listen to.

B: Wǒ zhīdao tā shì shéi le, tā cóngqián shì qìchē zhìzào chǎngde gōngren, xiānzài shì Lǚxíngshède xiānjìn gōngzuòzhě. Tā jiào Jīn Xiǎoméi.

I know who she is. She used to be a worker in an automobile manufacturing plant, and now she's one of the Travel Service's advanced workers. Her name is Jīn Xiǎoméi.

A: Duì le, duì le. Nǐ zhè yì shuō wǒ dào xiǎngqilai le, yǒu yìtiān wǒmen zuòde nèibù qìchē huàile, dàjiā dōu hěn dānxīn, wǒmen xiǎng wǒmen yídìng gǎnbushàng cānguān le. Kěshì nèiwèi xiānjìn gōngzuòzhě hé jǐge rén zài qìchē xiābianr mángle yīhuǐr, bú dào shífēn zhōng ba, chē jiù xiūhǎo le!

Right, right. That reminds me, one day our bus broke down, and everyone was very worried. We didn't think we could possibly make it in time for our tour. But that advanced worker worked under the bus for a while with some other people, and in less than ten minutes the bus was fixed!

B: Suǒyì nèitiān nǐmen hái shì àn yóulǎn jǐhuà, yào qùde dìfang dōu qù le?

So that day, you still made it to all the places you were supposed to go, according to your tour schedule?

A: Shì a. Wǒ yǒu shíhour jiù xiǎng, zhèiwèi Jīn Xiǎoméi zhēn shì xiāngdāng cōngmíngde rén, tā zěnme bú qù shàng dàxué ne? Shì bu shì Wénhuà Dà Gémíngde shíhou yǒu shénme shìqing gǎocuō le?

Yes. Sometimes I think to myself, this Jīn Xiǎoméi is really quite a smart person, why doesn't she go to college? Did she do something wrong during the Cultural Revolution?

B: Ò, méi shénme shìqing. Xiānzài bù guǎn zài nǎr gōngzuò dōu yǒu hěn duō jīhuì niǎn shū.

Oh, no. Now, no matter where you work, you have a lot of opportunities to study.

A: Ó, shì ma?

Oh, really?

B: Shì a, bǐfang shuō, wǒmen jīntiān yào cānguānde zhèige gāngtiě gōngsī ba, língdǎo hàozhāo zhígōng zài yèyú shíjiān xuéxí jìshù.

Sure. For example, the iron and steel company that we're going to visit today: the leaders appeal to the workers and staff to study technology in their spare time.

A: Yǒu hěn duō rén cānjiā ma?

Are there a lot of people taking part?

B: Yǒu. Jīnnián zài yèdàxué xuǎn kède zhígōng děngyú Wénhuà Dà Gémíng yìqíande liǎng-sānbèi.

Yes. The number of staff and workers taking [lit., "selecting"] classes at evening universities this year

- A: Qíngkuàng hěn hǎo a! Nàme Wénhuà Dà Gémíngde shíhou ne? Yǒu méiyǒu yèdàxué a?
- B: Nèi shíhou, zhěnggè guójiā dōu bèi gǎode luànqībāzāo le, hái yǒu shénme yèdàxué a!
- A: Xiànzài hǎo le.
- B: Xiànzài hǎoduō le, gōngsī yǒu shítáng, yǒu yòuéryuán, niánqīng gōngren bú yòng shuō le, jiù shì yǒu háizide zhígōng yě yǒu tiáojiàn shàng dàxué la!
- A: Zěnome, gōngsīde zhígōng dōu zhù zài gōngsī sùshèli ma?
- B: Shǒudū Gāngtiě Gōngsī bǐ yíge xiǎo chéng hái dà, bǎifēn zhǐ qībāshí yīshàngde zhígōng hé jiāshǔ dōu zhù zài gōngsīde sùshèli, shàng, xià bān fāngbian, shēnghuó fāngbian.
- A: Nà hǎo, nà zhēn keyǐ yǒu shíjiān niàn yìdiǎnr shū le.
- B: Suǒyǐ cōngmíngde, nǚlì xuéxíde niánqīngrén yídìng yǒu bànfǎ niàn shūde.
- A: Duì. Ng, wǒ hái yǒu yíge wèntí.
- B: Shénme wèntí?
- A: Wǒ hǎoxiàng zài bàoshang háishi zài nǎr kànjianguo yípiān wénzhāng, shuō Chángjiāng fújīn, ò, Chángjiāng yǐnán yě yǒu yíge xiàndàihuàde gāngtiě gōngsī, bǐ Shǒudū Gāngtiě Gōngsī hái dà.
- B: Shì a.
- A: Chángjiāng yǐnán shì zhōngyàode
- is equal to two or three times the number before the Cultural Revolution.
- That's good! And what about during the Cultural Revolution? Were there evening universities then?
- Back then, the whole country was messed up. Evening universities? Hardly!
- Now it's better.
- Much better. The company has dining halls and kindergartens. Not only young workers, even staff and workers with children are able to take (evening) university courses.
- What? The staff and workers of the company all live in company housing?
- The Capital Iron and Steel Company is even bigger than a town. More than seventy or eighty percent of the staff and workers and their families live in company housing. It makes it more convenient to go to work and to get home from work, and makes daily life more convenient.
- That's good. Then they really have time to study.
- So the smart young people who work hard are assured of the chance to go to school.
- Right. Uh, I have another question.
- What?
- I remember seeing an article, I think in the newspaper or somewhere, that said that in the Yangtze River area, no, to the south of the Yangtze, there is another modern iron and steel company that's even larger than the Capital Iron and Steel Company.
- Right.
- The area to the south of the Yangtze

nóngyèqū, cóng fāzhǎn jīngjìshàng kàn, hǎoxiàng yǒu yìdiǎnr bú tài héshì.

is an important agricultural area, from the point of view of economic development it doesn't seem to be too appropriate.

B: Duì, gōngyè wūrǎn duì nóngyè fāzhǎn méiyǒu hǎochū, wǒmen zài xiǎng bànfǎ. Shǒudū gāngtiě gōngsī yě yǒu wūrǎnde wèntí, nǐ zhīdao, zhòng gōngyè duì shǒudū lái shuō kě bú tài héshì.

Right. Industrial pollution isn't good for agricultural development. We're working on it. The Capital Iron and Steel Company also has a pollution problem. Heavy industry isn't very appropriate for a capital city, you know.

A: Nàme nǐde yìsi shì, Běijīng bù zhǔnbèi zài fāzhǎn zhòng gōngyè le.

Then you mean that Běijīng isn't planning to develop their heavy industry any further?

B: Duì, zhèi yìdiǎn, zhèngfǔde juédìng shì hěn qīngchūde, wǒmen děi bǎ Běijīng jiànshèchéng yíge yǒu wénhuà, shēnghuó fāngbiān, jīngjì fādà, yòu fēicháng gānjīngde chéngshì.

Right. On this point, the government's decision is very clear. We should build Běijīng into a cultural city, convenient to live in, economically developed—and very clean.

A: Hǎo, wǒ xiǎng wǒ xiànzài bǐjiào qīngchū le.

Okay, I think I understand better now.

B: Éi, Kǎlāhàn Nǚshì, wǒ zhèr hái yǒu liǎngyàng shuǐguǒ, wǒmen bǎ ta xiǎomiè le ba!

Oh, Ms. Colihan, I still have a couple of fruits here, let's polish them off!

A: "Xiǎomiè" le? Hǎo, hǎo. Wǒ dào shì dìyíci tīngjian zhèige shuōfǎr.

"Polish them off?" Ohhh. That's the first time I've ever heard that expression.

B: Kuài yào dào le, shuǐguǒ bù qīng ne, cānguānde shíhou nǎzhe ta duó lèi ya, hái shì xiànzài bǎ ta chīle hǎo.

We're almost there. The fruit is kind of heavy. It would be a bother to carry it around while we tour. It would be better to eat it now.

A: Hǎo, nà jiù xièxie le.

All right, then thank you.

Unit 7, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American visiting the Běijīng Wristwatch Factory talks with the responsible person of the workers' family living quarters.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

-dòng	(counter for buildings)
yèdàxué	evening university
-mèn	(counter for school courses)
yàoburán	otherwise

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the factory's family housing like?
2. What problem do the staff, workers, and technical personnel who live in the cities have?
3. What activity may workers participate in? How many workers do this?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American tourist visiting a train engine factory in the north of China stops in at the kitchen of the factory's dining hall and talks with the chef.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

dà shīfu	chef
cháng	to taste
língwài	other
dōngbù	the eastern part of a country
Wúxī	(city in Jiāngsū province)
Jiāngnán	the area south of the lower reaches of the Yangtze River
bú shì tiánde jiù shì làde	if it isn't sweet, then it's hot
nóngchǎng	farm
yúchǎng	fishery

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Was the chef expecting a visitor? How can you tell?
2. Where is the chef from? (Give both the city and where it is situated.)
3. What kinds of food do people from that area like?
4. Where does the chef get his vegetables?
5. What happened to the factory's food supply during the Cultural Revolution? What appeal did the factory's leadership make in 1977, and what was the result?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

In this exercise, you will hear a conversation between an American student and a young man in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

zhāi huār	to pick flowers
Huángzhuāng	(name of a commune)
zǒng shōurù	total income
fǎnzhèng	anyway
tuī	to push
wàihuì	foreign exchange
gāozhōng	senior high school
-duǒ	(counter for flowers)

Questions for Exercise 4

1. Where does the young man live?
2. How is his production brigade doing? How does he know about these things?
3. What does his father like to do?
4. What are the young man's plans for the future?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

An American visiting the Běijīng Wristwatch Factory talks with the responsible person of the workers' family living quarters.

- A: Nǐmen chǎngde jiāshǔ sùshè dōu hěn gānjīng, yě dōu hěn xīn ma!
Your factory's family housing is all very clean and very new!
- B: Wǒmen chǎngde sùshè hái suàn bú cuò, chǎng lǐngdǎo shuō hái yào zài gài jǐdòng xīn sùshè ne!
Our factory's housing is pretty good. The factory's leadership says that a few more buildings are going to be built, too.
- A: Sùshè hái bú gòu ma?
Isn't there enough housing yet?
- B: Bú gòu, wǒmen chǎng lí chénglǐ zhēn yuǎn, zhù zai chénglǐde zhīgōng shàng xià bān hái zhēn shí yǒu diǎnr bù fāngbian.
No. Our factory is very far from the city. It's really pretty inconvenient for the staff and workers who live in the city to get to and from work.
- A: Xiànzài hái yǒu hěn duō gōngrén zhù zai chénglǐ ma?
Are there still a lot of workers living in town?
- B: Yǒu, hái yǒu bù shǎo jìshù rényuán yě zhù zai chénglǐ. Tèbié shì nèixiē bú zài yíge chǎng gōngzuòde shuāngzhīgōng, shàng xià bān jǐ gōnggòng qìchē, bǐ shàng bān hái lèi, shíjiān chángde zěnme xíng ne? Suǒyǐ wǒmen zài máng yě děi kuài yìdiǎnr duō gài jǐdòng zhīgōng sùshè.
Yes, and there are also a lot of technical personnel living in town. Especially for those working couples who don't work in the same factory, wrestling with the buses before and after work is even more tiring than work itself. How can you expect them to keep that up very long? So no matter how busy we are, we have to put up a few new buildings for staff and workers.
- A: Ràng tāmen dōu bān dào chéngwài lái zhù?
And have them all move from the town out here?
- B: Bù, tāmen kéyǐ zhù zai sùshèlǐ, měige Xīngqīliù huī jiā jiù xíng le. Zhèiyàng, Xīngqīyī dào Xīngqīwǔde yèyú shíjiān tāmen jiù kéyǐ zài wǒmen chǎngde yèdàxué xuǎn kè, nà duō hǎo!
No, they can stay in the dormitories here, but go home every Saturday. That way, from Monday to Friday, they can take courses after work at our factory's evening university, which would be great.
- A: Xiànzài zài yèdàxué niàn shūde gōngrén duō ma?
Are there a lot of workers taking classes at the evening university now?
- B: Bù shǎo, chābuduō yǒu yíban yǐshàngde qīngnián gōngrén dōu xuǎn yímen, liǎngmén kè. Tīng lǎoshīmen shuō, xiànzài xuéshēngde shuǐpíng dōu kuài yào gǎnshàng Wénhuà Dà Gémíng yǐqíande xuéshēng lái!
Quite a few. Roughly over half of our young workers take one or two courses. According to the teachers, the students' level has practically caught up with the pre-Cultural Revolution level.

- A: Kěxǐ wǒde shíjiān ānpaide tài jǐn, yàoburán wǒ hái zhēn xiǎng zài yèdàxué tīngtīng kè ne. It's too bad that I have such a tight schedule, otherwise I'd really like to sit in on some evening university classes.
- B: Nǐn méi shíjiān tīng kè, qù hé yè dàxuéde lǎoshī tántan yě hǎo ma. If you don't have time to sit in on any classes, why not go talk with some of the evening university's teachers?
- A: Ng, kéyǐ tīng tāmen jièshào jièshào qíngkuàng. Mm, I could get some information about the university from them.
- B: Zǒu, wǒmen dào bàngōngshì qu, qǐng dǎoyóu tóngzhǐ xiànzài jiù péi nǐmen qù yītāng. Let's go to the office and ask the guide to accompany us right now.
- A: Hǎo, zǒu. Okay, let's go.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American tourist (A) visiting a train engine factory in the north of China stops in at the kitchen of the factory dining hall and talks with the chef (B).

- A: Dà shīfu, mángzhe na? You must be very busy, chef.
- B: Bù máng, bù máng, jìnlai zuò, wǒ gěi nǐmen chǎole liǎngge xiǎo cài, qǐng nǐmen chángchang. No, no, come in and sit down. I made a couple of little stir-fried dishes for you. Please try them.
- A: Wǒmen zài lìngwài yige shítáng chīguo fàn le, chīde hǎo bǎo. We've already eaten in another dining hall. We're very full.
- B: Zài bǎo yě děi chángchang, zhèi shi tángcùde, wǒ zhīdao nǐmen xǐhuan chī. No matter how full you are you must try them. This one is sweet and sour, I know you people like that.
- A: Wǒ jìde wǒ zài nǎr chīguo, duì le, shi zài Huáshèngdùnde yige Zhōngguó fànguǎnrli, měicì qù wǒ dōu qǐng tamen zuò zhèige. I remember having this somewhere. Oh yes, it was in a Chinese restaurant in Washington. Whenever I went there I used to ask them to make this.
- B: Xǐhuan chī jiu bǎ ta dōu chīle ba! Nǐ gāngcái shuōde nèige fànguǎnr shi Shànghǎi fànguǎnr ma? If you like it, then eat it all! Is the restaurant you just mentioned a Shànghǎi-style restaurant?
- A: Shì. Hòulái wǒ líkāi dōngbù jiu zài yě méi chīguo nàme hǎochīde cài le. Yes. Later I left the east and never had such delicious food again.
- B: Lái, bǎ ta dōu xiǎomièle, wǎnshang wǒ zài gěi nǐmen zuò biéde. Come on, polish it off. Tonight I'll make you some other things.

A: Xièxie nín, dà shīfu. Nín bú shì zhèrde rén ba?

Thank you. Chef, you're not from this area, are you?

B: Bú shì, wǒ shì Wúxī rén.

No, I'm from Wúxī.

A: Zài Cháng Jiāng yǐběi?

North of the Yangtze River?

B: Òu, nǐ gāocuò le, Chángjiāng yīnán!

Oh, you've got it wrong, south of the Yangtze!

A: Wǒ fāxiàn Jiāngnán rén xǐhuan tiánde hé làde.

I notice that people from Jiāngnán [the area south of the lower reaches of the Yangtze] like sweet foods and hot foods.

B: Zhèi dào shì duìde. Wǒmen Jiāngnán rén zuò cài bú shì tiánde jiù shì làde.

That's true enough. When we people from Jiāngnán cook, if it isn't sweet then it's hot.

A: Nǐmen shítáng měitiān yòng zhème duō cài, dōu shì cóng fùjìn gōngshè mǎide ma?

You use so much food here in your dining hall, do you buy it all from the neighboring communes?

B: Nálì?! Wénhuà Dà Gémìng yǐqián wǒmen zhèige zhìzào chǎng hé biéde dà chǎng yíyàng, dōu yǒu zìjǐde nóngchǎng, cǎidì shenmede. Dà shítángde cài bú yòng shuō le, jiù shì yòueryuán háizimen chīde shuǐguǒ shenmede yě dōu shì zìjǐ zhòngde.

Oh, no! Before the Cultural Revolution our factory had its own farm, vegetable plots, and so on, as other large factories did. Of course, we grew the food used in the large dining halls, but we even grew all the fruits and things the children in the kindergartens ate.

A: Hòulái ne?

And then?

B: Hòulái, Wénhuà Dà Gémìng le, nóngchǎng, cǎidì dōu bèi gǎode luànqǐbāzāo, chīde dōngxī zhēn jǐnzhāng, yú a, ròude bú yòng shuō le, lián cài dōu bú gòu chī le.

Then it was the Cultural Revolution, and the farm and vegetable plots were ruined. Food was in very short supply. Fish and meats were of course tight, but there weren't even enough vegetables.

A: Xiànzài hǎo le.

Now it's better.

B: Yǐ jiǔ qī qī nián, chǎng lǐngdǎo hào zhāo quánchǎng gōngren gǎohǎo shēnghuó, nóngchǎng a, yúchǎng a, yòu bànqilai le, qǐngxing jiu hǎo-duō le. Nǐ kàn, zènme duō cài,

In 1977, the factory leadership appealed to all the factory's workers to improve daily living conditions. We started the farm and the fishery again, and things were much better.

*The reason for the phrasing of this sentence is that the food used in the large dining halls (that is, where the workers eat) is of relatively low quality, while the fruits and foods for the kindergarten children are of a fancier grade. The chef thus means, "We didn't just grow low quality foods, we even grew fancy things."

chābuduō dōu shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde,
yǒu piányi yǒu xīnxiān, duō hǎo!

See all these vegetables, we produced almost all of them ourselves. They're inexpensive, and fresh, too. What could be better.

A: Shíjiān bù zǎo le, àn jīhua wǒmen
hái děi qù cānguān yīliǎngge dìfang
ne!

It's getting late, and according to our schedule we're supposed to visit another couple of places!

B: Hǎo, huí tóu jiàn.

All right. See you later.

A: Huí tóu jiàn.

See you later.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

An American student in China (A) is walking from Běijīng University into town one weekend. (Not many people would do this, because it is a two-hour walk.) Near the People's University (Rénmín Dàxué) on Hǎidiàn Lù, she stoops down to pick a flower on the side of the road. A boy holding a hoe calls out to her.

B: Wèi! Bié zhāi bié zhāi! Zhè
huār bù néng suǐbiàn zhāi ya!

Hey! Don't pick those! Don't pick those! Those flowers aren't for picking!

A: Duìbuqǐ. Zhèixiē huār dōu shì
nǐmen zhòngde ma?

I'm sorry. Did you plant these flowers?

B: Shì, yánzhe zhèitiáo gōnglù yìzhí
dào dòngwuyuán, lǚbiānrshangde huār
dōu shì wǒmen zhòngde.

Yes. We planted all the flowers along the side of the highway all the way to the zoo.

A: Nǐ shì Rénmín Dàxuéde gōngren?

Are you a worker from the People's University?

B: Bú shì, wǒ shì Huángzhuāng
Dàduìde shèyuán.

No, I'm a commune member from Huángzhuāng Production Brigade.

A: Nǐ jiālide rén dōu zài Huáng-
zhuāng ma?

Is your whole family in Huángzhuāng?

B: Zài Huángzhuāng jiù yǒu wǒ fùmǔ
gēn wǒ.

In Huángzhuāng there are only my parents and myself.

A: Nǐ yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi ma?

Do you have brothers and sisters?

B: Yǒu, wǒ yǒu yíge gēge zài tiělù-
shang gōngzuò, shì huǒchē sījī.
Yǒu yíge gēge zài Shǒudū Gāngtiě
Gōngsī gōngzuò, tīngshuō tāmen
zhìzào de dōngxi yǒu bù shǎo hái
chū guó ne!

Yes, I have an older brother who works on the railroad. He's an engineer. And I have an older brother who works at the Capital Iron and Steel Company. I understand that a lot of the things they manufacture go abroad.

A: Nǐmen dàduìde shēngchǎn jìnxíngde zěnmeyàng a?

How is your brigade's production going?

B: Wǒ tīng wǒ fùqīn shuō, cóng chǎnliàngshàng kàn, wǒmen dàduìde qíngkuàng bù cuò. Jīnnián wǒmen dàduìde zǒng shōurù dēngyú Wénhuà Dà Gé-míng shínián shōurùde yíběi!

My father says that from the point of view of yield, our brigade is doing well. This year the total income of the brigade is equal to one time the income over the ten years of the Cultural Revolution!

A: Hē! Zhèi shì zhēnde?!

Wow! Is that true?!

B: Wǒ mā yě nàme shuō, Wénhuà Dà Gé-míng nèi shíhou wǒ hái xiǎo, dà-duìli fāshēngde shìr, wǒ dōu bù zěnmē qīngchū. Wǒ jiù jìde nèi shíhou tiāntiān kāi huì, nǐ shuō dàrenmen máng ba, hǎoxiàng yě bù zěnmē máng, fǎnzhèng shì kàn tamen zǒngshì bú tài gāoxìng.

My mother says the same thing. I was still young during the Cultural Revolution, and I don't know very well what went on in our brigade. I just remember that during that time there were meetings every day. But were the grown-ups really busy?—not really. In any case, they never looked very happy.

A: Xiànzài nǐ jiāli rén dōu gāoxìng ba?

But now everybody in your family is happy, aren't they?

B: Gāoxìng, tèbié shì wǒ mā, yí dào Xīngqītiān jiù tuīshàng yíbu xiǎo chē, shàng zìyóu shìchǎng le. Tā cháng gēn wǒ shuō, háishi zhèihuǐde zhèngcè hǎo a!

Yes. Especially my mother. Every Sunday she goes to the free market, pushing a little cart. She often says to me that the [government's] policy is much better now.

A: Nǐ zìjǐ zěnmeyàng a? Yǒu shénme dǎsuan meiyóu a?

What about yourself? Do you have any plans?

B: Yǒu, wǒ fùqīn zhòng huārde jìshù kě gāo la! Tā zhòngle yíběizi huār. Tā gēn wǒ shuō zánmen zhèr shì fēngjǐngqū, zánmen bǎ huār zhònghǎole, néng gěi guójiā zhuàn wàihuǐ ya!

Yes, my father is a real expert at growing flowers. He's been growing flowers all his life. He told me that this is a scenic area, and if we planted flowers, we could bring in a lot of foreign exchange for the state.

A: Nǐ jīnnián shíjǐ le?

How old are you this year? [presuming him to be a teenager]

B: Shísi le. Wǒ fùqīn hái zhǎolai yíběn shū, shì guānyú zhòng huārde, wǒ jīntiān wàng zai jiāli le, xià-cǐ nǐ jīngguò zhèr wǒ zài gěi nǐ kàn. Wǒ fùqīn shuō nà shì kēxué zhòng huār, ràng wǒ hǎohǎo xué.

Fourteen. My father even got a book on flower growing. I left it at home today, but the next time you pass by here I'll show it to you. My father says that it's scientific flower growing and told me to study it hard.

A: Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng shàng dàxué?

Do you want to go to college?

B: Xiǎng shàng! Hòunián wǒ jiù gāo-
zhōng bìyè le, wǒ kǎo Nóngyè Dàxué,
jiù xué zhòng huā.

Yes! The year after next I graduate
from high school and I'm going to take
the exam for Agricultural University.
I'm going to study flower growing.

A: Hǎo! Zàijiàn!

Great! So long!

B: Zàijiàn! Bié jí, wǒ gěi ni zhāi
liǎngduǒ huā.

So long! Hold on, let me pick
you a couple of flowers.

A: Xièxie ni.

Thanks.

Unit 8, Reference List

1. A: Zài Guǎngzhōu Jiāoyìhuìshang
jiù zuò chūkǒude mǎimǎi ma? Do they only do export business at the
Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?
- B: Bú jiù shì chūkǒu, yě yǒu hěn
duō rén zài nàr tán jìnkǒu
màoyì. Not just export business. Many people
also do import trade there.
2. A: Zhèi jǐge jīngjī tèqū yuè lái
yuè fánróng le. These special economic zones are
getting more and more prosperous.
- B: Shì a! Jìncūkǒu màoyì, jiā-
gōng gōngyè yuè gāo yuè duō
le. Yes! Import-export trade and the
processing industry are on the
upswing.
3. A: Guǎngjiāohuìshangde dōngxi
jiàqian zěnmeyàng? How are the prices at the Guǎngzhōu
Trade Fair?
- B: Jiàqian dōu hái bú cuò, wàiguó
shāngren hěn shǎo yǒu kōng-
shǒu huíqùde. The prices are pretty good. It's very
seldom that a foreign businessman
goes home empty-handed.
4. A: Jīngjī tèqūde Zhōngguó gōngren
shōurù bǐjiào gāo, nà huì bu
huì chūxiàn yíge xīnde
jiējí ne? Since the income of Chinese workers
in the special economic zones is
higher, is it possible a new
class will appear?
- B: Méiyǒu nàme yánzhòng! Gèjí
zhèngfǔ huì àn zhèngcè bànde. It's not that serious! Every level
of the government will go according
to policy.
5. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ shì bu shì
xiànzhí xiāofèipǐnde jìnkǒu? Does the Chinese government restrict
consumer-good imports?
- B: Dāihuì wǒ gěi nín ná yífèn
cáiliào, nín yí kàn jiù
qīngchū le. I'll bring you some materials in a
while. As soon as you read them
you'll know the answer.
6. A: Zài yíge gōngchǎngli, gōngzuò
xiàolǜ gāode gōngren cái
néng tígāo gōngzī, duì ba? In a factory only workers with high
efficiency can get a pay raise,
right?
- B: Duì a! Duō lǎo duō dé ma! Right! More pay for more work, you
know!

7. A: Lǎo Zhāng, jīntiān kāi shénme huānsòng huì?
Lǎo Zhāng, what's the farewell meeting for today?
- B: Huānsòng Ōuzhōude lǚshī dài biǎotuán.
We're sending off the European delegation of lawyers.
8. A: Yǒule Zhōng-Měi hǎiyùn tiáoyuē yǐhòu, yánhǎi yí dài jiù gèng rè nao le.
Since the Sino-American sea transportation treaty, the coastal region has become even busier.
- B: Shì a, kànqilai yǐhòude shínián, zhèi jǐ gè dà hǎigǎng huì yǒu dà guīmóde fāzhǎn.
Yes. It looks as if these large ports will experience tremendous growth in the next decade.
9. A: Nǐ tīngdao xiāoxi le meiyou? Jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu hěn zhòngyào de rén lái.
Have you heard the news? Some very important people are coming tonight.
- B: Jīntiānde wǎnhuì yí dìng hěn yǒu yìsi, qiānwàn bié wǎn le.
Tonight's party is sure to be interesting. You mustn't be late!
10. A: Wǒ yào cānguān jiàoxué shèbèi.
I want to see the educational equipment.
- B: Jiàoxué shèbèi dōu jī zhōng zài zhèige dà tīnglǐ le, huānyíng cānguān.
The educational equipment is all together in this large hall. You're welcome to see it.
11. A: Zhōng-Měi liǎngguó wèile zài gèfāngmiàn jìnxíng hézuò dīnghǎole bù shǎo jìhuà.
China and America have made a lot of plans to cooperate in various fields.
- B: Ng. Gāng yùn dao Fújiānde zhèixiē shèbèi jiù shì nèixiē jìhuàde yí bù fēn.
Mm. The equipment which was just shipped to Fújiàn is a part of those plans.

Unit 8, Vocabulary List

chūkǒu	to export
chūxiàn	to appear
dàibīǎotuán	delegation, mission
dāi huǐr	in a while, later
dātīng	(large) hall
dǐng	to draw up (a plan); to agree on; to conclude (a treaty)
duō lǎo duō dé	more pay for more work
fánróng	to be flourishing, to be pros- perous, to be booming
Fújiàn	(a province in south China)
gōngzī	wages
Guǎngjiāohuì	Guǎngzhōu (Canton) Trade Fair
guīmó	scale, scope, dimensions
hǎigǎng	harbor, seaport
hézuò	to cooperate; cooperation
huānsòng	to see off, to send off
huānsòngghuì	farewell/send-off meeting or party
-jí	level, rank, grade, stage, degree
jiāgōng	to process, to finish (a product)
jiāoyìhuì	trade fair
jiàqián	price
jiējí	(social) class
jìnchūkǒu	import-export
jīngjī tèqū	special economic zone (SEZ)
jìnkǒu	to import
jízōng	to concentrate, to centralize
kōngshǒu	empty-handed
lǚshī	lawyer, attorney
màoyì	trade
qiānwàn	without fail, be sure to
shāngren	businessman/businesswoman; merchant
shèbèi	equipment, facilities, instal- lation
tiáoyuē	treaty
wǎnhuì	evening party; evening of enter- tainment

xiānzhi	to restrict, to limit; restric- tion, limitation
xiāofèipǐn	consumer goods
xiàolǜ	efficiency
xiāoxi	news
yánzhòng	to be serious, to be grave
yī...jiù...	as soon as
yùn	to transport, to ship

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Zài Guǎngzhōu Jiāoyìhuìshàng
jiù zuò chūkǒude mǎimài ma? Do they only do export business at the
Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?
- B: Bú jiù shì chūkǒu, yě yǒu hěn
duō rén zài nàr tán jìnkǒu
màoyì. Not just export business. Many people
also do import trade there.

Notes on No. 1

jiāoyìhuì: "trade fair" Jiāoyì means "business, trade, transaction," and huì is the same word you know from kāi huì, "to have a meeting." The full name of the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair is Zhōngguó Chūkǒu Shāngpǐn Jiāoyìhuì, the Chinese Export Commodities Fair (CECF). Since the first CECF in 1957, every spring and autumn Guǎngzhōu is inundated with businessmen and people of all walks of life connected with trade--more than 25,000 at each Fair. Chinese agricultural and industrial products are displayed in the Fairground buildings and open areas, located on Hǎizhū Guǎngchǎng (Haizhu Square) between the railroad station and the Dōngfāng Bīnguǎn (Dongfang Hotel). The Fair is held from April 15 to May 15 and from October 15 to November 15.

As the name implies, the CECF's main purpose is to assist China's state trading corporations in exporting goods, but some large import contracts are signed there each year as well.

Chūkǒu, "to export" and jìnkǒu, "to import":

Rìběn měinián chūkǒu hěn duō
qìchē. Japan exports a lot of cars every
year.

Wǒ zhēn bù dǒng wèishénme Zhōng-
guó chūkǒude dōngxì zǒng shì
bǐ guónèi mǎide hǎo. I really don't understand why the
things China exports are always
better than those it sells domes-
tically.

màoyì: "trade," as in guónèi màoyì, "domestic trade"; màoyì zhōngxīn,
"trade center"; màoyì fēng, "trade wind."

Zhèilǐǎngge guójiā zuìjìn jǐnián
cái kāishǐ jìnxíng màoyì. It is only in the past few years
that these two countries have
started to have trade (with each
other).

Tán is used in the sense of "negotiate" in such phrases as tán màoyì, "do
trade (negotiating)," tán shēngyì, "do business," etc.

2. A: Zhèi jǐge jīngjì tèqū yuè lái yuè fánróng le. These special economic regions are getting more and more prosperous.
- B: Shì a! Jìnchūkǒu màoyì, jiā-gōng gōngyè yuè gǎo yuè duō le. Yes! Import-export trade and the processing industry are on the upswing.

Notes on No. 2

jīngjì tèqū: Literally, "economic special-district," translated as "special economic zones," and abbreviated as SEZ. SEZs are designated areas similar to the export processing zones (EPZs) which have been extremely successful in places such as Taiwan. China established SEZs to bring in the foreign capital needed to create jobs and modernize the national economy. In these zones, foreign investors' assets, profits, and other rights and interests are legally protected, and their operations enjoy tax and duty exemptions. Proposed investment projects are examined and approved by the Provincial Administration of the SEZ, which also draws up its own development plans and organizes their implementation. The SEZs compete with each other for foreign investment. As of 1981, Guǎngdōng province had three SEZs--Shēnzhèn, Zhūhǎi (near Macao), and Shāntóu--and other SEZs had been established in Fújiàn province and Hǎinán Island. A wide variety of enterprises have already been set up.

fánróng: "to be flourishing/prosperous/booming"

Rìběnde shāngyè hěn fánróng. Japan's commerce is flourishing.

Shínián yǐhòu, zhèige dìfang huì biànde gèng fánróng le. Ten years from now, this place will become even more prosperous.

Cóng zhèige zhǎnlǎnhuìshàngde dōngxī, nǐ kěyǐ kàndào fánróngde Měiguó wénhuà. From the things in this exhibition, you can see the flourishing American culture.

Fánróng can also mean "to make something prosper":

Bàn jiāoyìhuìde mùdì jiù shì yào fánróng jīngjì. The purpose of holding trade fairs is to promote economic prosperity.

jiāgōng: (1) "to finish" a product, i.e., to work on a half-finished or finished article to make it more perfect or finer; (2) "to process" a raw material into a finished product.

3. A: Guǎngjiāohuìshangde dōngxi
jiàqian zěnmeyàng? How are the prices at the Guǎngzhōu
Trade Fair?
- B: Jiàqian dōu hái bú cuò, wàiguó
shāngren hěn shǎo yǒu kōng-
shǒu huíqude. The prices are pretty good. It's very
seldom that a foreign businessman
goes home empty-handed.

Notes on No. 3

Guǎngjiāohuì: This is an abbreviation of Guǎngzhōu Jiāoyìhuì.

jiàqian: "price"

Zhèige píngguǒ shénme jiàqian? How much are these apples?

Tāmende dōngxi hěn hǎo, jiàqian
yě bú cuò. Their things are very good, and the
prices are pretty good, too.

Jiǎng jiàqian means "to bargain, to haggle":

Zài Zhōngguóde shāngdiànli, bù
kěyǐ jiǎng jiàqian, dànshì
zài zìyóu shìchǎngshang kěyǐ. You cannot bargain in stores in China,
but you can in the free markets.

kōngshǒu: "empty-handed" Kōng means "to be empty," as in

Zhèige xiāngzi shì kōngde. This case is empty.

Kōngshǒu is used adverbially:

Wǒ bù hǎo yìsi kōngshǒu dào
tā jiā qu. I would be embarrassed to go to
his house empty-handed.

4. A: Jīngjì tèqūde Zhōngguó gōngren
shòurù bǐjiào gāo, nà huì bu
huì chūxiàn yíge xīnde
jiēji ne? Since the income of Chinese workers
in the special economic regions is
higher, is it possible a new
class will appear?
- B: Méiyǒu nàme yánzhòng! Gèjī
zhèngfǔ huì àn zhèngcè bānde. It's not that serious! Every level
of the government will go according
to policy.

Notes on No. 4

chūxiàn: "to appear" As with fāshēng, "to happen," which you learned
in the previous unit, chūxiàn is often followed in the sentence by the thing
that appears, whereas in English the thing usually precedes "appear" ("Will
a new class appear?").

Zhèige wèntí zài gāng chūxiànde
shíhou, méiyòu rén fāxiàn,
xiānzài zhīdao yǐjīng tài
wǎn le.

When this problem first appeared,
no one discovered it. Now that
we've found out about it, it's too
late.

Tàiyang chūxiàn zài dōngfāngde
shíhou, jiù shì xīnde yìtiān
kāishǐ le.

When the sun appears in the east,
it means that a new day is
beginning. [tàiyang, "sun"]

Zhèige shíhou, qiánmian chūxiàn
yìtiáo dà hé, shì wǒ méi
xiǎngdào de.

At this moment, a large river
appeared up ahead, something I
had not expected.

jiēji: "(social) class" In the PRC, this word enters into many special phrases such as jiēji jiàoyù, "class education" (which consists of recounting the difficult past to schoolchildren and younger workers).

Shìjièshang méiyòu yíge méiyòu
jiējide shèhuì.

There is no society in the world
which is without classes.

yánzhòng: "to be serious, to be grave"

Zhèige qíngkuàng xiāngdāng
yánzhòng.

This situation is quite serious.

Zhōngguó yǒu yánzhòngde rénǒu
wèntí.

China has a serious population
problem.

Zhèige wèntí bú shì yánzhòng dào
yíding yào qǐng lǐngdǎo lái
juédìng.

This problem is not so serious that
we have to ask our leader to
decide it.

Nǐ hái méi kànchū zhèige wèntíde
yánzhòngxìng.

You still haven't discerned the
seriousness of this problem.

-jí: "level, rank, stage, grade, degree"

Zhèi yíjí lǐngdǎo hái bù néng
juédìng zěnme bàn, nǐ děi
zhǎo shàngjí lǐngdǎo.

This level leader cannot decide
what to do. You must go to an
upper-level leader.

Gānbu yígòng yǒu èrshiliù jí,
shíjí yǐshàngde kèyì kàn
yìzhǒng pǔtōng rén kànbudào de
bào zhǐ.

Altogether, there are twenty-six
grades of cadres. Those above
grade ten may read a newspaper
that ordinary people cannot read.
(The Cānkǎo Zīliào, "Reference
Materials")

Nǐ zhè xié zhēn gāojí!

These shoes of yours are really
classy!

5. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ shì bu shì
xiànzhì xiāofèipǐn de jìnkǒu? Does the Chinese government restrict consumer-good imports?
- B: Dāihuǐr wǒ gěi nín ná yí fèn
cáiliào, nín yí kàn jiù
qīngchū le. I'll bring you some materials in a while. As soon as you read them you'll know the answer.

Notes on No. 5

xiànzhì: "to restrict, to limit" or "restriction, limitation"

Wǒ àiren xiànzhì wǒ měige yuè
chōu qīkuài qián de yān. My spouse limits me to smoking seven dollars' worth of cigarettes a month.

Wèile xiànzhì rénmín de zìyóu,
zhèngfǔ dìnglè bù shǎo guīju. The government has set up a lot of rules to restrict the people's freedom.

Zài gāosù gōnglùshang, bǎ qìchē-
de sùdù xiànzhì zài wǔshiwǔ-
yīnglǐ yíxià shì bǐjiǎo héshìde. It is rather appropriate to limit the speed of cars on the expressway to fifty-five miles an hour.

Yǒu bù shǎo xiànzhì zhēn ràng
rén gǎobudǒng wèishénme yào
zhème zuò. There are many restrictions that leave one at a loss as to why one has to do it that way.

Yīnwèi shíjiān de xiànzhì, wǒ
méi néng zuòdao wǒ kényī zuòde
nàme hǎo. Because of time restrictions, I was not able to do as well as I could have.

Xiànzhì is often used in the phrase shòu xiànzhì, "to be restricted" (literally, "to receive restriction"):

Zài nèige guójiā, wàiguo rén
lǚxíng shòudao hěn dà xiànzhì. In that country, foreigners are very restricted when they travel.

xiāofèi: "to consume"

Zhèige gōngchǎng yìtiān xiāofèi
duōshǎo méitàn? How much coal does this factory consume a day?

Yǐqián Běijīng jiù shì yíge
xiāofèi chéngshì, shénme yě
bù shēngchǎn. Běijīng used to be just a consumer city; it didn't produce a thing.

Xiāofèizhě is a "consumer."

dāihuǐr: A Běijīng expression equivalent to děng yihuǐr in the sense of "in (after) a while":

Dāihuǐr wǒ sòng nǐ huíqū. In a little while, I'll take you back.

Wǒ xiānzài xiān qù yǒu diǎnr
shì, dǎihuǐr jiù lái.

Let me first go and take care of
something I have to do; I'll be
back in a minute.

yí...jiù...: "as soon as..." You already know that jiù means "then"
in the sense of immediately thereafter, e.g.,

Tā shuōwán jiù zǒu le.

He left right after he finished
speaking.

When using the adverb yí, "as soon as," jiù is often used in the following
clause.

Tā yí dào, wǒmen jiù kényì zǒu le.

We can leave as soon as he gets
here.

Tiān yí liàng, tā jiù qǐlai kāi-
shǐ gōngzuò.

As soon as it gets light out, he
gets up and starts to work.

Wǒ yí kàn jiù míngbai le.

I understood as soon as I looked
at it (OR read it).

Tā yí tīng zhèijù huà jiù jí le.

He got anxious (upset) as soon as
he heard this sentence.

Wǒ yí fāxiàn hùzhào diū le, mǎ-
shàng jiù dào língshǐguǎn qù
le.

As soon as I discovered that I had
lost my passport, I immediately
went to the consulate.

Tā zěnmē yí qù jiù shì bàntiān?

What's taking him so long?

Sometimes yí...jiù... is used in the sense of "every time," or "whenever"
(i.e., once certain conditions come about, something is sure to happen):

Wǒ duì zhèrde lù hái bù shú, yí
bú zhùyì jiù huì zǒucuò.

I'm still not very familiar with the
roads here. I go the wrong way
whenever I'm not paying attention.

Píngcháng tā hěn máng, kěshì yí
dào Xīngqītiān, tā jiù yào kāi
chē chūqu wánr.

Usually he is very busy, but when
Sunday comes he always goes out in
his car to have fun.

Wǒ yì hē jiǔ jiù tóu yūn.

I get dizzy whenever I drink.

Tā měicì yì yǒu wèntí jiù xiǎng-
dào wǒ, méi wèntíde shíhou
cónglái bú jìzhe wǒ.

He thinks of me whenever he has a
problem, but never remembers me
when he doesn't have any problems.

Yí is sometimes used without jiù in a following clause, as in

Wǒ gāng yì tīng hǎoxiàng bú duì,
hòulái yì xiǎng, duì le.

When I first heard it, it didn't sound
right, but then after I thought about
it, [I realized] it was right.

6. A: Zài yíge gōngchǎnglǐ, gōngzuò xiàolǚ gāode gōngrén cái néng tígāo gōngzī, duì ba? In a factory only workers with high efficiency can get a pay raise, right?
- B: Duì a! Duō lǎo duō dé ma! Right! More pay for more work, you know!.

Notes on No. 6

xiàolǚ: "efficiency"

Tāde xuéxí xiàolǚ hěn gāo, yìtiān néng kàn bù shǎo shū, hái néng jìzhu bù shǎo. He is very efficient in his studies. He can read a lot in one day and can remember a great deal too.

Wèile tígāo shíjiān xiàolǚ, wǒmen bìxū jìzhōng lìliàng. We must pool our forces in order to increase our efficiency. (Shíjiān xiàolǚ just means efficiency within a certain period of time.)

cái: You have seen cái meaning "only when, not until" (Ta míngtiān cái dào, "He isn't coming until tomorrow") and meaning "only in that case, not unless" (Zhèiyang Zhōngguó wénhuà cái néng bǎochíxiàqù, "Only in this way can Chinese culture be preserved"). In sentence 6A, the necessary condition is gōngzuò xiàolǚ gāo. Since cái is an adverb, it must always precede the verb (here, néng), whereas in English, "only" precedes whatever it refers to (here, the noun phrase "workers with high efficiency").

7. A: Lǎo Zhāng, jīntiān kāi shénme huānsònghuì? Lǎo Zhāng, what's the farewell meeting for today?
- B: Huānsòng Ōuzhōude lǚshī dàibiǎotuán. We're sending off the European delegation of lawyers.

Notes on No. 7

huānsòng: Literally, "joyously send off," this is a formal word for "to give someone a send-off." The ordinary word is just sòng.

dàibiǎo: "to represent, to stand for" or a "representative, delegate"

Wǒmen bù néng dōu qù. Nǐ dàibiǎo, hǎo bu hǎo? We can't all go. Why don't you stand in, okay?

Nǐ dàibiǎo shéi? Whom do you represent?

Tā dàibiǎo tā gōngsī qù cānjiā nèige jiǎoyìhuì. He went to the trade fair representing his company.

As a prepositional verb, dàibiǎo can be translated as "on behalf of" or "in the name of":

Wǒ dài biǎo Lǚxíngshède tóngzhǐ
xièxiè nǐ.

I thank you on behalf of the comrades
at the China Travel Service.

8. A: Yǒule Zhōng-Měi hǎiyùn tiáoyuē
yǐhòu, yánhǎi yí dài jiù gèng
rènao le.

Since the Sino-American sea transport-
ation treaty, the coastal region
has become even busier.

B: Shì a, kànqilai yǐhòude shí-
nián, zhèi jǐge dà hǎigǎng
huì yǒu dà guīmóde fāzhǎn.

Yes. It looks as if these large ports
will experience tremendous growth
in the next decade.

Notes on No. 8

hǎiyùn tiáoyuē: "sea transportation treaty" The word tiáoyuē, "treaty," "pact," is used loosely here, for it was technically an "agreement" (xiédìng) which was signed between the U.S. and China on September 17, 1980. The maritime transport agreement stipulates that the U.S. open all its ports to China and China open specified ports to the U.S. (some Chinese ports do not have sufficient facilities). One third of the commercial shipping is to be handled by Chinese or American vessels.

guīmó: "scope, scale"

Zhèige gōngchǎngde guīmó bù xiǎo,
jiù shì jìshù lìliang tài ruò
le.

The scope of this factory is quite
large, it's just that its technical
capability is too weak.

Zhōngguó dà guīmóde gāi gōngyù
dàlǒu, zhèijǐnián háishi dìyíci.

It is only in the past few years that
China has started to build high-rise
apartment buildings on a large scale.

9. A: Nǐ tīngdao xiāoxi le meiyou?
Jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu hěn
zhòngyàode rén lái.

Have you heard the news? Some very
important people are coming tonight.

B: Jīntiānde wǎnhuì yíding hěn
yǒu yìsi, qiǎnwàn bié wǎn le.

Tonight's party is sure to be inter-
esting. You mustn't be late!

Notes on No. 9

xiāoxi: "news" This has a few meanings: (1) "news" between people-- "tidings"; (2) "news" reported in a newspaper, news periodical, or newscast (this meaning is shared in common with xīnwén); (3) "information" in the sense of "intelligence," "news" about someone or something (e.g., "Is this information reliable?").

Yǒu shénme xiāoxi?

What information is there?

- Wǒ gàosu nǐ ge hǎo xiāoxi! Let me give you some good news!
- Hěn cháng shíjiān méiyǒu tāde xiāoxi le. We haven't heard from him (OR about him) for a long time.
- qiānwàn: "under any circumstances; by no means; be sure"
- Qiānwàn yào xiǎoxīn, tiān hēi le, lù bu hǎo zǒu. Be sure to be careful. It's dark out, so it's difficult to travel.
- Nǐ dào le yǐhòu qiānwàn lái ge diànhuà. When you arrive, be sure to call.
- Qiānwàn bú yào wàngji bǎ nàiběn shū dàilái, wǒ míngtiān yào yòng. Make sure you don't forget to bring that book; I need it for tomorrow.
- Zhèijiàn shì, qiānwàn bù néng ràng ta zhīdao. He must absolutely not find out about this.

10. A: Wǒ yào cānguān jiàoxué shèbèi. I want to see the educational equipment.
- B: Jiàoxué shèbèi dōu jízhōng zài zhèige dàtīnglǐ le, huānyíng cānguān. The educational equipment is all together in this large hall. You're welcome to see it.

Notes on No. 10

shèbèi: "equipment; facilities; installation"

Yǒude chǎng suīrán shèbèi hěn hǎo, dànshì shēngchǎn hái shì gāobu hǎo. In some factories, although the equipment is very good, production is still poor.

Cóng Déguó jìnkǒude zhèixiē shèbèi dàbùfen shì yīxué fāngmiàn de. Most of this equipment imported from Germany is for use in medicine.

Zhèige gōngyùde shèbèi bǐ zhè fūjīnde biéde gōngyù dōu hǎo. The facilities in this apartment building are better than those of any other in the area.

jízhōng: "to concentrate; to centralize; to put together"

Bǎ lìliang jízhōng zài xué Zhōngwénshàng shì bù xíngde, yīnwei hái yǒu xǔduō biéde shì yào zuò. It won't do to concentrate all your effort on studying Chinese, because you have many other things to do.

Zhèipiān wénzhāng jízhōngle jǐge rén de kàn fǎ, suǒyǐ kànqilai hěn yǒu yìsi. This article assembles the opinions of several people, so it is very interesting to read.

- Zài rénkǒu jízhōngde dà chéngshì zhǔ hěn yǒu yìsi. It is very interesting to live in a big city with a concentrated population.
- Wǎnhuīshàng xūyào de dōngxī dōu yào jízhōng fānghǎo de. The things that will be needed at the evening party should all be put together in one place.
- Zhèixiē dōngxī fàng zài zhèlǐ jízhōng xié bù hǎo ma? Wouldn't it be better to put those things here, all together in one place?
11. A: Zhōng-Měi liǎngguó wèile zài gèfāngmiàn jìnxíng hézuò dīnghǎo le bù shǎo jìhuà. China and America have made a lot of plans to cooperate in various fields.
- B: Ng. Gāng yùn dao Fújiānde zhèixiē shèbèi jiù shì nèixiē jìhuà de yībùfen. Mm. The equipment which was just shipped to Fújiān is a part of those plans.

Notes on No. 11

Zhōng-Měi liǎngguó: "China and America, the two countries" This is a formal way of saying Zhōngguó hé Měiguó.

hézuò: "together-do," i.e., "to cooperate"

- Wǒmen děi hézuò zhèijiàn shì cái néng bàn de hǎo. We must work together on this if we are to do it well.
- Tā bú yào gēn wǒ hézuò. He doesn't want to cooperate with me.
- Xiànzài Zhōngguó hé wàiguó shāng-rende hézuò yuè lái yuè duō le. China is having more and more cooperation with foreign merchants.

Hé- can also be used before other one-syllable verbs, for example,

Zhèiběn shū shì wǒmen héxiě de. We wrote this book together.

dīng: "to agree on; to draw up (a plan); to conclude (a treaty)"

Zánmen dīng ge xuéxí jìhuà ba! Let's put together a study plan!
Zhèiyang xiàqu, shénme yě xué-budào. We won't learn a thing if we keep on like this.

Yībǎiduōnián qián, Qīngcháo zhèngfǔ hé wàiguó dīng le bù shǎo duì Zhōngguó hěn bù hǎo de tiáoyuē. More than a century ago, the Qīng Dynasty government concluded many treaties with foreign countries that were very bad for China.

yùn: "to carry, to transport"

Tā qù Zhōngguóde shíhou bǎ tāde
qìchē yě yùnnu le.

When he went to China, he shipped his
car over too.

Zhèxiē dōngxi fēicháng zhòng,
yùnlái bù fāngbian.

These things are extremely heavy, and
are difficult to transport.

Zhème duō dōngxi, hǎiyùn bǐ
kōngyùn piányide duō.

With so many things, it would be
much cheaper to ship them by sea
than by air.

Unit 8, Review Dialogue

Near the Guǎngzhōu Export Commodities Trade Fair, Miss Sarah Pearson (A), an American lawyer, spots Chén Guóqiáng (B), of the China Travel Service. Chén is carrying a shopping bag.

- A: Éi, Xiǎo Chén, mǎi dōngxī qu
la? Hey, Xiǎo Chén, have you been out shopping?
- B: Shì a, lái Guǎngzhōu, bù néng
kōngshǒu huíqu, wǒ gěi wǒ àiren
mǎile yíjiàn chènshān. Yes. When one comes to Guǎngzhōu,
one can't go back empty-handed. I
bought a shirt for my wife.
- A: Hē! Hǎo gāojíde chènshān! Jiā-
qian yě bú cuō. Dāi huǐ wǒ yě qū
mǎi liǎngjiàn. Zhèizhǒng chènshān
shì Guǎngzhōu shēngchǎnde ma? Well! What a classy shirt! The
price is also pretty good. Later,
I'll go buy a couple, too. Is this
kind of shirt produced in Guǎngzhōu?
- B: Bú shì, shì Sūzhōu shēngchǎnde. No, it's produced in Sūzhōu.
- A: Wǒmen zài Sūzhōude shíhou méi
jiànguó! Kānqilai Zhōngguóde hǎo
dōngxī dōu jízhōng dào Guǎngzhōu
lai le! We didn't see any when we were in
Sūzhōu! Apparently, all of China's
good things come together in Guǎng-
zhōu!
- B: Guǎngjiāohuìshangde jīqī ya,
xiāofèipǐn la, dōu shì cóng quán-
guó yùnláide, zhǎnlǎn yǐhòu jiù
zài Guǎngzhōu mài, suǒyǐ zhèr
shāngdiànli mǎide dōngxī yǒu duō
yǒu hǎo. The machines and consumer items at
the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair are shipped
here from all over the country, and
after being exhibited, are sold right
here in Guǎngzhōu, so the stores here
sell a lot of different items, and of
good quality.
- A: Xiǎo Chén, wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dǎ-
ting yíxiàr ne, Guǎngzhōu fújiàn
jiāgōng gōngyè xiànzài fāzhǎnde
zěnme yàng le? Xiǎo Chén, I wanted to find out
from you how the processing industry
in the vicinity of Guǎngzhōu is devel-
oping?
- B: Jìn nián lái, fāzhǎnde bú màn.
Zhǔyào shì zhèixiē gōngchǎng yǒu
wàiguó gōngsī cānjiā, suǒyǐ tāmen-
de shēngchǎn hěn yǒu tèdiǎn. In recent years, it has been devel-
oping rather quickly. The main thing
is that there are some foreign com-
panies participating in these factor-
ies, so their production is very dis-
tinctive.
- A: Wǒ jīntiān zài bàozhǐshang kàn-
dao yíge xiāoxi, shuō zài jǐge
dìfāng chénglìle "jīngjì tèqū." I saw a story in the paper today
that said that "special economic
zones" have been established in
several places.
- B: Shì. Zài Guǎngdōng, Fújiàn,
Shànghǎi, dōu yǐjīng yǒu zhèiyang-
de tèqū. Yǐhòu dàgài hái huì
gèng duō. Yes. There are already special
zones like this in Guǎngdōng, Fújiàn,
and Shànghǎi. In the future, there
will probably be even more of them.

- A: Yǒu méiyǒu tèbiéde fālǚ guǎn zhèixiē dìqūde jīngjì qíngkuàng?
Are there special laws governing the situations in these special economic zones?
- B: Yǒu. Wǒmen yǒu Zhōngwénde, yě yǒu Yīngwénde, nǐ xūyào ma?
Yes. We have the Chinese and the English (versions). Do you need it?
- A: Xūyào a!
Yes!
- B: Ò, duì le, nǐ shì lǚshī a! Dāngrán xūyào le. Wǒ mǎshàng jiù qù zhǎo. Nǐ yào Zhōngwénde háishi Yīngwénde?
Oh, right: you're a lawyer! Of course you need it. I'll go get it right away. Do you want the Chinese or the English?
- A: Wǒ dōu yào.
Both.
- B: Hǎo, Lǚxíngshè, fàndiànli dōu yǒu, děng yíxià huíqu wǒ gěi nǐ ná. Ò! Duì le, kěnéng jiāoyìhuì-lǐ yě yǒu, wǒ qù gěi nǐ wènwen.
Okay. The Travel Service and the hotel both have it. Later, when we go back, I'll get it for you. Oh, right--maybe they also have it at the trade fair. I'll go ask them for you.
- A: Hǎo ba! Wǒmen yìqǐ qù, yìbiān zǒu yìbiān liáoliáo.
All right! Let's go together, and chat on the way.
- B: Hǎo!...Nǐ dàgài tīngshuō le, xiànzài jìnchūkǒude xiànzhì bǐ-jiǎo shǎo le, wǒmen yòu hé xǔduō guójiā dǐnglè màoyì tiáoyuē, kāishǐ gāo jīngjì hézuò. Suóyì zuì jìn zhèixiē niánde jiāoyìhuì tèbié rènao.
Okay!...You've probably heard that now there are fewer restrictions on imports and exports, and we have also concluded trade treaties with many countries, and are starting to engage in economic cooperation. So the trade fair has been particularly lively the past few years.
- A: Zhèi yìdiǎn wǒ yě zhùyìdào le, xiànzài yì zǒujìn jiāoyìhuì dà-tīng, yǎnjīng jiù bú gòu yòng le, zhēn shí yuè bàn yuè hǎo le, wǒ hái tīngshuō xiànzài biéde dìfāng yě yǒu xiǎo guīmóde jiāoyìhuì le, hěn duō wàiguó dàibíxiǎotuán qù cānjiā, shì ma?
I've noticed that myself. Now, as soon as you walk into the hall of the trade fair, your eyes can't take everything in. It's really getting better and better. And I hear that now there are small-scale trade fairs in other places, which a lot of foreign delegations attend. Is that so?
- B: Shì. Tèbié shì yǒule ZhōngMěi hǎiyùn tiáoyuē yǐhòu, jǐge dà hǎigǎng gèng fánróng le. Zài zhèixiē hǎigǎng, hái yǒu Běijīng, xiànzài dōu yǒu xiǎo guīmóde jiāoyìhuì, yǒu xǔduō wàiguó shāngren zài nàr zuò mǎimài.
Yes. Especially since the Sino-American sea transportation treaty, the larger ports have become even more prosperous. In these ports and in Běijīng, there are now small-scale trade fairs where many foreign merchants do business.
- A: Duì, duì, duì. Wǒ tīngshuō le. Suóyì wǒ xiǎng yǐhòu yánhǎi yí dài huì yǒu hěn dàde fāzhǎn.
Oh, yes. I've heard that. So I think the coastal region will develop greatly in the future.

- B: Wǒ yě zènme xiǎng. I think so, too.
- A: Wǒ hái yǒu yíge wèntí, zài jīng-jī tèqūlǐ gōngzuòde gōngren, gōngzī shǐ bu shǐ gāo yidiǎnr ne? I have another question: Do the workers in special economic zones have higher wages?
- B: Wǒ xiǎng gāo yidiǎnr. I believe so.
- A: Nà bú shì huì chūxiàn yíge xīnde jiēji ma? Then might not a new class arise?
- B: Méi nàme yánzhòng! It's not that serious!
- A: Wèishenme? Why?
- B: Yìbānde lái shuō, yǒu wàiguo gōngsī cānjiāde gōngchǎng, suīrán gōngzī gāo yidiǎnr, kěshì gōngzuò xiàolǜ yě bǐjiào gāo a. "Duō lǎo duō dé" shì shèhuìzhǔyìde jīngjī zhèngcè ma! Generally speaking, in factories that have the participation of foreign companies, although the wages are higher, the efficiency is also higher. "More pay for more work" is the economic policy of socialism, you see!
- A: "Duō lǎo duō dé"! Zhèige zhèngcè bú cuò. "More pay for more work"! That's a good policy.
- B: Ò, duì le, nǐ bié wàngle, jīntiān wǎnshang wǒmen zài fàndiànli yǒu yíge wǎnhuì. Oh, right--don't forget that we have a party in the restaurant tonight.
- A: Wǎnhuì? Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bú jìde le. Party? Excuse me, but I don't remember.
- B: Zuótiān gěi nǐ sòngqude qǐngtiē. Nǐ wàng le? The invitation was sent over to you yesterday. Have you forgotten?
- A: Ò, duì le, shì huānsònghuì! Oh, yes: it's a farewell party!
- B: Shì, shì Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè bānde. Shì huānsòng, yě shì huānyíng. Yes. It's being given by the China Travel Service. It's to send you off, but also to welcome you.
- A: Huānyíng? Welcome?
- B: Huānyíng nǐmen zài lái ya! To welcome you to come again!
- A: Dāngrán, wǒmen yíding huì zài lái. Of course. We'll be sure to come again.
- B: Nǐ qiānwàn bié wàngle. Wǎnshang qīdiǎn bàn! You mustn't forget. Seven-thirty in the evening!
- A: Hǎo, wǒ yíding lái! Okay, I'll be sure to come!

Unit 8, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American reporter talks with the director of the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair at a press conference.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

-jiè	session
wàishāng	foreign businessman
yāoqiú	request, demand
jiànyì	suggestion, proposal
píngzi	bottle
rēng	to throw away
bāozhuāng	packaging

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the American reporter's suggestion? What two reasons does he give?
2. Have the Chinese been able to follow this suggestion? Why?
3. How does the reporter suggest the Chinese might raise their bottling efficiency?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American reporter talks to a leading cadre from an industrial commercial organization.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

zìcǒng	ever since
cuòwù	to be mistaken, to be wrong
zhījiān	between
wàishāng	foreign businessman
fāngxiàng	direction
chángqī	long term

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What interesting things does the American say have come about in special economic zones like Fúzhōu? How does he think the situation might develop?
2. What does the Chinese say was one mistake of the Cultural Revolution?
3. What does he say is the relationship between socialism and the policy of "more pay for more work"?
4. What does he ask the American to tell his friends about China's direction?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

This exercise is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

bǎi zhuōzi	to set a table
wàishāng	foreign businessman
zīběn	capital
bǎozhèng	to assure, to guarantee
kěn	to be willing

Questions for Exercise 4

1. Who is being given a send-off?
2. Why does the woman say China needs lawyers?
3. Why is the farewell meeting not going to be an ordinary one?
4. What kind of work do these two workers do at the Trade Fair?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

At a press conference in the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair, an American reporter (A) talks with the director of the Trade Fair (B).

- B: Gèwèi hái yǒu shénme wèntí ma? Do you have any more questions?
- A: Yǒu yíge hěn xiǎode wèntí, wǒ xiǎng zuìjìn jǐjiè jiāoyìhuì kàn-qilai dōu gǎode hěn bú cuò, wàiguó shāngren hěn shǎo yǒu kōngshǒu huí-qude, búguò yǒu xiē qíngxíng nǐmen néng bu néng gǎide kuài yidiǎnr ne? One small question. The last few trade fairs have all looked very successful. Foreign businessmen have rarely gone home empty-handed. But couldn't you change certain things a little faster?
- B: Dāngrán, wàishāngmen tíchūlaide yāoqiú wǒmen zǒngshì yào kǎolǚde. Bān Guǎngjiāohuìde mùdì jiù shì yào fánróng jīnchūkǒu ma! Of course, we always consider suggestions from foreign businessmen. The purpose of holding the Guǎngzhōu zhōu Trade Fair is to make foreign trade prosper!
- B: Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yíge jiànyì. Nǐmende píjiǔ píngzi kě bu kéyǐ gǎi xiǎo yidiǎnr ne? Wǒmen hěn xǐhuan Zhōngguó chūkǒude píjiǔ, kěshì hěn bù xǐhuan nèixiē xiàng jiàngyóu-píng yíyàngde dà píngzi. Yùnqilai bù fāngbian. Èrqiě Xīngqīliù, Xīngqītiān wǒmen xǐhuan chūqu lǚ-xíng, xiǎo píng píjiǔ hēwán jiù rēng, duōme fāngbian. I just have one suggestion. Could you make your beer bottles smaller? We like the beer that China exports, but we don't like those big bottles that look like soy sauce bottles. They're difficult to ship. Besides, on weekends we like to go out on trips. It's so convenient to have small bottles which you can throw out when you're finished.
- B: Xièxie nǐ. Zhèige jiànyì tíde hěn hǎo. Shàngcì Xiānggǎng màoyì dàiibiǎotuán lái zhèlǐde shíhou yǐ-jīng tíchulai le. Dāi huǐr wǒmen jiù kéyǐ qǐng gèwèi kàn yíxiàr wǒmende xiǎo píng píjiǔ, bú guò zhèizhǒng píjiǔ mùqián hái bù néng dà guīmó shēngchǎn, wǒmende shèbei hái yǒu hěn duō xiànzhí. Thank you. That's a very good suggestion. It was already made by a trade delegation from Hong Kong when they came here. Later, we can show you our smaller-bottle beer, but at present this kind of beer cannot yet be produced on a large scale. Our equipment still has many limitations.
- A: Yěxǔ zài zhèifāngmian wǒmen Měiguó gōngsī kéyǐ hé Zhōngguó fāngmian hézuò, tígāo bāozhuāngde xiàolǚ. Perhaps some of our American companies might be able to cooperate with China in this area and raise your bottling efficiency.
- B: Zhèige wèntí bǐjiǎo fùzá, wǒmen děi yānjiū yānjiū, wǒ xīwàng bù jiǔ, wǒmen jiù kéyǐ gěi nǐ yíge mǎnyide huídá. This is a rather complicated question which we will have to look into. I hope that we will be able to give you a satisfactory answer before long.
- A: Xièxie nǐ. Thank you.

- B: Hái yǒu shénme biéde wèntí ma? Any more questions?
- A: Xiànzài méiyǒu le. No.
- B: Hǎo, nàme wǒmende zhāodàihuì jiù kāi dào zhèlǐ, wǒ yào xièxie gēwèi xīnwénjiè péngyǒude bāngzhū hé jiānyì, xièxie dàjiā. All right, then we'll end the press conference here. I'd like to thank all of you friends from the press for your help and suggestions, and thank all of you.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American reporter (A) and a leading cadre (B) from an industrial commercial organization talk.

- A: Liú Xiānsheng, nín hǎo, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Hello, Mr. Liú, I haven't seen you in a long time.
- B: Hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Hěn máng ba? Yes, it's been a long time. Have you been busy?
- A: Méiyǒu nàme máng, jiù shì lèi yidiǎnr. Not so busy, I'm just tired.
- B: Zuìjìn yòu dào nǎr qù le? Where have you been to again lately?
- A: Fújiàn. Fúzhōu fùjìn yǒu yíge hěn dàde jīngjì tèqū, wǒ zài nǎr zhùle jǐtiān, juéde hěn yǒu yìsi. Fújiàn. Near Fúzhōu there's a very large special economic zone where I stayed a few days. I found it very interesting.
- B: Shì a. Zìcóng hé nǐmen dǐngle hǎiyùn tiáoyuē yǐhòu, jǐge dà hǎigǎng dōu shì yuè gāo yuè fánróng le. Yes. Ever since we concluded the sea transport treaty with you, our big ports have been getting more and more prosperous.
- A: Bú jiù shì zhèixiē, Fúzhōu hái chūxiànle yìxiē hěn yǒu yìside shì. Not only that, but some very interesting things have come about in Fúzhōu.
- B: Nǐ shuōshuo kàn ne? What's that?
- A: Zài jīngjì tèqū gōngzuòde Zhōngguó gōngren, tāmende shōurù bǐjiǎo duō, tāmen bǐjiǎo róngyì mǎidào zhǐliàng bǐjiǎo hǎode xiāofèipǐn. Nín xiǎng zěnmeyàng? Zài jīngjì tèqū huì bu huì chūxiàn xīnde jiējí, zài zhèngzhìshàng huì bu huì chūxiàn xīnde qíngkuàng? Chinese workers who live in special economic zones have larger incomes, and it's easier for them to get higher quality consumer goods. What do you think: Will a new class appear in the special economic zones? Will a new political situation develop?

B: Nǐ qiānwàn bú yào nàme xiǎng.
Qiánxiē nián, wǒmen zhǐ gāo zhèng-
zhī bù gāo jīngjī shì cuòwude.
Érqiě zhǐ gāo zhèngzhī, zhèngzhī
yě méiyǒu gāohǎo ma!

You mustn't think like that. Dur-
ing those few years, we were mistaken
to engage only in politics and not
in economics. Moreover, we didn't
even handle the politics well.

A: Nàme, nǐ xiǎng zhèige qǐngkuàng
hé shèhuìzhǔyìde gōngzī zhèngcè
zhījiān bú huì yǒu shénme dà wèntí
le?

So you don't think that there will
be any big problems between this
situation and the socialist wage
policy?

B: Nǐ fāng xīn hǎo le, "duō láo duō
dé" shì wǒmende zhèngcè. Zhèige
zhèngcè shì bú huì gǎide. Gāo yì-
tiān shèhuìzhǔyì jiù děi shíxíng
yìtiān "duō láo duō dé"de zhèngcè.
Zài jīngjī tèqūde gōngsī, gōng-
chǎng, duōbǎn yǒu wàishāng cān-
jiā, shèbèi tiáojiàn hǎo yidiǎnr,
gōngzuò xiàolǜ gāo yidiǎnr, gōng-
ren gōngzī duō yidiǎnr shì yǐng-
gǎide. Qǐngkuàng bú huì yánzhōng-
dào chūxiàn yíge xīnde jiēji.

You can rest assured about that.
"More pay for more work" is our pol-
icy, and it won't change. Socialism
and the policy of "more pay for more
work" must go hand in hand. Most of
the companies and factories in special
economic zones have foreign mer-
chants participating. They have bet-
ter facilities and higher efficiency.
It's right that their workers have
higher pay. The situation could
never become so serious that a new
class would appear.

A: Hǎojíle, xièxie nín.

Wonderful. Thank you.

B: Bú kèqǐ, qǐng nǐ gào su nǐde
péngyoumen, dà gǎo Sìge Xiàndàihuà
shì wǒmende fāngxiàng, fánróng
jīngjī shì zhèige dà fāngxiàngde
yíbfēn, shì wǒmen chángqīde
zhèngcè, bú huì suǐbiàn gǎide,
qǐng gèfāngmiànde péngyou fāngxīn.

Not at all. And please tell your
friends that going all out with the
Four Modernizations is our direction.
Making our economy prosper is one part
of that big direction, and it's our
long-term policy. We won't change it
arbitrarily. Ask our friends in all
spheres to rest assured.

A: Hǎo, wǒ yíding zhuǎngào tamen.

All right, I'll be sure to pass the
message on to them.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

This is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade
Fair.

A: Dàtīnglide zhuōzi dōu bǎihǎo le
meiyǒu?

Have all the tables in the large
hall been set?

B: Bǎihǎo le. Jīntiān yòu shì
huānsòng shéi ya?

Yes. Who is it that is being given
a send-off today?

A: Huānsòng yíge Xiānggǎng láiide
lǚshī dàibiǎotuán.

A delegation of lawyers from Hong
Kong.

B: Lǚshī? Fǎlǚ gōngzuòzhě gēn
Guǎngjiāohuì yǒu shénme guānxi?

Lawyers? What connection do legal workers have with the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?

A: Xiànzài Zhōngguó hé wàishāngde
hézuò yuè lái yuè duō le. Zhōng-
guó yào jìnkǒu shèbèi, yào gǎo
jiāgōng gōngyè, huòshì yào gǎo bié-
de jīngjì hézuò, dōu xūyào fǎlǚ a!

China is cooperating more and more with foreign merchants. If China wants to import equipment, to do processing or finishing of products, or have any other economic cooperation, they need lawyers!

B: Wǒ hái shì juéde yǒu yìdiǎnr qí-
guài, bù zěnme qīngchū, wǒ cónglái
méi xiǎngdào fǎlǚ hé jīngjì hái
yǒu guānxi.

I still think that's kind of strange. I don't really understand. I never thought that law had anything to do with economics.

A: Wàiguó shāngren ma, jiàqian na,
zìběn na, shenmede, dōu yào yòng
fǎlǚ xiěqīngchūde, yàoburán, tāmen
zěnme zhīdao bǎozhèng kényì zhuàn
qián ne? Bù kényì zhuàn qián, tā-
men wèishenme yào hé wǒmen zuò
mǎimài ne?

Foreign merchants, you know. They have to write out clearly their prices and capital in legal terms, otherwise how can they know for sure that they are guaranteed to make money? And if they can't make any money, why would they want to do business with us?

B: À! Nín zhèi yì shuō wǒ jiù qīng-
chū le. Yǒule fǎlǚ bǎozhèng, wài-
shāng cái kěn zuò mǎimài.

Oh! When you put it that way, I understand. Foreign merchants are only willing to do business if they have legal guarantees.

A: Hǎo le, zài qù kànkan, wǎnhuì-
shang xūyào de dōngxì dōu yào jí-
zhōng fàngzhào de.

Okay, go back and take a look. The things we'll need during the banquet should all be put together in one place.

B: Hǎo, jìde le.

All right, I won't forget.

A: Hái yǒu, nǐ tīngdao xiāoxi le
meiyou?

And another thing: Have you heard the news?

B: Méiyou a, shénme xiāoxi?

No, what news?

A: Jīntiān wǎnshangde huānsòng huì
bú tài píngcháng.

Tonight's farewell meeting isn't going to be an ordinary one.

B: Zěnme bù píngcháng ne?

How's that?

A: Guǎngdōng shěng, Guǎngzhōu shì
gèjī rénmin zhèngfǔ dōu yào pài
hěn zhòngyào de rén lái. Yǒu hěn
duō hěn zhòngyào de shì yào zài
zhèr tán, wǒmen děi bǎ shénme dōu

All levels of the people's government of Guǎngdōng province and the city of Guǎngzhōu are sending very important people. They'll be talking about a lot of important things here.

yùbeihǎo, ràng lǐngdǎo fàng xīn.

We should prepare everything well and put the leadership at ease.

B: Méi wèntí, wǒ zài qù jiǎnchá yíci. Nín dāi huǐ kě dǐ zài lái kàn yíxià a!

That won't be any problem. I'll go back and check once more. But later you have to go look things over once yourself!

A: Hǎo, dāi huǐ wǒ jiù lái.

Okay, I'll be right there.

APPENDIX:

WORD USAGE EXERCISES

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose between *cānguān*, *fāngwèn* and *kàn* in translating these sentences.

1. What places did you visit when you went to China?
2. I don't even have time to visit my friends.
3. This is not a formal (*zhèngshì*) visit. Don't be nervous (*jīnzhāng*).

II. *shǎoshù*, *hěn shǎo*

1. There are very few people who will not help others.
2. Only a small number of students make (*chū*) that kind of mistake.

III. Choose between direction names with *-fāng*, *-bù*, and *-biān* (for example, *běifāng*, *běibù*, and *běibiān*).

1. Northerners like to eat foods made from wheat (*miànshí*), and Southerners like to eat rice (*mǐfàn*).
2. There are several famous universities in the eastern United States.
3. Hángzhōu is southwest of Shànghǎi.
4. New York is in the northeast.
5. Inner Mongolia is west of Manchuria.
6. People from northern Taiwan have a different accent from southerners.

IV. *dǒng*, *liǎojiě*, *zhīdào*, *tīngshuō*, *tīngdǒng*

1. If you understood that I wasn't going to come, why did you still stand there waiting for two hours?
2. I could understand everything he said, although he spoke with a very heavy (*zhòng*) accent (*kǒuyīn*).
3. Such a weird (*guài*) guy is really impossible to understand.
4. I understand you're going to school this summer. Is that true?
5. I can understand the Shànghǎi dialect, but I can't speak it very well.

V. *gāo*, *nòng*, *zuò*

1. Doing these sentences drives me crazy ("gives one a headache").

2. It was very difficult to do scientific experimentation
(kěxué shíyàn) under such circumstances.
3. What are you doing there, you naughty child!

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose *-zhǒng*, *-lèi*, or *-yàng* to translate these sentences:

1. How could you think that he was that kind of person?
2. She'll eat any kind of food.
3. What breed of dog (*gǒu*) is this?
4. We should research these questions by category.

II. *mùqián*, *xiànzài*, *zhèihuīr*

1. Where is he now?
2. At present the international situation (*guójiè xíngshì*) is complicated.
3. I'm leaving right now.
4. It is now 9:26 Běijīng time.

III. *nǚlì*, *yònggōng*, *shì* ("to try")

1. Try doing it this way. If it doesn't work, we'll see what we can do about it later.
2. All the students here are hardworking.
3. China is hard at work on modernization, and we want to help.
4. I tried his office three times today, but no one answered the phone.

IV. *pǔbiàn*, *pǔtōng*, *píngcháng*, *liúxíng*

1. That's a popular saying.
2. In Shanghai, for men and women to hold hands (*shǒu lā shǒu*) is a very common thing.
3. How much does an ordinary worker here make a month?
4. Frisbees (*fēipán*) are now very common in Běijīng.

V. *wánquán*, *quán*, *zhěnggè*

1. The room was filled with smoke (*yān*).
2. His idea (*xiǎngfǎ*) was completely wrong.
3. I'm afraid he completely misunderstood what I meant.
4. The whole article was about how bad their planning had been.
5. His whole family came.

VI. *qūbié, chābié, bù yíyàng*

1. There aren't many differences between the big cities of the northeastern United States and those of Western Europe (*Xī'ōu*).
2. I could hardly tell the difference between the twins (*zhèduì shuāngbāotāi*).
3. Would you explain the difference between these two terms (*míngcí*)?

VII. *rènwéi, yīwéi, xiǎng, juéde*

1. He thought that it was an hour earlier than it really (*shíjìshàng*) was.
2. I think the best way to study a foreign language (*wàiyǔ*) is to live in the country where it is spoken.
3. What do you think of Běijīng?
4. Why do you consider him such a dangerous person?
5. A: Has he already gone back?
B: I think so, but I'm not sure.

VIII. *shǒuxiān, xiān, dìyī*

1. First I stayed in a small town (*xiǎozhèn*) for a month and then came here.
2. In his office, he is always the first to arrive.
3. You have to first get the pronunciation right in order to get the spelling (*pīnxiě*) right.

IX. *tiáojiàn, qíngkuàng*

1. Why don't you apply yourself to your studies? You have such excellent conditions.
2. He can't stand (*shòubuliǎo*) the situation any longer.
3. Under the circumstances, he had no choice but to agree.
4. How are business conditions in China these days?
5. Conditions have changed greatly in rural China in the past thirty years.
6. Working conditions there are better now than the last time I visited.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose *miànji*, *dìqū*, *-dài*, *-qū*, *-bù*, or *bùfen* in translating these sentences.

1. This area is very dirty.
2. This area of the city isn't safe.
3. The area of this room is nine square meters (*jiǔ píngfāng mǐ*).
4. In the northeastern area of China, there is a lot of industry.
5. This kind of rice is produced in the Jiāngnán area.
6. The southwestern part of the United States has a very distinctive natural environment.
7. I don't get the chance to come to this part of town very often.
8. This kind of architecture is very popular in these parts.

II. *dàozi*, *mǐ*, *fàn*

1. His father grows rice.
2. This is fried rice, not plain ("white") rice.
3. This rice is grown (*chūchǎn*) only in Guǎngdōng.

III. *fāzhǎn*, *zhǎng*

1. Your rice is growing pretty well!
2. China's economy has grown slowly during the past two decades.
3. The kids are growing so fast.
4. Our company has grown quickly.
5. Over the past one hundred years, Shàntóu has grown into an important industrial city.

IV. *jiā*, *jiāting*, *jiā(lǐ)rén*, *-hù*

1. There are no boys in their family.
2. Xiǎo Píng's whole family went to the seashore on Sunday.
3. Such a family is rare (*bù cháng jiàn*) in America.
4. Thirty years ago there were only twenty-odd families in this town (*xiǎozhèn*).
5. Next Saturday I'm going up to Běijīng to see my family.
6. Almost every family has a television in our country. Some families have more than one.

V. *jīqì, jīxiè*

1. Our country's machine industry is still young.
2. The application (*yìngyòng*) of large machines started three hundred years ago.
3. Agricultural machinery is badly needed in China.
4. Shall I take you to see our new machinery now?

VI. *-kǒu, -ge, -wèi*

1. Will the seven of us fit (in the car)?
2. Those three professors all graduated from Harvard (*Hǎifó*).
3. How many people are there in your family?
4. (*When entering a restaurant for dinner*)
Headwaiter: How many?
You: Four.

VII. *píngjūn, yìbān*

1. The average height (*gāodù*) of the students in this class is about 1.6 meters (*yì mǐ liù*).
2. The average person can eat fifteen to twenty-five *jiǎozi*.
3. On an average day, I can write five pages (*yè*).

VIII. *rén, rénmín, rénmen, rénjia*

1. The people would surely not like to keep (*bǎoliú*) such a thing in the constitution (*xiànfǎ*).
2. There isn't much difference between the two brothers (in personality).
3. Friendship involves at least two people.
4. I've heard people say that they're going to build (*gài*) a hotel at that intersection.
5. People naturally prefer to live in a quiet place rather than in the busy downtown area (*nàoshì*, "busy downtown area").
6. People are people; she's no different from anyone else.

IX. *túpiàn, zhàopiàn, huà(r)*

1. I think that picture is of her mother, but it must have been taken many years ago.
2. Where did you get so many pictures of China?
3. The picture that old man (*lǎotóuzi*) is drawing is really ugly!

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose *gài*, *xiū*, *jiànzhù*, or *jiànshè* in translating these sentences:

1. This highway was three years in construction. (It took three years to finish building this highway.)
2. Are those workers building new dormitories?
3. Is this how you intend to build a powerful country?!
4. Many city walls (*chéngqiáng*) built in ancient times were destroyed (*huīle*) during wars.
5. No one may build in this district.
6. How long did it take to build this bridge (*zhèizhuò qiáo*)?

II. *kě*, *zhēn*, *yídìng*, *dāngrán*, *shì* ("to be," emphatic)

1. He is going to go, but he hasn't decided when yet.
2. When you tell him, he's sure to be happy.
3. That sure was an interesting movie.
4. He sure has a lot of friends!
5. Drugs (*dúpǐn*)--that's certainly not something to mess with.
6. A: Can you tell me why your government didn't send anyone to take part?
B: Sure I can tell you. It's like this: . . .
7. A: Would he know the answer (*dá'àn*) to this question?
B: I'm sure he would.
8. They want to concentrate on only a portion of the work; that just won't do!

III. In each sentence, "how old" requires a different translation.

1. How old is this building?
2. How old are you? (*tó* a young person)
3. How old is your boy?
4. How old is your grandfather?
5. How old is China?
6. How old is this movie?
7. How old are these shoes of yours?
8. How old are these magazines?
9. How old is this chicken soup? (*How long since it was made?*)
10. How old is this bean curd? (*How long since it was bought?*)

IV. *gǔ, gǔdài*

1. That's an ancient building.
2. Man already knew how to cook in ancient times.
3. He likes to study (*dú*) the ancient books.
4. Xī'ān is an ancient city.

V. *chuānguò, jīngguò, guò, guòqu*

1. Ten years have passed, and she's still just as young and pretty (as before).
2. Cross the street and wait for me in front of that building.
3. I pass there every day on my way to work (*shàng bānde shíhou*).
4. Time passes so quickly!
5. The train passed several stations without stopping.
6. When I'm in a hurry, I cut through the park.
7. After a month had passed, he felt much better.
8. Through the efforts of many people, we have been able to set up (*kāibàn*) an elementary school here.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. *bāng, bāngzhù, bāngmáng*

1. Would you help me?
2. I don't need this kind of help.
3. He came to help.
4. Would you hold this for me for a second?
5. I'll help you write the report (*bàogào*).
6. We can help each other.

II. *gè-, měi-, yī-* ("one")

1. Each person has his own ideas. How can he make you do it this way?
2. Each year we have many excellent students.
3. Each state has some laws of its own.
4. These apples are a dime each.
5. Each book he writes is better than the last.

III. *guǎn, guānxīn, jièyì*

1. Although she says little, she actually (*shíjìshang*) cares deeply.
2. If you don't mind, I'd like to ask you a few questions.
3. People didn't care a bit about those pitiful (*kěliánde*) children.
4. Who cares what you do?!
5. Don't mind him!

IV. *qítā, biéde, lìng(wài), yī-, nèi-*

1. These sentences are pretty good; the others are too colloquial (*tǔ*).
2. Well, you can say he's right about this point, but how about the other questions?
3. One is too weak, the other is too fat (*pàng*).
4. When you're taking the test, don't think about other things.
5. This vase is not bad, but the other one is even prettier.
6. Do you want to know the other reasons?
7. Put your other hand here.

V. -wèi, dīwèi

1. I don't like to talk with those who are in high positions.
2. India's rice (*dàmǐ*) output is the highest ("first") in the world.
3. He's too young to be in such a high position.

VI. *bú fàngxīn, dānxīn*

1. I'm very worried about him. He doesn't look well.
2. Without you here I've been sort of anxious.
3. What is there to worry about?
4. I would really worry if you went alone.
5. Don't worry. She's already grown up; she can take care of herself.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. *gōngchǎng, chǎng*

1. The air is really bad because there are so many factories in this area.
2. She'd never been so happy since she came to ("entered") this factory.
3. He works in a camera factory.

II. *měi, hǎokàn, piàoliàng*

1. She's really a beautiful girl.
2. What a beautiful place this is!
3. This dress doesn't look good at all. Why do you want to buy it?
4. You speak beautiful standard Chinese!
5. What a handsome son you have, Department Chief Xú.
6. The weather is beautiful today.

III. *chà, bù hǎo, huài*

1. His pronunciation is too bad.
2. He doesn't speak French well.
3. His Japanese isn't bad.
4. On the whole, it's a pretty nice place; it's just that the weather is always bad.
5. Bad boy ("child")!
6. Conditions here used to be very bad; now they're much better.
7. That commune's level of mechanization is rather poor.

IV. *liǎojiě, zhīdào, rènshi, shóu (shú)*

1. I didn't know him when we were at Oxford (*Niújīn*).
2. Do you know what happened between them (*tāmen zhījiān*)?
3. I know nothing about that.
4. You still don't know me too well, do you?
5. I knew him, but not very well. We had only met a couple of times.
6. I know of him, but I've never met him.
7. I still don't know Běijīng very well; perhaps we should go together.
8. (*To taxi driver*) I want to go to the Dàhuá Restaurant. Do you know it?
9. Of the three of us, you know him best. Do you think he would mind if we did this?

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose *háishi*... or *zuì hǎo* in translating these sentences.

1. We'd better not go after all. See, it's raining.
2. You'd better walk there. It's very hard to drive on that road.
3. It's best to be mentally prepared ("in the heart have preparation").
4. I'd better not drink too much. I have to drive.
5. It would be best if I could talk with him in person. Would that be possible?
6. Chinese food is still the tastiest, don't you think?

II. *jiāshǔ, jiā, jiā(li)rén*

1. This housing is for workers and their families.
2. How many people are there in the average worker's family?
3. Is your whole family in Huángzhuāng?
4. They go home every Saturday to be with their families.

III. *kuài (yào), yào, huì, gāng yào, zhèng yào, jiù yào, hěn kuài jiù*

1. Be patient. We'll be there soon.
2. He's going to get his Ph.D. (*bóshì xuéwèi*) this summer.
3. You've come at the perfect time. I'm just about to pack the suitcases.
4. She'll be happy if you do that.
5. Look, it's about to rain.
6. It's going to rain today.
7. That's what I was just about to say, (but) you didn't give me the chance to say it.
8. She forgot about the matter very soon.
9. Three new consulates (*lǐngshìguǎn*) are going to open very soon.
10. I'm about to die of hunger!
11. Don't worry. I'll tell him.
12. It's almost over (finished).
13. If you don't stay in touch ("maintain contact") with them, they forget you very soon.
14. He came when I was just about to leave.

TVL, Unit 7

IV. *yánzhe, pángbiān*

1. They've planted a lot of trees alongside the river.
2. Alongside the street, I saw many new stores.
3. They built a railroad alongside the border.
4. Just walk along this street, and you'll see a lot of clothing stores.
5. There is a park alongside the factory.

V. *yǐshàng, shàngmian, -duō* OR *yǐxià, xiàmian, bú dào*

1. There are probably over ten people there.
2. He has under twenty students.
3. Children ten and over may participate.
4. It will cost over fifty dollars.
5. We had been going for less than an hour when the car broke down.
6. Only buildings with over four stories have elevators.
7. Under this brigade there are ten production teams.
8. It's been over a month since I saw him last.
9. His office is right above mine.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose *dāihuīr*, *děng yíxià*, *děng (yì)huīr*, *yǐhòu*, or *hòulái* in translating these sentences:

1. I'll be leaving in a minute.
2. Later, when you have time, let's talk, okay?
3. Wait a second. I think I hear him coming.
4. Later, I found out that she had been a Red Guard.
5. Things were very chaotic at that time, but later on they got better.
6. His later short stories are mostly about the Uygurs.
7. He'll be here in a while.

II. *fánróng*, *fādá*

1. The Táng dynasty was a period (*shíqī*) when China's culture flourished.
2. I didn't expect that this place would have become so prosperous in the ten years since I left.
3. Livestock farming is well developed in Xinjiang and Inner Mongolia.
4. Japan's industry and commerce are flourishing and the economy is thriving.

III. *qiānwàn*, *yídìng*

1. Be sure to bring that book.
2. Be sure not to forget to ask him whether he is coming.
3. I'll be sure to tell him.

IV. *xiāoxi*, *xīnwén*

1. Where did you hear this news?
2. There isn't any interesting news in today's paper.
3. Is there any news about China?
4. She often brought us unpleasant (*bù yúkuàide*) news.
5. Has there been any news about when the meeting will be held?
6. What good news is there today?
7. News reporters (*jìzhě*) are the best at getting information.

VOCABULARY

Module & Unit

ài	to love	7.6
àiqíng gùshi	love story	8.1*
àishang	to fall in love with	7.6
Alābó	Arab, Arabic	8.6*
àn	shore, bank, coast	8.3*
àn	according to	8.7
āndìng	to be peaceful and stable, to be quiet and settled	7.7
ānpái	to arrange	8.1
ànshí	on time	8.6*
ba	(marker of pause, hypothesis)	8.5
bāba	father, dad, papa	7.4
Bādǎlǐng (Bádǎlǐng)	(area northwest of Běijīng)	8.4
bǎifēn zhī X	X percent	8.3
báitiān	daytime	7.3
bǎi zhuōzi	to set a table	8.8*
-bān	(counter for class of students)	7.3*
bāng	to help; as a help to, for (someone)	8.5
bàng	to be great, to be fantastic, to be terrific	7.4*, 7.7*, 8.4*
bāng máng	to help; help	7.4
bāngzhu	to help; help; as a help to, for	7.2
bāo	to wrap	7.8*
bǎochí	to keep, to preserve, to maintain	7.5
bǎohù	to protect	7.6
bǎozhèng	to guarantee, to assure	8.8*
bǎozhuāng	to package; packaging	8.8*
-bèi	time, -fold	8.7
bèi	(passive marker)	8.7
Běidà	Běijīng University	8.2
běifāng	the north	8.1
bèihòu	behind someone's back	7.2*
-bèizi	lifetime	7.2
běndī	this locality, local	8.3*
běnlái	originally, in the beginning, at first; to begin with, in the first place	7.7
běnrén	herself, himself, oneself, myself, etc.	7.6*
bǐ	to compare	7.1*
biàn	to change, to become different	7.3
biànchéng	to change into	7.2*, 7.3

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
biànhuà	change(s)	8.5
biānjiāng	border region, frontier region	8.6
biānjīng	(national) border	8.5
bǐcǐ	each other, one another, both; the same to you	7.5*
bǐjiào (bǐjiǎo)	comparatively, relatively, more; fairly, rather; to compare	8.1
bīnggrén	sick person, patient	7.3*
bómǔ	aunt (wife of father's elder brother); term for the mother of one's friend	7.8
bóshì	Ph.D.	7.2*
-bù	(counter for films; counter for automobiles, machines, etc.)	8.1*, 8.7
bú fāngxīn	to worry	7.3*
-bùfen	part, section	8.2
bù guǎn	no matter (what, whether, etc.)	7.5*, 7.6
bù huāng bù máng	calm, not the least bit flustered	7.8*
bú jiàn bú sǎn	don't leave until we've met up	7.7*
bù jiǎndān	not ordinary, not commonplace; remarkable	7.7*
bù néng bu	to have to, must	7.7
bù shǎo	to be quite a lot, to be much, to be many	7.4
bú shí...jiù shí...	if it isn't...then it's...; either... or...	7.7
bú shì tiánde jiù shì lāde	if it isn't sweet, then it's hot	8.7*
bú xiāng huà	to be ridiculous, to be outrageous, to be absurd (talk, acts, etc.)	7.6
cái	only (before an amount)	7.3
cái	only in that case, only under this condition	7.5
cáichǎn	property	7.4
cāidǐ	vegetable plot	8.3
cáiliào	material(s); data	8.2
cānguān	to visit and observe	8.1
cānjiā	to participate in, to take part in; to join; to attend	7.6
cānkǎoshū	reference book	8.2*
chā	to differ; to be inferior, to be poor, to be not up to standard; to lack	8.6
chābié	difference, disparity	8.2
cháng	to be long	7.1
cháng	to taste	8.7*
chǎng	factory, plant	8.5*, 8.6
chàng gē	to sing (songs)	7.6*

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
Cháng Jiāng	Yangtze River	8.3°, 8.7
chángqī	long term	8.8°
chǎnliàng	output, yield	8.3
-cháo	dynasty (bound form)	8.4
chǎo	to be noisy; to disturb by making noise	7.8
cháodài	dynasty	8.4
chǎoxǐng	to wake (someone) up by being noisy	7.8
-chéng	(verb ending) into	7.3
chénggōng	to succeed	8.6°
chēnghu	to call, to address	8.1
chénglì	to establish, to found, to set up	8.5
chéngshì	city; urban	7.6
chéngyuánguó	member country	7.6°
chēxiāng	car (of a train)	8.6°
chībuxiǎqù	to be unable to eat	7.3
chī kǔ	to suffer, to undergo hardship	7.4
chóngxīn	again, anew, afresh	8.4
chōu yān	to smoke (tobacco)	7.6°
chū	to produce	8.3°
...chū	at the beginning of...	8.5
chuáng	bed	7.2°, 7.5°
chuāngkǒu	window (e.g., ticket window)	8.1°
chuānguò	to cross through	8.4
chuántǒng	tradition, traditional	7.1
chū chāi	to go or be away on (official) business	8.6
chū guó	to go abroad	8.2
chū jìng	to leave a country	8.1
chūkǒu	to export	8.8
chūnji	the spring season	8.3°
chūxiàn	to appear, to arise, to emerge	8.8
cíhuì	vocabulary	8.2°
cónglái	ever (up till now), always (up till now)	7.3
cónglái bù/méi	never (up till now)	7.3
cóng...(Verb)-qǐ	to begin (Verb)-ing from...	7.7
cúnguǎn	savings	8.3°
cūnr	village	7.6°
cuòwù	to be wrong (incorrect); mistake	8.8°
dàbùfen	the greater part; for the most part, mostly	8.1
dāduì	(production) brigade	8.3
dàduōshù(r)	the great majority	7.5
-dài	generation; era, (historical) period	7.5
-dài	zone, area, belt	8.1
dàibiǎo	to represent; representative, delegate; on behalf of, in the name of	8.4°, 8.7°, 8.8

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
dàibǎotuán	delegation, mission	8.3 [*] , 8.8
dāi huǐr	in a while, later (Běijīng)	8.8
dàishang	to take along (Běijīng)	7.8
dàjiě	"older sister" (a respectful term of address for a woman about one's own age or older)	7.4 [*]
Dàlǐ	(a city in Yúnnán province)	8.1 [*]
dàlù	mainland, continent	7.1
dāng	to act as, to be	8.6 [*]
dǎng	(political) party	7.6
dānrèn	to take up, to assume (a job or post)	8.2
dānxīn	to be worried, to be uneasy	7.4
dānzi	list; form	7.8
dào	to pour; to dump	7.1
-dào	(resultative ending used for percep- tion by one of the senses: <u>jiàndào</u> , <u>kàndào</u> , <u>tīngdào</u> , etc.)	7.3
-dào	(resultative ending used to indicate reaching: <u>xiǎngdào</u> , <u>tándào</u> , etc., often translated as "about" or "of")	7.3
dào	yet, on the contrary, nevertheless	8.7
dàochù	everywhere	7.7 [*]
dàodé	morality, morals, ethics	7.2 [*]
dàolǐ	principle, truth, hows and whys; reason, argument, sense	7.2
dǎoyóu	(tour) guide	8.7
dàozi	rice (in the paddy, or after harvesting but before hulling); paddy	8.3
Dàqīng	(a city in Heilongjiang Province)	8.1
dǎrǎo	to disturb	8.4 [*]
dà shǐfu	chef	8.7 [*]
dàtīng	(large) hall	8.8
Dàtóng	(a city in Shānxī province)	8.6 [*]
dàxué bìyèshēng	college graduate	8.2 [*]
dàxuéshēng	college student	7.1 [*]
dǎ zhàng	to fight a war, to go to war	7.8
dǎ zhēn	to get an injection	7.8 [*]
dǎ zì	to type (on a typewriter)	7.6
dàzìrán	nature (the physical world)	8.2 [*]
dé	to get	7.5
dédao	to receive, to get	7.5
-de huà	if; in case; supposing that	7.6
děi kàn	to depend on	7.8
děng	when; by the time; till	7.8 [*]
děng dào	wait until; when, by the time	7.3
děng yíxià	wait a minute; in a little while	7.8
děngyú	to equal, to be equal to; to be the same as (in effect), to amount to	8.7
dì	earth, soil; land; ground; fields	8.3
-diǎn	point	7.1
diào yǎnlèi	to cry	7.3 [*]

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
dīng	to agree on; to draw up (a plan); to conclude (a treaty)	8.8
dìqū	area, district, region	8.1
dìwei	position, status	7.2
dìxíng	topography, terrain	8.4
-dòng	(counter for buildings)	8.7*
Dōngběi	Manchuria	8.1
dōngbù	the eastern part of a country	8.7*
dǒngde	to understand, to grasp, to know	7.1
duǎnpiān	short (stories, articles)	7.6
dúlì	to be independent; independence	7.2
duó (duō)	how (to what extent)	7.4
-duǒ	(counter for flowers)	8.7*
duó hǎo!	how great that is!	7.2*
duō lǎo duō dé	more pay for more work	8.8
duōshù(r)	the majority (of), most (of)	7.5
éi	say! (interjection telling that the speaker just thought of something)	7.3*
értóng	child (formal word)	7.6
érxífu(r) (-fer)	daughter-in-law	7.4
fādá	to be (highly) developed, to be flourishing, to be prosperous	7.2*, 7.5
fǎlǚ	law	7.7
fān	to translate	7.7*
fàn	to violate, to offend, to commit; to have an attack (of an old disease)	7.7
fǎnduì	to oppose, to be against	7.1*
fángbèi	to take precautions against	8.4
fàng jià	to have vacation; to let out for vacation	8.6
-fāngmiàn (-mian)	aspect, side, area, respect	7.1
fǎngwèn	to visit and meet with	7.6*, 8.1
fāngxiàng	direction	8.8*
fàng xīn	to be unworried, to be at ease	8.5
fāngyán	dialect	8.1
fǎngzhī gōngyè	textile industry	8.5*
fánróng	to be flourishing/prosperous/booming; to make (something) prosper	8.8
fǎnzhèng	anyway, in any case	7.3*, 8.7*
fàn zuì	to commit a crime	7.7
fāshēng	to happen, to occur	8.7
fāxiàn	to discover, to find out; discovery	8.7
fāzhǎn	to develop, to expand, to grow	7.5
fēn	points	7.5*

TVL Vocabulary

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
fēn	to divide, to separate, to split; to be divided into (parts, categories)	7.6, 8.2
-fèn	(counter for portions of food)	8.1*
fēngsú	custom(s)	7.5
fēnkāi	to separate, to split up	7.6
fù	to spend, to expend	8.5*
Fújiàn	(a province in south China)	8.8
fùnǚ	woman; women, womankind	7.2
fúqi	blessings, good fortune	7.4
fùzá (fǔzá)	to be complicated, to be complex	8.6
gāi	will probably	7.4*
gāi	should, ought to	7.4*, 7.8
gài	to build (buildings); to cover	7.4*, 8.4
gǎibiàn	to change; change(s)	7.1*, 7.5
gǎishàn	to improve	8.6*
gǎitiān	another day	8.1*
gānbu	cadre	7.6
gāngtiě	iron and steel	8.7
gǎnjué	feeling, sensation; to feel, to perceive	7.1
gànmá	to do what; (colloquial) why on earth, what for	7.8
gǎnshàng(lái)	to catch up	8.7
gàn shenme	to do what; (colloquial) why on earth, what for	7.8
gǎnxiè	to be thankful, to be grateful (for)	7.3*, 8.5
gǎo	to do/carry on/engage in/work in (a field or endeavor)	8.1
gǎocuò	to do wrong; to be mistaken	8.7
gāogān	senior cadres	7.6*
gǎohǎo	to do a good job of, to handle well	8.1*
gǎoshàngqù	to cause to go up, to cause to move forward	8.2
gāozhōng	senior high school	7.2, 7.1*, 7.5*, 8.7*
gè-	each, every, various, different	8.5
gèguó	various countries	7.1*
Gēlúnbǐyà Dàxué	Columbia University	8.4*
gémìng	revolution; revolutionary; to revolt	7.8*, 8.2
gēn	to follow	7.8*
gēnzhe	along with, in the wake of	8.5*
gōng	male (for animals)	7.2*
Gōngchǎndǎng	Communist Party	7.6
gōngchǎng	factory, mill, plant, works	7.6*, 8.6
gōngchéngshī	engineer	8.5
gōngdiàn	palace	8.4
gōnggong	grandfather, grandpa (paternal)	7.4*
gōngkè	homework	7.7*

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
gōnglù	highway	8.7
Gòngqīngtuán	Communist Youth League	7.6
gōngren	worker	8.3, 8.6
gōngshāngyè	industry and commerce	7.5
gōngshè	commune	8.3
gōngyè	industry	7.5
gōngyìpǐn	handicrafts	7.8
gōngyuán	the common era; A.D.	8.6
gōngyuán qián	B.C.	8.6
gōngzī	wages, pay	8.8
gōngzuòzhě	worker (in a particular field)	8.4
gǔ-	ancient (used in compound words)	8.4
guǎn	to take care of; to mind, to bother about	7.2
guǎngchǎng	(public) square	8.4
Guǎngdōng	(province in south China)	8.5
guǎnggào	advertisement	7.7
Guǎngjiāohuì	Guǎngzhōu (Canton) Trade Fair	8.8
Guǎngxī	(a province in so. China)	8.1
guǎn (X) jiào (Y)	to call (X) (Y)	8.3
guānniàn	concept, idea, notion	7.2
guānxīn	to be concerned/care about	7.1, 8.5
guānyú	as to, with regard to, concerning, about	7.1
gǔdài	ancient times, antiquity; ancient	8.4
gǔdàishǐ	ancient history	8.6
Gùgōng (Bówùyùàn)	Former Imperial Palace (Museum)	8.4
gǔhuī	bone ashes, ashes (of a person)	7.5
guīju	rules of proper behavior, social etiquette, manners; special custom, established practice, rule (of a community or organization)	7.4
Guīlín	(a city in Guǎngxī Province)	8.1
guīmó	scale, scope, dimensions	8.8
Guìzhōu	(a province of China)	8.1
guójiā	country, state, nation; national	7.1
guómín jīngjì	national economy	8.5
guòqù	the past	7.4
guòqu	to pass; to pass away, to die	7.8
guò rìzi	to live; to get along	7.4
guóyǔ	the national language (Taiwan)	8.1
gùshi	story	7.6
gùshipiān(r)	feature film	8.1
gǔshū	ancient book	7.1
hái	fairly, passably	7.4
hǎigǎng	harbor, seaport	8.8
hǎiluòyīn	heroin	7.7
háishi	it would be better to	8.4, 8.7

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
hǎiwān	bay; gulf	8.5
hǎiyùn	sea transportation	8.8
hánshòubān	correspondence courses	8.6*
Hànyǔ	the Chinese language	8.6
hǎochù	benefit, advantage	7.5
hǎohǎo (hǎohǎor)	properly, carefully, thoroughly	7.1*, 7.8
...hǎo le	(used when agreeing, suggesting, or permitting); (used when giving in to something)	8.1
hǎo shi hǎo, kěshi...	well, okay, but...	7.3*
hǎoxiàng	to seem as if, to seem like	7.8
hào zhāo (hào zhào)	to appeal to/to call on (people to engage in an activity)	8.7
Hēilóngjiāng	(a province in northeast China)	8.5
hēiyè	(darkness of) night, nighttime	7.3
hèn	to hate, to detest; to feel bitter toward	7.6
héping	peace; peacefully	8.6
héxiě	to write together, to coauthor	8.8*
hézuò	to cooperate; cooperation	8.8
Hóngwèibīng	(a) Red Guard; the Red Guards	7.6
hòulái	later, afterwards	7.2*, 7.5
-hù	household, family	8.3
huā	to spend, to expend	8.5*
-huà	-ize, -ify	8.3
Huáběi	north of China	8.1
huàcè	book of photographs	8.4*
Huánán	south of China	8.1
huángdì	emperor	8.6*
Huáng Hé	the Yellow River	8.3*
Huángshān	(a mountain in Anhui Province)	8.1
huángtǔ gāoyuán	loess plateau	8.6*
Huángzhuāng	(name of a commune)	8.7*
huānsòng	to see off, to send off	8.8
huānsòng huì	farewell/send-off meeting or party	8.8
<u>Huáshèngdùn Yóubào</u>	<u>Washington Post</u>	7.7
huáxiān	synthetic fiber	8.5*
-huì	(counter for shì, "matter")	7.8
huì	might; to be likely to; will	7.1
huìhuà	conversation	8.2*
huìtòu(r) jiàn	see you later (in a little while)	8.1
huó	to live; to become alive; to survive; to be live/alive/living; mobile, moving	7.5
huó dòng	activity	8.2*
huǒtuǐ sānmíngzhì	ham sandwich	8.1*
húshuō	to talk nonsense; nonsense, drivel	7.2*
hùxiāng	mutually	7.4

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
-jí	level, rank, grade, stage, degree	8.8
jǐ	to be crowded	8.4
jì	to remember; to commit to memory	7.5*
-jiā	(counter for families)	7.4
-jiā	(suffix indicating a professional or specialist in some activity)	8.3
jiāgōng	to process; to finish (a product)	8.8
jiākuài	to speed up	8.2
jiǎnchēng	abbreviation	8.2*
jiǎndān	to be simple	7.7
jiǎng	to stress, to pay attention to, to be particular about	7.3
jiǎng	prize	7.5*
jiǎng jià(qian)	to bargain, to haggle	8.8*
jiǎngjiu	to be particular about; to be elegant, to be tasteful	7.3*
Jiāngnán	the area south of the the lower reaches of the Yangtze River	8.3*, 8.7*
Jiāngsū	(a coastal province of China)	8.5*
jiànli	to establish, to found	8.5*
jiànshè	to build up, to construct; construction, reconstruction	8.3
jiànyì	to suggest; suggestion, proposal	8.8*
jiànzhù (-zhú, -zhu)	to build, to construct; structure; architecture	8.4
jiāo	to hand over, to give	8.6
-jiào	religion, church (bound form)	8.6
jiàokēshū	textbook	8.2*
jiāoliú	to exchange; exchange, interchange	8.6
jiāoqū	suburbs, outskirts	8.3
jiàoshī	teacher, instructor	8.2
jiàotáng	church, cathedral	7.7*, 8.4
jiāotōng	traffic; transportation	8.6
jiāoyìhuì	trade fair	8.8
jiàoyu	to educate; education	7.7
jiàqian	price	8.8
jiārù	to join	7.6
jiāshǔ	family members, (family) dependents	8.7
jiāting	family	7.3
jīběn	basic, fundamental, elementary	8.2
jībēnshang	basically, on the whole, by and large	8.2
jīdòng	to be agitated, to be worked up	7.1*
jiè	to borrow; to lend	7.1
-jiè	session	8.8*
jièdao	to successfully borrow	7.1
jiěfàng	to liberate, to emancipate; liberation	7.6
Jiěfàngjūn	(People's) Liberation Army, PLA	8.6
jiéhūn (jiēhūn)	to get married	7.2
jiēji	(social) class	8.8

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
jiēshòu	to accept	8.4*
jièyì	to mind, to take offense	7.6
jíjí máng máng	in a hurry, extremely rushed	7.6
jímáng	to be hasty, to be hurried	7.6
jǐn	to be tight	8.7
jìn...	the past..., the last...	8.5
jìnbù	to progress; progress	7.7
jìnchūkǒu	import-export	8.8
jìndàishǐ	modern history	7.1*
jīngguò	to go through, to pass through; as a result of, after, through; course (of events), what has happened	8.2
jīngjī tèqū	special economic zone (SEZ)	8.8
jīngshén	energy, spirits	7.3*
Jīngxiàodào	(a kind of rice plant)	8.3
Jíning	(a city in Inner Mongolia)	8.6*
jìnkǒu	to import	8.8
jīnr	today (Běijīng)	7.8*
jīnshǔ	metal	8.5
jìnxíng	to carry on, to conduct, to proceed	8.7
jǐnzhāng	to be nervous, to be tense	7.3*, 8.7
jīqì (jīqì)	machine, machinery, apparatus	8.3
jìshù	technique, skill; technology; technical	8.2
jiù nà Sìchuān lái shuō	take Sichuan for example	8.5*
jiùshì...yě...	even (if)...	8.7
jīxiè (jījiè)	machine; machinery; mechanical	8.5
jīxièhuà	to mechanize; mechanization	8.3
jìzhě	reporter, journalist	8.1*
jìzhōng	to concentrate; to centralize; to put together	8.8
jìzhū	to remember	7.1*
-jù	sentence; (counter for sentences or utterances, often followed by <u>huà</u> , "speech")	7.1
juéding	to decide; decision	8.4
jǔ ge lìzi	give an example	8.3*
jūnduì	army	7.8*
júzi shuǐ(r)	orange juice (Běijīng)	7.1*
(V V) kàn	try and (V), (V) and see how it is	7.7
kàn	to depend on	7.8
kànbuqǐ	to look down on, to scorn, to despise	7.4
kàndào	to see	7.3
kànzhe	(followed by a verb) as one sees fit, as one deems reasonable	7.8
kǎo	to take/give an exam, test, or quiz	7.8
kào	to depend on, to rely on; to lean against; to be next to/against/by	7.2

TVL Vocabulary

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
kǎolǚ	to consider, to think about; con- sideration	7,1
kǎoshàng	to be admitted (to a school or organi- zation by passing an entrance exam)	8.6*
kǎoshì	to take/give an exam, test, or quiz; exam, test	7.8
-kē	(counter for trees)	8.4*
kě	indeed, certainly, really	8.4
kě'ài	to be loveable/adorable/cute	7.8*
kējī	science and technology	8.2*
kěkǎiyīn	cocaine	7.7*
Kěkǒukělè	Coca Cola	7.1*, 7.3*
kělián	to be pitiful	7.3*
kěn	to be willing to	7.7*, 8.8*
kěnéng	to be possible	8.1*
kēxué	science; to be scientific	8.2
kōng	empty	8.8
kōngchulai	to become vacant	8.1*
kōngshǒu	empty-handed	8.8
-kǒu	(counter for people considered as making up a family)	8.3
kǒuyīn	accent	8.1*
kū	to cry	7.3
kuài yào	will soon	8.7
kuàngū	mining region	8.5
kùnnan	difficulty	8.2*
Lādīng zìmǔ	Latin (Roman) alphabet	8.6*
...lái	for the past...(amount of time)	7.6
lái	(used before a verb to express that something will be done)	7.7
lái	to do (something), to perform (something), to have (an event), to help oneself (to food, etc.), to join in (a game, etc.)	7.8
...lái shuō	...speaking	8.5
lājī	garbage	7.3*
làngfèi	to waste	8.2*
lánwěiyán	appendicitis	7.5*
lǎo	all the time, always	7.8*
láodòng	to labor	7.5
láodònglǐ	labor force, labor; able-bodied person	7.5
lǎolao	grandmother, grandma (maternal)	7.4*
lǎolǐ	labor force; labor	7.5
lǎo shifu	old master	7.5*
lǎoshǔ (lǎoshu)	mouse or rat	7.2*
lǎoxiānsheng	old gentlemen	7.5*
lǎoyé	grandfather, grandpa (maternal)	7.4*

lǎozǒng	(used with surname as an affectionate term for a high-ranking PLA commander)	7.8°
-lèi	category	8.2
-lǐ	li, a unit of length (1/2 km.)	8.4
liǎ	(Běijīng colloquial word meaning liǎngge, "two")	7.8°
lián...dōu/yě...	even...	7.7
liàng	to be bright, to be light; to be shiny	8.6
liángshi	grain, cereals	8.3
liánxì	to contact, to get in touch with; connection, ties	8.1
Liáodài	the Liáo Period	8.4°
liǎojiě	to understand/grasp/comprehend; to find out/acquaint oneself with	8.1
liáo tiān(r)	to chat	7.3
lí jǐng	to leave a country or place	8.1
lǐliàng (lǐliang)	power; force; strength	8.5
lǐmào	manners, politeness	7.4
lǐngdǎo	to lead, to direct, to exercise leadership (over); leadership; leader, leading cadre	7.6
língwài	other	8.7°
liùshí niǎndài	the decade of the sixties	7.1°
liúxiá	to leave	7.1°
liúxíng	to be common, to be popular, to be prevalent	7.2
liúxuéshēng	study-abroad students	8.2
lǐwù	gift	8.4°
luàn	to be in disorder, to be in a mess, to be chaotic; arbitrarily, recklessly, any old way	7.7
luànqībāzāo	in a mess, in confusion, in disorder; miscellaneous, motley, all thrown in together	7.7
Lǚ Xùn	(a famous Chinese author of the 1920s and 1930s)	8.2°
lǚshī	lawyer, attorney	8.8
lǚxíngtuán	tour group	8.1
ma	(marker for obviousness of reasoning)	7.3
ma	(marker for insistent sentences)	7.7
mǎnmǎn (mǎnmǎnr)	slowly; gradually, by and by; taking one's time (doing something); (tell) all about, in all details	7.1
mǎnyì	to be pleased, to be satisfied	8.1
màoyì	trade	8.8
me (ma)	(pause marker)	8.6
měi	to be beautiful	8.6

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
méitàn	coal	8.5
méi yìsi	to be uninteresting/boring; to be pointless/meaningless; to be a drag; to be without value, not worthy of respect, cheap	7.2
-mén	(counter for courses)	8.7*
miànji	(surface) area	8.3
Míng	(name of a dynasty, 1368-1644)	8.4
míngbai	to understand, to be clear on, to comprehend; to be clear, to be intelligible	7.5
<u>Míng Bào</u>	<u>Ming Pao</u> (a Hong Kong newspaper)	7.7
míngcí	word, term, expression	8.3*
mínzú	nationality, a people, nation (ethnic group)	8.1
mínzú zhījiān	between nationalities	8.6*
mǔ	female (for animals)	7.2*
-mǔ	<u>mu</u> (a unit of area)	8.3
mǔchǎn	per- <u>mu</u> yield	8.3
Mùníhēi	Munich	8.4*
mùqián	the present; at present	8.2
mùtóu	wood	8.4*
nà hái yòng shuō	that goes without saying	7.2*
nǎinai	grandmother (paternal)	7.4
nákāi	to take away, to move (something) out of the way	8.6*
nánfāng	the bridegroom's side	7.5*
nánfāng	the south	8.1
Nán Měi	South America	7.7*
nánnǚ	men and women, male-female	7.2
nánshòu	to be uncomfortable; to feel bad, to feel unhappy	7.3
nántīng	to be unpleasant to hear; to sound bad, to offend the ears; to be scandalous	7.8
ne	(used in questions asking the where- abouts of someone/something)	7.4*
ne	(indicating lack of completion/absence of change)	7.4
...ne	as for...	8.5
nèidì	interior region (of a country)	8.5*, 8.6
Nèiměng(gǔ)	Inner Mongolia, Nei Mongol (an auto- nomous region of China)	8.1
nénglì	ability	7.6*
niándài	decade of a century; period, era	8.5
niánjì (-jì)	age	7.4
niánlíng (-líng)	age	8.2*
niánqīng	to be young	7.1

TVL Vocabulary

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
nǐ hái shì lǎoyàngzi	you look as if you haven't changed a bit	8.4°
nǐlóng	nylon	8.5°
nòng	to do; to fool with; to get	7.3
nóngchǎng	farm	8.3°, 8.7°
nóngcūn	country, rural area; rural	7.5°, 7.6
nònglai	to get and bring	7.3
nóngmín	peasant	7.5°, 8.3°, 8.6
nóngyè	agriculture	7.5
nóngyèqū	farming region	8.3°
nǔlì	to make great efforts, to try hard, to exert oneself	7.7°, 8.2
nǚshēng	coed, woman student	7.3°
Ōuzhōu	Europe	8.4
pà	to be afraid	7.4°
pǎolai pǎoqù	to run back and forth	7.6°, 8.4°
pèngdao	to hit; to run into, to come across	7.8°
-piān	(counter for sheets, articles or pieces of writing)	7.2
piàn	to fool, to deceive	7.2°
piānzi	film, movie	8.1°
pīchá bǐng	pizza	7.1°
píng	to be flat, to be level	8.3°
píngděng	equality; to be equal (of people)	7.2
píngfāng gōnglǐ	square kilometer	8.3°
píngjūn	(on the) average	8.3
píngjūnshù	an average number, a mean	8.3°
píngyuán	plain, flatlands	8.3
píngzi	bottle	8.8°
pīnmǐng	with all one's might, for all one is worth, desperately, like mad; to risk one's life, to defy death	7.2
pǐnzhǒng	variety	8.3°
pīzhǔn	to give permission, to approve; approval, permission, sanction	7.5°
pópo	grandmother, grandma	7.4°
pǔbiàn	to be universal, to be general, to be widespread, to be common	8.2
pǔtōng	to be common/regular/ordinary	8.2
pǔtōnghuà	the common (standard) speech, Standard Chinese	8.1

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
qiāng	gun	7.7°
qiáng	to be strong	7.6°
qiángguó	powerful nation, a (world) power	8.5
Qiānjīndào	Thousand-Catty Rice	8.3°
Qiánmén	(a gate in Běijīng)	8.4
qiānwàn	under any circumstances; by no means; without fail, be sure to	8.8
qiánxiē nián	a few years back, in recent years	7.8°
qiāo mén	to knock at the door	7.4°
qíguài	to be strange, to be odd, to be surprising	7.3
qǐlai	to get up (in several senses)	7.4
-qilai	(resultative ending which indicates starting)	7.3
qǐmǎ	at least; minimum, lowest, rudimentary, elementary	8.5
Qín	(name of a dynasty, 221-207 B.C.)	8.4
qīng	to be light	8.5
qīngchǔ (-chu)	to be clear, to be distinct	8.7
qīng gōngyè	light industry	8.5
Qīnghǎi	(a province in western China)	7.3°, 8.6°
qīngjiāo	green pepper	8.3°
qíngkuàng	situation, circumstances, condition, state of affairs	7.1
qíngxíng	situation, circumstances, condition, state of affairs	7.1
qīngzhēnsì	mosque	8.6°
qīnlüè	to invade; invasion, aggression	8.4
qióng	to be poor	8.5
qítā	other, else; the rest	8.5
qiūjì	the fall season	8.3°
(-)qū	area, region, district	8.5
quán	entirely, completely; whole, entire; to be complete	8.1
quàn	to advise, to urge, to try to persuade	7.8
quánbù	entire, whole, all	8.1
quánguó	the whole country	8.3
quánjiā rén	the whole family	7.4°
qūbié	difference, distinction	8.2
ràng	to make (someone a certain way)	7.1
ràng nǐ jiǔ děng le	I've kept you waiting	8.5°
rén	person; self; body	7.4
rēng	to throw, to throw away	8.8°
rénjia	people; other people; someone else; they; he, she; I	7.4
rénmín	the people	8.3
rénmín gōngshè	people's commune	8.3

TVL Vocabulary

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
rènwéi	to think/believe/consider (that)	8.2
rényuán	personnel, staff	8.7
rèxīn	to be enthusiastic and interested; to be warmhearted	7.3
rèxīnqílái	to become enthusiastic and interested	7.3
rìzi	day; date; time	7.3*
rù	to enter; to join (an organization)	7.6
ruò	to be weak	8.5
rù Tuán	to join the Communist Youth League (<u>Gōngqīngtuán</u> or <u>Gōngchǎnzhǔyì</u> <u>Qīngniántuán</u>)	7.6
sàn bù	to go for a stroll	8.6*
shā	to kill (means unspecified); to kill (specifically, with a knife or knife- like instrument); to try to kill	7.7
shǎ	to be stupid, to be dumb, to be silly, to be naive	7.8
shāfā	sofa	7.8*
shāmò	desert	8.6
shāndì	mountainous region, hilly area (geo- graphical term)	8.3
-shang	(a verb ending indicating starting and continuing)	7.6
shāngren	businessman, businesswoman	8.8
shāng xué	to go to school; to attend school	7.6
shāngyè	commerce, business	7.5
shānqū	hilly country, mountainous region	8.3
Shānxī	(province in north central China)	8.5
shǎoshù	minority; a minority of, a small number of, few	8.1
shǎoshù mínzú	minority nationality, national minority	8.1
Shàoxiānduì	Young Pioneers	7.6*
shēbèi	equipment; facilities; installation	8.8
shèhuì	society; social	7.1
shèhuì kēxué	social sciences	8.2
-shěng	province	8.4
shēngchǎn	to produce; production	7.5
shēngchǎn dàduì	production brigade	8.3
shēngchǎnduì	production team	8.3
shēnghuó	to live; life; daily life; livelihood	7.2
shēngyì (shēngyì)	business, trade	7.8
shēnqǐng	to apply (for)	7.2*
shēntǐ	body; health	7.4
Shēnzhèn	(a border stop in Guǎngdōng, formerly spelled Shumchun)	8.1
shèyuán	commune member	8.7

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
shǐ	to cause (followed by a verb), to make, to enable	7.7
shì	city, municipality	8.5
shìchǎng	market	7.5*
Shí Dà Jiànzhù	the Ten Great Structures (in Běijīng)	8.4
shìjiè	world	7.6
shìjièshang	in the world, in the whole world	7.6
shìjièxìng	worldwide	7.7
Shísānlíng	the Ming Tombs	8.4
shítáng	mess hall, dining room	8.7
shíxiàn	to realize/achieve/bring about/ accomplish/come true	8.2
shíxíng	to practice, to carry out, to put into effect, to implement (a method, policy, plan, reform, etc.)	7.6
shíyóu	petroleum, oil	8.1
shízài	really; to be real	7.2
shìzhèngfǔ	city hall	8.4*
shōu	to harvest	8.3
shòu	to receive	7.7
shòu	to be thin	7.7*
shǒuchāode	handwritten	7.4*
shǒudū	capital	8.4
shòu jiàoyù	to receive an education	7.7
shōurù	income, earnings	7.5
shōushi	to straighten up; to get one's things ready	7.4
shǒuxiān	first; first of all, in the first place	8.2
shòu xiànzhì	to be restricted	8.8*
shù	tree	8.4*
shūcài	vegetable	8.3
shuǐpíng	level, standard	8.2
shǔjià	summer vacation	7.1
shùliàng	quantity, amount, number	8.2
...(lái) shuō	...speaking	8.5
shuōbuqīngchū	can't explain clearly	7.1
shuōdao	to speak of; as for	7.3
shuōfǎ	way of saying a thing; statement, version, argument	7.5
shuòshì	Master's degree	7.2*, 7.5*
sǐ	to die	7.3*, 7.5
Sìchuān	(province in central China)	8.5
Sìge Xiàndàihuà	the Four Modernizations (of agriculture, industry, national defense, and science and technology)	8.2
sìjì	four seasons	8.3*
sìjì cháng lǚ	green all year round	8.3*
Sì Jī Qīng	(a commune in Běijīng suburbs)	8.3
Sì Shū	the Four Books (<u>Dàxué</u> , <u>Zhōngyōng</u> , <u>Lúnyǐ</u> , <u>Mèngzǐ</u>)	7.4
sìxiǎng	thought, way of thinking, ideas	7.5*, 8.6*

TVL Vocabulary

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
sònghuìqu	to take/escort back	7.5*
sòngxíng	to see (someone off), to wish (someone) a good trip; to give a going-away party	7.8
suān	to be considered, to count as, can be regarded as	8.2*, 8.5
suān le	forget it, let's drop the matter, let it go at that; come off it, come on	7.2
sùdu	speed, pace	8.2
Sū-Háng	Sūzhōu and Hángzhōu (abbreviation)	8.6*
Sūlián	Soviet Union	8.5*
sūnnǚ	granddaughter (through one's son)	7.4
sūnzi	grandson (through one's son)	7.4
suǒyǒude...dōu	all	7.3
sùshè	living quarters; dormitory	8.7
-tái	(counter for machines)	8.3
tàiyang	sun	8.8*
tán	to talk about (used with the object <u>shēngyì</u> , <u>màoyì</u> , etc., in the sense of "to negotiate")	8.8
tán liàn'ài	to be in love, to be going together (courtship)	7.8*
tǎolùn	to discuss; discussion	8.6
tǎoyàn	to dislike, to be disgusted with	7.6*
tèdiǎn	distinctive trait, characteristic	8.3
téng	to be very fond of, to be attached to, to dote on	7.8
tí	to carry (from the hand at the side of the body); to lift/raise; to mention/bring up; to put forward/ propose; to ask (questions)	7.8*, 8.2
Tiān'ānmén	the Gate of Heavenly Peace	8.4
Tiānjīn (Tiānjīng)	(a municipality and port in northeast China)	8.5
tiān liàng	daybreak, dawn; to become light out	8.6
Tiān Tán	the Temple of Heaven	8.4
tiào	to jump, to leap	7.3*
tiáojiàn	condition(s), circumstances	8.2
tiáoyuē	treaty	8.8
tiáozi	a brief, informal note	8.1*
tíchū	to raise/put forward/propose	8.2
tíchulai	to bring up	8.2
tiělù	railroad	8.7
tígāo	to raise, to improve	8.2
tímù (-mù)	topic, subject; title; exam question, test problem	7.5
tīng	to heed (advice), to obey (orders)	7.5

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
tīngdechū	to be able to distinguish by listening	8.1*
tóngjū	to cohabit; cohabitation	7.2
tóngyì	to consent, to agree	7.5
tǒngyì	to become united; to unite, to unify; unification	8.6
tóur	head, chief, boss	7.7*
-tuán	group of people, society (bound form)	7.6, 8.1
Tuán	the (Communist Youth) League	7.6
tǔdì	land	7.4
Tǔèrqí	Turkey	8.6*
tuī	to push	8.7*
tuōlājī	tractor	8.3
túpiàn	picture, photograph	8.3
Tz!	Tsk (clicking sound with several different uses: disappointment, admiration, hesitation, etc.)	8.6
wàigōng	grandfather, grandpa (maternal)	7.4*
wàihuì	foreign exchange	8.7*
wàipó	grandmother, grandma (maternal)	7.4*
wàishāng	foreign businessman	8.8*
wàiwén	foreign language	7.5*
wǎnhuì	evening party; evening of entertainment	7.6*, 8.8
wǎnliàn wǎnhūn	late involvement and late marriage	7.2*
Wànǐ Chángchéng	the Great Wall of Ten Thousand <u>Li</u>	8.4
-wèi	place, position	8.5
wěidà	to be great (e.g., a leader)	8.4*
wèile	in order to; for the purpose of; for the sake of	7.5
Wéiwúěr	the Uygur (Uighur) nationality	8.6
WénGé	the Cultural Revolution	8.2*
wénhuà	culture; schooling, education, literacy	7.1
Wénhuà (Dà) Gémìng	the Cultural Revolution	8.2*
wénxuéjiā	writer, literary man	7.6*
wénzhāng	article, essay; prose style	7.2
wéngǐ	writing, script, written language	8.6
wǒde tiān na!	my God!	7.1*
<u>Wūdǔ Jīnhuā</u>	<u>Five Golden Flowers</u> (a film)	8.1*
wǔjiǎo	noontime nap	7.8
Wúxǐ	(a city in Jiāngsū province)	8.7*
xì	department (of a school)	8.2*
-xià	under	7.6
xiàndài	modern, contemporary; modern times	7.1*, 8.2
xiàndàihuà	to become modernized; modernization; modern(ized), sophisticated	8.2
xiǎng	to sound, to make a sound	7.4*

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
xiàng	to be like, to resemble; like; such as	7.2
xiǎngbuchū	can't think up, can't come up with	7.2*
xiāngdāng	quite, pretty, considerably	7.2
xiǎngdao	to think of	7.3
xiāngxìn	to believe (in); to trust, to be certain, to be convinced (that)	7.7*, 8.6
xiǎngzhe	to be thinking of, to have on one's mind	8.4
xiānjìn	to be advanced	8.3
xiànjīn	cash	8.3*
xiànzhī	to restrict, to limit; restriction, limitation	8.8
xiǎo	young	7.1*
xiǎo diǎn(r) shēng(r)	a little more quietly	7.8*
xiāofèi	to consume	8.8
xiāofèipǐn	consumer goods	8.8
xiāofèizhě	consumer	8.8
xiàolǚ	efficiency	8.8
xiāomiè	to exterminate/eliminate/wipe out/ stamp out	8.7
xiǎo péngyou	little friend; kids	7.4
xiàoshun	to be filial; filial obedience	7.3
xiǎoshuō(r)	fiction, novel	7.1
xiāoxi	news	8.8
xià qí	to play chess	7.6
-xiaqu	(resultative ending which indicates continuing an action)	7.2
-xiaqu	down (directional ending used for eating or drinking down)	7.3
Xīběi	the Northwest	8.1
xī dǔ	to take drugs; drug taking	7.7
Xīfāng	the West	8.6*
xíguàn	habit, custom, usual practice; to be accustomed to, to be used to	7.5
xīn	heart; mind	7.3
-xìng	nature, -ness, -ity	7.7
xìngkuǎi	fortunately, luckily	7.4*
xìngqu	interest	7.2
Xīnjiāng	(an autonomous region of China)	8.1
xìn jiào	to believe in a religion	8.6*
xīnkǔ	to be arduous/tiring/hard work; to work hard/go through hardships	8.3
xīnlǐ	in one's heart, in one's mind	7.1*
xīnshǎng	to appreciate/enjoy/admire	8.4
xīnshǐ	something weighing on one's mind, worry	7.1*
xīnwén	news	7.2
"Xīnwén Jiǎnbào"	"News Summary"	8.1*
xīnwénpiān	newsreel	8.1*
Xīnwén Zhōukān	<u>Newsweek</u>	7.2

TVL Vocabulary

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
xiū	to repair; to build (roads, reservoirs); to trim, to prune	8.4
xuǎn	to choose, to select; to elect	8.7
xǔduō	many, much	8.5
xué hǎo	to learn from good examples, to learn to be a good person	7.7*
xuéhuì	to learn, to master	7.6*
xuéqī	semester, term (of school)	7.1
xuéshēnghuì	student association	7.1*
xué yī	to study medicine	7.2
xuéyuàn	(academic) institute	8.2*, 8.6*
xuézhě	scholar	8.1
xùmuyè	livestock farming, animal husbandry	8.6
xùnliànbān	training class	7.6*
xūyàoliàng	level of need/demand (for an item)	8.4*
yǎn diànyǐng	to show a movie	8.1*
-yàng	kind, sort (bound form)	8.7
yán'gē	to be strict, to be rigorous	8.2*
yánhǎi	along the coast, coastal	8.5
yǎnjīng	eye	8.8
yánjiū (-jiū, -jiù)	to study (in detail), to do research on; research	7.1
yánjiūshēng	graduate student	8.2
yánzhe	along(side)	8.7
yánzhòng	to be serious, to be grave	8.8
yàoburán	otherwise	8.2*, 8.7*
yào kàn	to depend on	7.8
yāoqiú	to require/request/demand	8.6*, 8.8*
Yàzhōu (Yǎ-)	Asia	7.1
yèdà	evening university	7.6*
yèdàxué	evening university	8.7*
yě gāi	really should	7.4*
...yě hǎo, ...yě hǎo	whether...or...; both...and...	7.5
yě jiù	accordingly, correspondingly, so	7.5
yéye	grandfather (paternal)	7.1*, 7.4
yèyú	spare-time, after-hours, amateur	8.7
yī	medical science, medicine (used in phrases like <u>xué yī</u>)	7.2
yī	as soon as	7.1*, 7.4*, 8.8
yī-	(used before direction words to mark direction with reference a point)	8.7
-yī	hundred million	7.3
yībān lái shuō	generally speaking, ordinarily	8.5*
yībiān(r)...	doing...while doing...	7.1
yībiān(r)...		

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
yīfāngmiàn..., yīfāngmiàn...	on the one hand..., on the other hand...; for one thing..., for another thing...	7.2
Yīhéyuán (Yì-)	the Summer Palace (in Běijīng)	8.4
yìjīāzi	one family; the whole family; the same family	7.8*
yī...jiù...	as soon as	8.8
yímiàn(r)...	doing...while doing...	7.1
yímiàn(r)...		
yīnián bǐ yīnián duō	more and more every year	8.3*
yīnián sìjì	in all four seasons of the year, all year round	8.3*
yǐshàng	above, over (an amount)	8.7
yǐshí	for the moment	8.4*
yìshu	art	8.4
Yìsīlán jiào	Islam	8.6
yìtiān dào wǎn	all day long	7.3
yǐwéi	to think (mistakenly), to assume	8.1
yǐxià	under (an amount)	8.7
yīxué	medical science, medicine	7.2
yīyuàn	hospital	7.3*
yìzhí	all along, continuously, all the time (up until a certain point)	7.2
yònggōng	to be hardworking (in one's studies)	7.3
yōu	excellent	7.5*
yōu	to come up to (a certain level)	7.2*
yōu	also	7.4
yōu	anyway; after all	7.8
yōu bànfǎ, (duì...)	to be able to deal with (something)	7.7
yōu bāngzhu	to be helpful	7.2
yōu dào lǐ	to make sense	7.2
yōu'éryuán	kindergarten	7.5*, 8.7
yōu guīju	to have manners, to be proper	7.4
yōuhǎo	to be friendly, to be amicable	8.4*
yōulǎn	to sightsee, to tour	8.4
yōu lǐmào	to be well mannered, to be polite	7.4
yōu míng	to be famous	8.1*
yōu qián	to be rich	7.4
yōu xiào	to be effective; to be valid	7.7
yōu xìngqu	to be interested	7.2
yōu yánjiū	to have done research on; to know a lot about	7.2
yōu yòng	to be useful	7.3
yǔ	and (written style)	8.6*
yuánlái	original, former; originally, formerly; it turns out that..., so...! (expresses finding out the true situation)	7.8
yuànyì	to wish, would like, to want to; to be willing to	7.8
yuányīn	reason, cause	7.6

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
yúchǎng	fishery	8.7°
yuè lái yuè...	more and more..., increasingly	7:2
yuè...yuè...	the more...the more...	7.2
yǔfǎ	grammar	8.2°
yùn	to transport, to ship, to carry	8.8
Yúnnán	(a province of China)	8.1
yùnrì	luck	7.8
yǔyán	language	8.1
yǔyánxué	linguistics	8.1
yǔyánxuéjiā	linguist	8.1°
zài shuō	furthermore, besides, moreover	7.5°, 7.8°
...zài shuō	...and then we'll see about it	8.1
zǎo	a long time ago	7.3°
zǎohūn	early marriage; child marriage; to marry as a child, to marry early	7.5
zěnmē gǎode	what's wrong; what's the matter; how come	8.1°
zěnmē (yì)huí shì	what's it all about	7.8
zěnmē (yì)huí shì	like this	7.8
zéren (-rèn)	responsibility	7.7
zhāi huā(r)	to pick flowers	8.7°
zhān	to occupy (space), to take up (time); to make up, to constitute (an amount)	8.1
zhǎng	to grow	7.3
zhǎngdà	to grow up	7.3
zhāngfu	husband	7.5
zhānzhēng	war	7.4°, 8.2°, 8.6
zhǎobudào	can't find, to be unable to find	7.2°, 9.2
zhàogu	to take care of; care	7.5
zhàopiàn	photograph	8.4°
zhèi yíxiàzi	after this, as a result of this	7.8
Zhèjiāng (Zhejiāng)	(a province in eastern China)	8.6
zhènmē (yì)huí shì	like this	7.8
zhèng	just, precisely, right	7.5
zhèngcè	policy	7.6, 7.5°
zhèngfǔ	government	7.6, 7.4°
zhěnggè(r)	whole, entire; completely, in entirety	8.2
zhènghǎo(r)	it just so happens that, to happen to, as it happens; just in time, just right, just enough	7.8
zhěngqí	to be neat, to be tidy	8.4°
zhèngzhì	politics; political	7.1
zhígōng	staff and workers; worker or staff member	8.7
zhǐ hǎo	can only, to have to, to be forced to	7.4
...zhǐjiān	between...	8.8°
zhǐliàng (zhǐ-,zhǐ-)	quality	8.2
zhīshi	knowledge	7.2

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
zhǐ yào	provided that, as long as	7.7, 7.6*
zhìzào	to manufacture	8.7
zhìzàochǎng	manufacturing plant, factory	8.7
-zhōng	in	7.7
zhōng	to plant; to grow	8.3
zhòng	to be heavy	8.5
zhòngdiǎn	focal point, emphasis; key	8.2
Zhōngdōng	the Middle East	8.6
Zhōngguó Guójì	China International Travel Service	8.1*
Lǚxíngshè	(CITS)	
Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè	China Travel Service (CTS)	8.1
<u>Zhōngguó Qīngnián</u>	<u>China Youth</u> (a periodical)	7.2*
Zhōnghuá Rénmín	People's Republic of China	8.5*
Gōnghéguó		
zhōng nán qīng nǚ	to regard males as superior to females	7.3
Zhōngshān Gōngyuán	Sun Yatsen Park	8.4*
zhōngxīn	center, heart, core, hub; central	8.5
<u>Zhōngxuéshēng</u>	<u>High School Student</u> (a periodical)	7.2*
zhōngzú	race; racial	8.6
zhōukān	weekly publication, weekly magazine	7.2
zhuānjiā	specialist, expert	8.3
zhuàn qián	to earn money, to make money	7.3
zhuānyè	special line/field/discipline	8.3
zhuānyèhuà	to specialize; specialization	8.3
zhǔrén	host; master	7.3*
zhùxiáilái	to move and stay (in a place), to settle down	7.4
zhǔyào	major, main, essential; mainly, essentially	7.5*, 8.1
-zhǔyì	-ism, doctrine (bound form)	8.6
zīběn	capital	8.8*
zìcóng	ever since	8.8*
zìrán	nature; to be natural; naturally; in the normal course of events	8.2
zìrán kēxué	natural sciences	8.2
zìxué	to study by oneself	8.6*
zìyóu	freedom; to be free	7.2
zìyóu shìchǎng	free market	7.5*
zìyuán	(natural) resources	8.5
zìzhìqū	autonomous region	8.6
zǒng	always; inevitably, without exception; after all, in any case	7.1
zǒngde lái shuō	generally speaking, on the whole	8.5
zǒnggōngchéngshī	chief engineer	8.5*
zǒngjiào	(organized) religion	7.7
zǒng miànjī	total area	8.3*
zǒng shōurù	total income	8.7*
zǒngtǒng	president	7.6*
-zú	nationality	8.6

TVL Vocabulary

		<u>Module & Unit</u>
zuǐ	mouth	7.7*
zuǐ	crime; guilt	7.7
zuǐjīn	lately, recently; the near future, soon	7.3
zuò	to be, to act as	7.3
-zuò	(counter for massive objects)	8.4*
zuòbùliǎo	to be unable to do	7.4*
zuò lǐbài	to worship, to attend a religious service	7.7*, 8.6*
zuòxia	to sit down	7.1
zuòyè	homework	8.6*
zǔzhi	to organize; organization	8.3